

# The Biblatex Package

## Programmable Bibliographies and Citations

Philipp Lehman      Version 3.7

(with Philip Kime, Audrey Boruvka      16/11/2016

and Joseph Wright)

## Biblatex 宏包说明文档摘译

Zhenzhen Hu<sup>1</sup>      Wenbo Sheng<sup>2</sup>

2016-02-08

译者按: 之所以摘译 biblatex, 一是出于对 keep texing 的兴趣, 二是考虑到中文资料里总体介绍 latex 的资料其实较多, 反而是在一些专项部分中文资料较少, 看宏包的英文说明当然没有问题, 但有的文档内容长达几百页, 一般用户真心没有精力去看, 即便是找一些自己需要的功能也比较麻烦, 所以考虑对参考文献的 biblatex 宏包文档进行摘译, 是希望能在这一方面有所贡献。关于这一点 Wenbo 兄也很有同感, 在几年前 biblatex 还是 2.x 版本的时候他就深入研究了 biblatex 并翻译了 1-4 节很多内容。我在 biblatex-gb7714-2015 样式宏包中提议翻译 biblatex 文档之后, 我们决定合作来推进这个事情, 尽管都只有部分业余时间可以利用, 但我们认为只要有空就积累一点, 那么终有完成的时候。

如同我在 biblatex-gb7714-2015 样式宏包说明文档中介绍的那样, biblatex 宏包具有很多强大功能比如参考文献表划分、文献集、样式定制、动态数据处理等等, 在科技论文或书籍写作中特别有用 (尤其是在对参考文献著录和标注格式有特殊要求的情况下)。可以说, biblatex 是 latex 文档写作中参考文献问题的完整解决方案, 也一定程度上代表了这一方面的未来趋势。总之, 本项目的总体任务是完成 biblatex 宏包说明文档关键内容的摘译, 希望能对使用 biblatex 和对参考文献样式有深度定制要求的用户有所帮助, 当然也希望能使中文 latex 资料库更为全面和深入。需要说明的是, 限于作者水平, 其中难免存在一些错误和理解不到位的地方, 欢迎批评指正, 欢迎 @ 译者邮箱。最后感谢 CTEX 和 Latexstudio 论坛, 感谢论坛上各位作者关于 biblatex 参考文献方面的工作分享和经验介绍。

## 目录

表格	6
1 引言	6
1.1 关于 Biblatex	6
1.2 许可	7
1.3 反馈	7
1.4 致谢	7

---

<sup>1</sup>Email:hzzmail@163.com

<sup>2</sup>Email:

1.5	前提与必备	7
1.5.1	必须资源	7
1.5.2	推荐包	8
1.5.3	兼容的包	8
1.5.4	不兼容的包	9
1.5.5	Biber/Biblatex 兼容性	10
<b>2</b>	<b>数据库指南</b>	<b>10</b>
2.1	条目类型	10
2.1.1	常规类型	12
2.1.2	类型别名	16
2.1.3	不支持的条目类型	17
2.2	条目域 Entry Fields	17
2.2.1	数据类型 Data Types	18
2.2.2	数据域 Data Fields	20
2.2.3	特殊域 Special Fields	29
2.2.4	自定义域 Custom Fields	34
2.2.5	域的别名 Field Aliases	34
2.3	使用注意事项 Usage Notes	35
2.3.1	@inbook 条目类型 The Entry Type @inbook	36
2.3.2	缺失和可忽略数据 Missing and Omissible Data	36
2.3.3	集体作者和编者 Corporate Authors and Editors	37
2.3.4	原样输出列表 Literal Lists	37
2.3.5	题名 Titles	38
2.3.6	编辑角色 Editorial Roles	39
2.3.7	出版物和期刊系列 Publication and Journal Series	40
2.3.8	日期格式 Date Specifications	41
2.3.9	月份和期刊季度号 Months and Journal Issues	42
2.3.10	标记页码 Pagination	42
2.4	提示与警告 Hints and Caveats	43
2.4.1	交叉引用 Cross-referencing	43
2.4.2	能力问题 Capacity Issues	45
2.4.3	排序和编码问题 Sorting and Encoding Issues	45
2.4.4	编纂者脚本 Editors and Compiler Scripts	51
<b>3</b>	<b>用户使用手册</b>	<b>51</b>
3.1	宏包选项	51
3.1.1	加载选项	51
3.1.2	导言区选项	52
3.1.3	条目选项 Entry Options	70
3.1.4	遗留选项 Legacy Options	73
3.2	全局定制 Global Customization	73
3.2.1	配置文件 Configuration File	73

3.2.2	设置包选项 Setting Package Options . . . . .	73
3.3	标准样式 Standard Styles . . . . .	73
3.3.1	标注样式 Citation Styles . . . . .	73
3.3.2	参考文献样式 Bibliography Styles . . . . .	78
3.4	相关条目 Related Entries . . . . .	79
3.5	排序选项 Sorting Options . . . . .	81
3.6	参考文献命令 Bibliography Commands . . . . .	82
3.6.1	文献数据源 Resources . . . . .	82
3.6.2	参考文献表 The Bibliography . . . . .	84
3.6.3	缩略表 The List of Shorthands . . . . .	87
3.6.4	各类参考文献表 Bibliography Lists . . . . .	88
3.6.5	参考文献分节 Bibliography Sections . . . . .	90
3.6.6	参考文献分部 Bibliography Segments . . . . .	91
3.6.7	参考文献分类 Bibliography Categories . . . . .	92
3.6.8	参考文献标题和环境 Bibliography Headings and Environments	92
3.6.9	参考文献注释 Bibliography Notes . . . . .	94
3.6.10	参考文献过滤和检查 Bibliography Filters and Checks . . . . .	94
3.6.11	参考文献表内容 Bibliography Contexts . . . . .	96
3.6.12	动态条目集 Dynamic Entry Sets . . . . .	97
3.7	引用命令 Citation Commands . . . . .	98
3.7.1	标准命令 Standard Commands . . . . .	98
3.7.2	样式相关命令 Style-specific Commands . . . . .	99
3.7.3	有限标注表 Qualified Citation Lists . . . . .	100
3.7.4	与样式无关的命令 Style-independent Commands . . . . .	101
3.7.5	文本命令 Text Commands . . . . .	102
3.7.6	特殊命令 Special Commands . . . . .	103
3.7.7	底层命令 Low-level Commands . . . . .	106
3.7.8	其它命令 Miscellaneous Commands . . . . .	106
3.7.9	与natbib兼容的命令 natbib Compatibility Commands . . . . .	108
3.7.10	类似mcite给的标注命令 mcite-like Citation Commands . . . . .	108
3.8	本地化命令 Localization Commands . . . . .	109
3.9	格式命令 Formatting Commands . . . . .	111
3.9.1	一般命令和钩子 Generic Commands and Hooks . . . . .	111
3.9.2	语言相关命令 Language-specific Commands . . . . .	116
3.9.3	尺寸和计数器 Lengths and Counters . . . . .	117
3.9.4	多用途命令 All-purpose Commands . . . . .	119
3.10	语言注意点 Language notes . . . . .	120
3.10.1	美语 American . . . . .	120
3.10.2	西班牙语 Spanish . . . . .	121
3.10.3	希腊语 Greek . . . . .	121
3.10.4	俄语 Russian . . . . .	121

3.11	用法注意点 Usage Notes	122
3.11.1	概述 Overview	122
3.11.2	辅助文件 Auxiliary Files	123
3.11.3	多个参考文献表 Multiple Bibliographies	124
3.11.4	子参考文献表 Subdivided Bibliographies	127
3.11.5	条目集 Entry Sets	130
3.11.6	数据容器 Data Containers	131
3.11.7	电子出版信息 Electronic Publishing Information	132
3.11.8	额外的摘要和注释 External Abstracts and Annotations	134
3.12	提示与警告 Hints and Caveats	134
3.12.1	与 KOMA-Script 类共用的方法 Usage with KOMA-Script Classes	135
3.12.2	与 Memoir 类共用的方法 Usage with the Memoir Class	135
3.12.3	标注中的页码 Page Numbers in Citations	136
3.12.4	姓名组成部分及其间距 Name Parts and Name Spacing	138
3.12.5	参考文献筛选器和标注标签 Bibliography Filters and Citation Labels	139
3.12.6	参考文献标题中的活动字符 Active Characters in Bibliography Headings	139
3.12.7	在参考文献分节和分部中的编组 Grouping in Reference Sections and Segments	140
<b>4</b>	<b>样式作者指南</b>	<b>140</b>
4.1	概述	140
4.2	参考文献样式	144
4.2.1	参考文献样式文件 Bibliography Style Files	144
4.2.2	参考文献环境 Bibliography Environments	146
4.2.3	参考文献驱动 Bibliography Drivers	148
4.2.4	特殊域 Special Fields	151
4.3	标注样式 Citation Styles	165
4.3.1	标注样式文件 Citation Style Files	165
4.3.2	特殊域 Special Fields	166
4.4	数据接口 Data Interface	167
4.4.1	数据命令 Data Commands	167
4.4.2	格式化指令 Formatting Directives	170
4.5	自定义 Customization	172
4.5.1	关联条目 Related Entries	172
4.5.2	Datasource Sets	173
4.5.3	数据动态修改 Dynamic Modification of Data	174
4.5.4	Data Model Specification	182
4.5.5	标签 Labels	186
4.5.6	Sorting	192
4.5.7	Bibliography List Filters	197
4.5.8	Controlling Name Initials Generation	198

4.5.9	排序微调 Fine Tuning Sorting . . . . .	198
4.5.10	特殊域 Special Fields . . . . .	199
4.5.11	数据继承 Data Inheritance (crossref) . . . . .	201
4.6	辅助命令 . . . . .	203
4.6.1	数据命令 . . . . .	203
4.6.2	独立判断命令 . . . . .	205
4.6.3	使用\ifboolexpr和\ifthenelse的判断 . . . . .	210
4.6.4	综合命令 . . . . .	211
4.7	标点和间距 . . . . .	216
4.7.1	块和单元标点 Block and Unit Punctuation . . . . .	216
4.7.2	标点判断 Punctuation Tests . . . . .	217
4.7.3	添加标点 Adding Punctuation . . . . .	217
4.7.4	添加空格 Adding Whitespace . . . . .	218
4.7.5	标点设置和大写 Configuring Punctuation and Capitalization . . . . .	219
4.7.6	Correcting Punctuation Tracking . . . . .	220
4.8	本地化字符串 Localization Strings . . . . .	220
4.9	本地化模块 Localization Modules . . . . .	221
4.9.1	本地化命令 Localization Commands . . . . .	222
4.9.2	Localization Keys . . . . .	223
4.10	Formatting Commands . . . . .	231
4.10.1	User-definable Commands and Hooks . . . . .	232
4.10.2	Language-specific Commands . . . . .	233
4.10.3	用户可定义的尺寸和计数器 User-definable Lengths and Counters . . . . .	234
4.10.4	辅助命令和钩子 Auxiliary Commands and Hooks . . . . .	235
4.10.5	辅助长度计数器和其它功能 Auxiliary Lengths, Counters, and Other Features . . . . .	237
4.10.6	一般目的的钩子 General Purpose Hooks . . . . .	238
4.11	提示与警告 Hints and Caveats . . . . .	240
4.11.1	条目集 Entry Sets . . . . .	240
4.11.2	电子出版信息 Electronic Publishing Information . . . . .	241
4.11.3	额外的摘要和注释 External Abstracts and Annotations . . . . .	241
4.11.4	消除姓名歧义 Name Disambiguation . . . . .	241
4.11.5	浮动体和TOC/LOT/LOF中的追踪器 Trackers in Floats and TOC/LOT/LOF . . . . .	246
4.11.6	混合编程接口 Mixing Programming Interfaces . . . . .	246
4.11.7	使用标点追踪 Using the Punctuation Tracker . . . . .	248
4.11.8	定制本地化模型 Custom Localization Modules . . . . .	252
4.11.9	编组 Grouping . . . . .	253
4.11.10	命名空间 Namespaces . . . . .	253

<b>附录</b>	<b>254</b>
-----------	------------

<b>A 默认的驱动源映射</b>	<b>254</b>
A.1 bibtex . . . . .	254
A.2 endnotexml . . . . .	254
A.3 ris . . . . .	257
A.4 zoterordfxml . . . . .	258
<b>B 默认的继承设置</b>	<b>260</b>
<b>C 默认的排序方式</b>	<b>261</b>
C.1 Alphabetic 1 . . . . .	261
C.2 Alphabetic 2 . . . . .	262
C.3 Chronological . . . . .	262
<b>D 选项集合</b>	<b>262</b>
<b>E 更新历史</b>	<b>264</b>

## 表格

1 Biber/Biblatex 兼容性 . . . . .	11
2 Supported Languages . . . . .	30
3 Date Specifications . . . . .	42
4 Capacity of bibtex8 . . . . .	46
5 Disambiguation counters . . . . .	70
6 mcite-like commands . . . . .	109
7 mcite-like syntax . . . . .	110
8 Date Interface . . . . .	161
9 Valid transliteration pairs . . . . .	197
10 Field types for \nosort . . . . .	200
11 \mkcomprange setup . . . . .	214

## 1 引言

这是关于 Biblatex 包的语法文档，使用范例文档参考文档<sup>3</sup>。快速开始，请浏览 §§ 1.1、2.1、2.2、2.3、3.1、3.3、3.6、3.7、3.11 节。

### 1.1 关于 Biblatex

Biblatex 包提供了一套与  $\LaTeX$  配合使用的高级参考文献工具。它重新实现了  $\LaTeX$  提供的参考文献功能。该包使用后端程序 Biber 来处理 Bib $\TeX$  格式的数据文件，并完成排序、标签生成和更多功能。参考文献的格式化完全由  $\TeX$  宏指令控制。具备良好的  $\LaTeX$  知识就足以设计新的参考文献著录样式和标注样式。

---

<sup>3</sup><http://ctan.org/pkg/biblatex/doc/examples>

Biblatex 也支持参考文献表细分、在一个文档内包含多个参考文献表、以及域缩写等参考文献信息表。参考文献表可以根据主题进行分块或者分段。与参考文献著录样式类似，所有的标注引用命令也可以自由定义。

提供的功能还包括：文献数据的 Unicode 支持、自定义排序、不同排序方式的多参考文献表、自定义标签和动态数据修改等。Biber/Biblatex 的版本兼容性见 § 1.5.5 节。该包可完全实现本地化，可与 babel 和 polyglossia 宏包配合使用。该包支持的语言详见表 2。

## 1.2 许可

Copyright © 2006–2012 Philipp Lehman, 2012–2013 Philip Kime, Audrey Boruvka, Joseph Wright. Permission is granted to copy, distribute and/or modify this software under the terms of the LaTeX Project Public License, version 1.3.<sup>4</sup>

## 1.3 反馈

请使用 Github 的 Biblatex 项目页报告 bug 和提交所需功能<sup>5</sup>。在提出功能需求，请确保你已经彻底研究过本手册。如果你不想报告 bug 或者请求新功能，而只是需要帮助，可以考虑在 comp.text.tex 新闻组或者 T<sub>E</sub>X-~~L~~T<sub>E</sub>X Stack Exchange 提交问题。<sup>6</sup>

## 1.4 致谢

The language modules of this package are made possible thanks to the following contributors: Augusto Ritter Stoffel, Mateus Araújo (Brazilian); Sebastià Vila-Marta (Catalan); Ivo Pletikosić (Croatian); Michal Hoftich (Czech); Jonas Nyrup (Danish); Johannes Wilm (Danish/Norwegian); Alexander van Loon, Pieter Belmans, Hendrik Maryns (Dutch); Hannu Väisänen, Janne Kujanpää (Finnish); Denis Bitouzé (French); Apostolos Syropoulos, Prokopis (Greek); Baldur Kristinsson (Icelandic); Enrico Gregorio, Andrea Marchitelli (Italian); Håkon Malmedal (Norwegian); Anastasia Kandulina, Yuriy Chernyshov (Polish); José Carlos Santos (Portuguese); Oleg Domanov (Russian); Tea Tušar and Bogdan Filipič (Slovene); Ignacio Fernández Galván (Spanish); Per Stårbäck, Carl-Gustav Werner, Filip Åsblom (Swedish).

## 1.5 前提与必备

本节介绍所需资源和兼容性问题。

### 1.5.1 必须资源

如下资源是必须的，否则 Biblatex 无法正常工作。

---

<sup>4</sup><http://www.ctan.org/tex-archive/macros/latex/base/lppl.txt>

<sup>5</sup><http://github.com/plk/biblatex>

<sup>6</sup><http://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/tagged/biblatex>



**$\varepsilon$ - $\text{\TeX}$**  Biblatex 宏包依赖于  $\varepsilon$ - $\text{\TeX}$ 。很长时间以来， $\text{\TeX}$  发行版就带有  $\varepsilon$ - $\text{\TeX}$ ，并且近来主流的发行版都默认使用。Biblatex 宏包会检查是否在  $\varepsilon$ - $\text{\TeX}$  下运行。只需要像平常一样编译你的文档即可，基本上是可以运行的。如果你得到错误信息，尝试用 `elatex` 或 `pdfelatex` 分别代替 `latex` 或 `pdflatex` 来编译文档。

**Biber** Biber 是 Biblatex 默认的后端程序。你只需要  $\text{\TeX}$  或者 Biber 中的一个后端程序。 $\text{\TeX}$ Live 中带有 Biber，也可以从 SourceForge 得到。<sup>7</sup> Biber 使用 C 程序库 `btparse` 解析  $\text{\TeX}$  格式文件，这既为了兼容  $\text{\TeX}$  的解析规则，也用于修正一些常见问题。详见 Perl 的 `Text::BibTeX` 模块（module）的手册页。<sup>8</sup>

**etoolbox** 自动加载，提供 Biblatex 所需的通用编程工具，可以从 CTAN 下载。<sup>9</sup>

**kvoptions** 自动加载，用于内部选项处理。可以和 `oberdiek` 宏包集一起从 CTAN 下载。<sup>10</sup>

**logreq** 自动加载，它提供的前端可用于将机器可读信息写入辅助 log 文件，可以从 CTAN 下载。<sup>11</sup>

**xstring** 自动加载，提供了一些高级字符串处理宏。可以从 CTAN 下载。<sup>12</sup>

除了上述资源，Biblatex 还需要 `keyval`、`ifthen` 以及 `url` 等标准  $\text{\TeX}$  宏包。常见的  $\text{\TeX}$  发行版中都会带有这些宏包，而且本宏包会自动加载。

### 1.5.2 推荐包

这一节所列出的宏包对于运行 Biblatex 不是必须的。不过，它们可以提供一些值得推荐的额外功能，或者加强已有的特征。宏包载入的顺序并不重要。

**babel/polyglossia** `babel` 和 `polyglossia` 宏包提供了多语种排版的核心架构。如果你使用美式英语以外的语言写作，那么强烈推荐使用这两个宏包中的一个。你应当在 Biblatex 之前载入 `babel` 或 `polyglossia`，这样 Biblatex 宏包可以自动检测。

**csquotes** 如果使用该宏包，Biblatex 会使用它的引用语工具给相应标题加上语言相关的引号。如果没有，那么 Biblatex 会使用作为后备的美式英语的引号。当使用其它语言写作时，强烈推荐使用 `csquotes` 宏包。<sup>13</sup>

**xpatch** `xpatch` 宏包为 Biblatex 宏、驱动和格式指令扩展了 `etoolbox` 的一些补丁命令。<sup>14</sup>

### 1.5.3 兼容的包

Biblatex 宏包专门为本节所列出的文档类和宏包提供了兼容性代码。

**hyperref** `hyperref` 宏包将引用转化为超链接。详见 § 3.1.2.1 一节中的 `hyperref` 和 `backref` 宏包选项。当使用 `hyperref` 宏包时，最好在 Biblatex 之后载入。

---

<sup>7</sup><http://biblatex-biber.sourceforge.net/>

<sup>8</sup><http://search.cpan.org/~ams/Text-BibTeX>

<sup>9</sup><http://ctan.org/pkg/etoolbox>

<sup>10</sup><http://ctan.org/pkg/kvoptions>

<sup>11</sup><http://ctan.org/pkg/logreq/>

<sup>12</sup><http://ctan.org/pkg/xstring/>

<sup>13</sup><http://ctan.org/pkg/csquotes/>

<sup>14</sup><http://ctan.org/pkg/xpatch/>



**showkeys** `showkeys` 宏包会打印出文本引用和参考条目的内部键值。宏包载入的顺序不重要。

**memoir** 使用 `memoir` 文档类会调整默认的参考文献标题，从而与该文类默认的页面布局相协调。更多使用提示请参考 § 3.12.2 一节。

**KOMA-Script** 使用 `scrartcl`、`scrbook` 或 `scrreprt` 文档类中的任何一个都会调整默认的参考文献标题，从而与这些文档类默认的页面布局相协调。更多使用提示请参考 § 3.12.1 一节。

### 1.5.4 不兼容的包

本节列出了与 Biblatex 不兼容的宏包。Biblatex 从根本上重新实现了 L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 的文献功能，因此很自然地与修改这些功能的所有宏包相冲突。这并不是 Biblatex 独有的——在列出的宏包中，出于同样的原因，有些宏包相互之间也是不兼容的。

**babelbib** `babelbib` 宏包为多语种文献提供了支持，这正是 Biblatex 的一个典型特点。使用 `langid` 域和宏包选项 `autolang` 即可实现类似的功能。请注意，当载入 `babel` 或 `polyglossia` 宏包时 Biblatex 会自动调整主文档的语言。如果想要在文献中每个条目里切换语言，你只需要以上提到的特性。具体细节请参考 §§ 2.2.3 和 3.1.2.1 以及 § 3.8 几节。

**backref** `backref` 宏包可以在参考文献中创建反向引用。类似的功能请参考 § 3.1.2.1 一节中的宏包选项 `hyperref` 和 `backref`。

**bibtopic** `bibtopic` 宏包支持根据主题、类型或者其它标准细分文献。对于按照主题细分文献，可以参考 § 3.6.7 一节的类型特征以及 § 3.6.2 一节中相应的。另外，你也可以使用 `keywords` 域结合 `keyword` 和 `notkeyword` 过滤器来实现相应功能，细节请参考 §§ 2.2.3 和 3.6.2。对于按照类型细分文献，可以使用 `type` 和 `nottype` 过滤器。相关例子请参考 § 3.11.4。

**bibunits** `bibunits` 宏包支持多个部分（例如每一章内）的参考文献。请参考 `chapterbib`。

**chapterbib** `chapterbib` 宏包支持多个部分的参考文献。使用 `refsection` 环境和 `section` 过滤器可以实现相应效果。此外，你也可能需要 `refsegment` 环境和 `segment` 过滤器。细节请参考 §§ 3.6.5、3.6.6、3.6.2。相关实例请参考 § 3.11.3。

**cite** `cite` 可以自动对引用编号进行排序，并且将连续的数字缩写为一个区间。它也可以配置引用中的标点符号。关于引用编号的排序和缩写，请参考 § 3.1.2.1 一节中的 `sortcites` 宏包选项和 § 3.3.1 一节中的 `numeric-comp` 引用样式。关于可配置的标点请参考 § 3.9。

**citeref** 另一个可以创建反向引用的宏包。参考 `backref` 条目。

**inlinebib** `inlinebib` 宏包用于脚注文献这种传统引用样式。相应的功能请参考 § 3.3.1 中详细的引用样式说明。

**jurabib** `jurabib` 宏包原本用于法学和司法文件（主要是德文）中的引用，它也为人文学科中的使用者提供了一些特性。在提供这些特征方面，`jurabib` 和 Biblatex 有一些类

似之处，但是采用的手段是截然不同的。由于 `jurabib` 和 `Biblatex` 都是那种功能齐备的宏包，鉴于篇幅这里不再赘述它们的异同之处。

- mcite** `mcite` 提供了分组引用的支持，也就是说，不同条目可以指向同一处引用，并且在参考文献中作为同一条目列在一起。引用组依照被引用的条目定义，不过这只在未排序的参考文献中有效。`Biblatex` 宏包同样支持分组引用，在本手册中称之为“条目集”或“参考文献集”。细节请参考 §§ 3.11.5、3.6.12、3.7.10。
- mciteplus** `mcite` 宏包的一个加强版的重新实现，可以支持排序文献的分组。参考 `mcite` 宏包条目。
- multibib** `multibib` 宏包支持依照主题或其它标准细分文献。参考 `bibtopic` 宏包条目。
- natbib** `natbib` 宏包支持编号和作者–年份引用格式，以及 `cite` 宏包中的合并排序和压缩代码。它同样提供了一些额外的引用命令和几种设置选项。相应的功能请参考 § 3.3.1 中的 `numeric` 和 `author-year` 引用样式及其变种，§ 3.1.2.1 中的 `sortcites` 宏包选项，§ 3.7 中的引用命令，以及 §§ 3.6.8、3.6.9、3.9 中讨论的工具。也可以参考 § 3.7.9。
- splitbib** `splitbib` 宏包支持按照主题细分文献。参考 `bibtopic` 宏包条目。
- titlesec** `titlesec` 宏包重新定义了一些用户水平的文档划分命令，例如 `\chapter` 或 `\section`。这种方法与 `Biblatex` 的 `refsection` 和 `refsegment` 选项设置引起的内部命令改动不兼容，具体描述在 § 3.1.2.1 一节。
- ucs** `ucs` 宏包提供 UTF-8 编码输入的支持。可以使用 `inputenc` 宏包的标准 `utf8` 模块或者 `XYTeX`、`LuaTeX` 等支持 Unicode 的编译引擎来实现这一功能。

### 1.5.5 Biber/Biblatex 兼容性

`Biber` 的版本与 `Biblatex` 的版本有着紧密的联系。你需要二者正确的组合。如果发现来自于不兼容的 `Biblatex` 版本信息，`Biber` 会在处理过程中发出警告。表 1 展示了最近一些版本的兼容性状况。

## 2 数据库指南

本节描述 `blx-dm.def` 中定义的默认数据模型。该文件是宏包的一部分。该数据模型的定义由 § 4.5.4 节中的宏实现。因此，可以重新定义 `Biblatex` 和 `Biber` 所用的数据模型，使得数据源可以包括新的条目类型和域（当然这需要样式文件支持）。数据模型规范还允许定义约束，使得数据源可以根据数据模型进行校验（使用 `Biber` 的 `--validate_datamodel` 选项）。若需要定制数据模型，请参考 `blx-dm.def` 文件和 § 4.5.4 节。

### 2.1 条目类型

本节介绍 `Biblatex` 默认数据模型支持的条目类型及每种条目类型支持的域。

Biber 版本	Biblatex 版本
2.6	3.5, 3.6
2.5	3.4
2.4	3.3
2.3	3.2
2.2	3.1
2.1	3.0
2.0	3.0
1.9	2.9
1.8	2.8
1.7	2.7
1.6	2.6
1.5	2.5
1.4	2.4
1.3	2.3
1.2	2.1, 2.2
1.1	2.1
1.0	2.0
0.9.9	1.7x
0.9.8	1.7x
0.9.7	1.7x
0.9.6	1.7x
0.9.5	1.6x
0.9.4	1.5x
0.9.3	1.5x
0.9.2	1.4x
0.9.1	1.4x
0.9	1.4x

**Table 1: Biber/Biblatex 兼容性**

### 2.1.1 常规类型

下面的列表说明了每种条目类型支持的域。注意，每种条目类型的域的使用是由参考文献样式决定的。因此，下面的列表有两个目的，一是说明有本包提供的标准样式支持的域，二是作为定制样式的模板。注意，所谓“必选”域并不是在所有情况下都严格必不可少的，详见 § 2.3.2 节。而标记“可选”的域技术上是可选的。通常来说，文献格式规则往往不仅需要“必选”域。默认的数据模型为一些数据域、ISBN 和 `gender` 等特殊域定义了一些约束。但这些约束仅用于校验这些域是否合乎数据模型（通过 Biber 的 `--validate_datamodel` 选项）。通用域如 `abstract`、`annotation`、`label` 和 `shorthand` 并不在下面的列表中，因为它们独立于条目类型；§ 2.2.3 节讨论的特殊域同样也独立于条目类型，因此也不在下面的列表中。默认的支持类型见文件 `blx-dm.def`，内有 Biblatex 数据模型的完整规范。

**article** 指期刊、杂志、报纸或其他周期性刊物的文章。它是独立个体，有自己的标题。刊物名在 `journaltitle` 域中给出。如果在出版物标题外，期号也有自己的标题，那么在 `issuetitle` 域中给出。注意，`editor` 及相关域指的是期刊，而 `translator` 及其相关域则涉及到文章。

必选域: `author, title, journaltitle, year/date`

可选域: `translator, annotator, commentator, subtitle, titleaddon, editor, editora, editorb, editorc, journalsubtitle, issuetitle, issuesubtitle, language, origlanguage, series, volume, number, eid, issue, month, pages, version, note, issn, addendum, pubstate, doi, eprint, eprintclass, eprinttype, url, urldate`

**book** 单卷本的书籍，有一名或多名作者，并且这些作者作为整体共享该著作。该条目类型也涵盖了传统 BibTeX 的 `@inbook` 类型，详见 § 2.3.1 节。

必选域: `author, title, year/date`

可选域: `editor, editora, editorb, editorc, translator, annotator, commentator, introduction, foreword, afterword, subtitle, titleaddon, maintitle, mainsubtitle, maintitleaddon, language, origlanguage, volume, part, edition, volumes, series, number, note, publisher, location, isbn, chapter, pages, pagetotal, addendum, pubstate, doi, eprint, eprintclass, eprinttype, url, urldate`

**mvbook** 多卷本书籍。为了向后兼容，多卷书也可用 `@book` 条目类型。然而建议最好使用专用条目类型 `@mvbook`。

必选域: `author, title, year/date`

可选域: `editor, editora, editorb, editorc, translator, annotator, commentator, introduction, foreword, afterword, subtitle, titleaddon, language, origlanguage, edition, volumes, series, number, note, publisher, location, isbn, pagetotal, addendum, pubstate, doi, eprint, eprintclass, eprinttype, url, urldate`

**inbook** 书的一部分。它是一个独立的单元，有自己的标题。注意，该类型的定义不同于标准 BibTeX 给出的定义，见 § 2.3.1 节。

必选域: author, title, booktitle, year/date

可选域: bookauthor, editor, editora, editorb, editorc, translator, annotator, commentator, introduction, foreword, afterword, subtitle, titleaddon, maintitle, mainsubtitle, maintitleaddon, booksubtitle, booktitleaddon, language, origlanguage, volume, part, edition, volumes, series, number, note, publisher, location, isbn, chapter, pages, addendum, pubstate, doi, eprint, eprintclass, eprinttype, url, urldate

**bookinbook** 类似于 @inbook, 但用于原本已经单独出版的作品。典型的例子是在一位作者的作品集中再版的书籍。

**suppbook** @book (书) 的补充材料, 与 @inbook 条目类型很相近。@inbook 用于一书中自己带有标题的部分, 例如一本散文集中同一作者的单独一篇散文; 而本条目用于诸如序言、导论、前言、后记等部分, 通常只有一般性的标题。一些样式指南需要定制该类型的格式区别于 @inbook。不过标准样式则认为它是 @inbook 的别名。

**booklet** 类似于书籍, 但没有正式的出版者或赞助机构。如果可以的话, 使用 howpublished 域可以提供自由格式的出版信息。也可以用 type 域。

必选域: author/editor, title, year/date

可选域: subtitle, titleaddon, language, howpublished, type, note, location, chapter, pages, pagetotal, addendum, pubstate, doi, eprint, eprintclass, eprinttype, url, urldate

**collection** 单卷本的作品集, 包括了一些有不同标题和作者的独立作品。作品集没有总体意义上的作者, 但通常有一位编辑。

必选域: editor, title, year/date

可选域: editora, editorb, editorc, translator, annotator, commentator, introduction, foreword, afterword, subtitle, titleaddon, maintitle, mainsubtitle, maintitleaddon, language, origlanguage, volume, part, edition, volumes, series, number, note, publisher, location, isbn, chapter, pages, pagetotal, addendum, pubstate, doi, eprint, eprintclass, eprinttype, url, urldate

**mvcollection** 多卷本作品集。为了向后兼容, 也可用 @collection 条目类型。然而建议最好使用专用条目类型 @mvcollection。

必选域: editor, title, year/date

可选域: editora, editorb, editorc, translator, annotator, commentator, introduction, foreword, afterword, subtitle, titleaddon, language, origlanguage, edition, volumes, series, number, note, publisher, location, isbn, pagetotal, addendum, pubstate, doi, eprint, eprintclass, eprinttype, url, urldate

**incollection** 作品集中的一篇作品, 是一个独立的单元, 有自己的标题。author 指的是 title 的作者, 而 editor 指的是 booktitle (即文集的标题) 的编者。

必选域: author, title, booktitle, year/date

可选域: editor, editora, editorb, editorc, translator, annotator, commentator, introduction, foreword, afterword, subtitle, titleaddon, maintitle, mainsubtitle, maintitleaddon, booksubtitle, booktitleaddon, language, origlanguage, volume, part, edition, volumes, series, number, note, publisher, location, isbn, chapter, pages, addendum, pubstate, doi, eprint, eprintclass, eprinttype, url, urldate

**suppcollection** @collection 中的补充材料。类似于 @suppbook 之于 @book。标准样式将其视为 @incollection 的别名。

**manual** 技术或其它文档，不必是出版的形式。按照 § 2.3.2 一节，author 或者 editor 是可以省略的。

必选域: author/editor, title, year/date

可选域: subtitle, titleaddon, language, edition, type, series, number, version, note, organization, publisher, location, isbn, chapter, pages, pagetotal, addendum, pubstate, doi, eprint, eprintclass, eprinttype, url, urldate

**misc** 备选类型，用于无法归入任何其它类别的条目。适当的话，使用 howpublished 域，可以提供自由格式的出版信息。也可以使用 type 域。按照 § 2.3.2 节，author、editor 和 year 可以省略。

必选域: author/editor, title, year/date

可选域: subtitle, titleaddon, language, howpublished, type, version, note, organization, location, date, month, year, addendum, pubstate, doi, eprint, eprintclass, eprinttype, url, urldate

**online** 在线资源。按照 § 2.3.2 节，author, editor 和 year 可以省略。该类型用于网址等本质上的在线资源。注意：所有条目类型都支持 url 域。比如，当增加一篇来自在线期刊的文章时，应优先使用 @article 条目和它的 url 域。

必选域: author/editor, title, year/date, url

可选域: subtitle, titleaddon, language, version, note, organization, date, month, year, addendum, pubstate, urldate

**patent** 专利或专利申请。号码或记录号在 number 域中给出。type 域用于描述类型，location 域则用于描述专利范围，如果存在与 type 领域不同的情况。注意，location 在本条目中以键值列表的方式处理，详见 § 2.2.1 节。

必选域: author, title, number, year/date

可选域: holder, subtitle, titleaddon, type, version, location, note, date, month, year, addendum, pubstate, doi, eprint, eprintclass, eprinttype, url, urldate

**periodical** 周期性刊物中完整的一期，比如某一期刊的某一期特刊。标题在 title 域中给出。如果该期在期刊的主标题外有其自己的标题，那么由 issuetitle 域中给出。根据 § 2.3.2 节，editor 域可以省略。

必选域: editor, title, year/date

可选域: editora, editorb, editorc, subtitle, issuetitle, issuesubtitle, language, series, volume, number, issue, date, month, year, note, issn, addendum, pubstate, doi, eprint, eprintclass, eprinttype, url, urldate

**suppperiodical** @periodical 的补充材料，类似于 @suppbook 之于 @book。如果你意识到 @article 类型其实就是 @inperiodical，那么本条目的作用显而易见了。该类型应用于只有一般性题目的栏目，例如固定专栏、讣告、致编辑的信等。一些样式指南会严格定制该类型的格式区别于 @article。不过标准样式则认为它是 @article 的别名。

**proceedings** 单卷本的会议记录。这一类型与 @collection 非常相似。它支持可选的 organization 域用于给出主办机构。根据 § 2.3.2 节，editor 域可以省略。

必选域: title, year/date

可选域: editor, subtitle, titleaddon, maintitle, mainsubtitle, maintitleaddon, eventtitle, eventtitleaddon, eventdate, venue, language, volume, part, volumes, series, number, note, organization, publisher, location, month, isbn, chapter, pages, pagetotal, addendum, pubstate, doi, eprint, eprintclass, eprinttype, url, urldate

**mvproceedings** 多卷 @proceedings 条目，类似于 @mvbook 之于 @book。

必选域: title, year/date

可选域: editor, subtitle, titleaddon, eventtitle, eventtitleaddon, eventdate, venue, language, volumes, series, number, note, organization, publisher, location, month, isbn, pagetotal, addendum, pubstate, doi, eprint, eprintclass, eprinttype, url, urldate

**inproceedings** 会议集中的一篇文章，与 @incollection 类似。支持 organization 可选域。

必选域: author, title, booktitle, year/date

可选域: editor, subtitle, titleaddon, maintitle, mainsubtitle, maintitleaddon, booksubtitle, booktitleaddon, eventtitle, eventtitleaddon, eventdate, venue, language, volume, part, volumes, series, number, note, organization, publisher, location, month, isbn, chapter, pages, addendum, pubstate, doi, eprint, eprintclass, eprinttype, url, urldate

**reference** 单卷本的参考文献集，诸如百科全书或词典等。它是通用 @collection 条目的特殊变种。标准样式将其视为 @collection 的别名。

**mvreference** 多卷本的 @reference 条目。标准样式将其视为 @mvcollection 的别名。出于向后兼容性，也可以使用 @reference 条目。不过，还是建议使用专门的 @mvreference 条目类型。

**inreference** 参考文献集中的一篇文章，它是通用 @incollection 条目的特殊变种。标准样式将其视为 @incollection 的别名。



**report** 由大学或其它机构发行的技术报告、研究报告以及白皮书等。使用 `type` 域来确定报告的类型。主办机构由 `institution` 域给出。

必选域: `author, title, type, institution, year/date`

可选域: `subtitle, titleaddon, language, number, version, note, location, month, isrn, chapter, pages, pagetotal, addendum, pubstate, doi, eprint, eprintclass, eprinttype, url, urldate`

**set** 条目集，是一种特殊类型条目，详见 § 3.11.5 节。

**thesis** 为满足教育机构的学位要求而写的学位论文。使用 `type` 域确定学位论文类型。

必选域: `author, title, type, institution, year/date`

可选域: `subtitle, titleaddon, language, note, location, month, isbn, chapter, pages, pagetotal, addendum, pubstate, doi, eprint, eprintclass, eprinttype, url, urldate`

**unpublished** 有作者和标题但是没有正式出版的作品，例如手稿或演讲稿等。需要的话，可使用 `howpublished` 域和 `note` 域提供自由格式的附加信息。

必选域: `author, title, year/date`

可选域: `subtitle, titleaddon, language, howpublished, note, location, isbn, date, month, year, addendum, pubstate, url, urldate`

**xdata** 特殊类型，`@xdata` 条目处理的数据可以被其它条目用 `xdata` 域继承。这一条目类型只是作为数据容器，不可被引用或加入到参考文献中，详见 § 3.11.6 节。

**custom[a-f]** 用于特殊参考文献样式的自定义类型，标准样式中不使用。

### 2.1.2 类型别名

本节中列出的条目类型用于向后兼容传统的  $\text{\LaTeX}$  样式。这些别名由后端在数据处理时一并处理，样式中仅能见到这些别名所指代的类型，而不是别名本身。所有未知的条目类型一般输出为 `@misc` 条目。

**conference**  $\text{\LaTeX}$  遗留的 `@inproceedings` 的别名。

**electronic** `@online` 的别名。

**mastersthesis** 类似于 `@thesis` 不过 `type` 域是可选的，默认为‘Master’s thesis’。可使用 `type` 域重定义。

**phdthesis** 类似于 `@thesis` 不过 `type` 域是可选的，默认为‘PhD thesis’。可使用 `type` 域重定义。

**techreport** 类似于 `@report` 不过 `type` 域是可选的，默认为‘technical report’。可使用 `type` 域重定义。

**www** `@online` 的别名，用于兼容 `jurabib` 宏包。

### 2.1.3 不支持的条目类型

本节中的条目类型类似于自定义类型 `@custom[a-f]`。即，标准样式不支持这些类型，若使用标准样式，将会以 `@misc` 条目类处理。

**artwork** 视觉艺术作品，例如绘画、雕塑和装饰艺术。

**audio** 录音品，典型的有音频 CD、DVD、录音磁带或类似媒介。参考 `@music` 类型。

**bibnote** 这一特殊条目类型并不像其它类型那样用于 `bib` 文件中。它主要提供给 `notes2bib` 等第三方宏包，用于将注记并入文献中。注记应该在 `note` 域中。请谨记，`@bibnote` 类型与 `\defbibnote` 命令毫无关系。`\defbibnote` 命令用来在参考文献的开始或末尾添加评论，而 `@bibnote` 类型是为那些提供尾注参考条目的宏包准备的。

**commentary** 与常规书籍地位不同的评注，如司法评论等。

**image** 图像、图画、摄影和类似媒介。

**jurisdiction** 法庭判决、法庭记录和类似物。

**legislation** 法律、法案、立法提案和类似物。

**legal** 协议等的法律文书。

**letter** 私人通信，例如信件、电子邮件、备忘录等。

**movie** 动画。参考 `@video` 类型。

**music** 音乐刻录，`@audio` 的一种具体变种形式。

**performance** 音乐或戏剧表演和其它一些表演艺术作品。这一条目类型指的是表演的事件，而不是录制，评论或付印的剧本。

**review** 一些其它工作的回顾总结。这是 `@article` 类型的一个具体变种。标准样式将其视为 `@article` 的一个别称。

**software** 电脑软件。

**standard** 由一个标准组织（例如国际标准组织）发布的国家或国际标准。

**video** 视听记录，典型的包括 DVD、VHS 录像带或其它类似媒介。参考 `@movie` 类型。

## 2.2 条目域 Entry Fields

本节概述 Biblatex 默认数据模型支持的域。数据模型使用的数据类型的介绍请参考 § 2.2.1 小节，实际的域列表见 §§ 2.2.2 和 2.2.3 小节。

### 2.2.1 数据类型 Data Types

在 bib 文件等数据源中，所有的文献数据都在域中指定。其中一些域，例如 `author` 和 `editor`，可以包括一个项目列表。在 `BibTeX` 文件格式中，这种列表结构通过关键词 “and” 来分隔列表中的每一项。`Biblatex` 宏包实现了三种不同的数据类型来处理文献数据：姓名列表（name list）、文本列表（literal list）和域（field）。此外，列表和域中还有一些子类型，以及一个内容类型（content type）用于从语义上区分那些无法根据数据类型进行区分的域（见 § 4.5.4 节）。这一节大致概括了本宏包所支持的数据类型。关于 `BibTeX` 文件格式域到 `Biblatex` 的数据类型的对应，请参考 §§ 2.2.2 和 2.2.3 等节。

**姓名列表（name list）** 根据分隔词 and 将其解析并划分成独立的项目。然后列表中的每一项进一步分成四个姓名成分：<sup>15</sup> 名（given name，默认值）、姓名前缀（name prefix，如 von、van、of、da、de、della 等）、姓（family name），以及姓名后缀（name suffix，如 junior、senior 等）。可以通过调整数据模型的定义来定制有效的姓名成分，见 § 4.2.3 节。在 bib 文件中，姓名列表可以用关键词 “and others” 来截断。典型的姓名列表是 `author` 和 `editor`。

在默认的数据模型中，姓名列表域会为每一个姓名列表自动创建相应的 `\ifuse*` 测试（见 § 4.6.2 节）。同时也自动创建了一个 `ifuse*` 选项用以控制姓名的标记和排序行为（见 § 3.1.3.1 节）。`Biber` 支持定制姓名成分组合，不过目前的定义与传统 `BibTeX` 支持的姓名成分相同：

- 姓（family name，即 ‘last’ 部分）
- 名（given name，即 ‘first’ 部分）
- 前缀（name prefix，即 ‘von’ 部分）
- 后缀（name suffix，即 ‘Jr’ 部分）

默认数据模型使用 `\DeclareDatamodelConstant` 命令（见 4.5.4 节）将支持的姓名成分定义成一个恒定列表。然而，由于姓名成分通常需要硬编码到文献驱动程序和后端处理程序中，因此，如果想支持额外的姓名成分，将其简单地添加到姓名成分列表中是远远不够的。关于如何定义和使用定制姓名成分的细节，可以参考示例文件 `93-nameparts.tex`。关于如何使用定制姓名成分来消除姓名歧义的信息，参见 § 4.11.4 节中的 `\DeclareUniquenameTemplate` 命令。

**文本列表（literal list）** 由分隔词 and 划分成独立的项目，但各项不再进一步细分。在 bib 文件中，文本列表可以用关键词 “and others” 来截断。其中又有两个子类型：

**（狭义的）文本列表（literal lists in the strict sense）** 按照如上所述进行处理。各独立的项目就简单如实打印。典型的文本列表是 `publisher` 和 `location`。

---

<sup>15</sup> 这是针对西方人名的划分。对于中文来说，姓名无需划分。当然中文名的拼音可以进行对应的划分。——译注

**关键字列表 (key list)** 是文本列表的变种，可以包括可打印的数据和本地化的关键字。对于列表中每一项，首先测试它是否是已知的本地化关键字（本地化关键字的默认定义在 § 4.9.2 节中）。如果是，那么打印本地化的字符串；否则这些项就按本身打印出来。典型的关键字列表是 `language`。

**域 (field)** 通常以整体打印。有如下多种子类型：

**文本域 (literal field)** 会如实打印。典型的文本域是 `title` 和 `note`。

**范围域 (range field)** 包含了一个或更多范围，其中所有的短划线都规范化用 `\bibrangedash` 命令取代。一个范围指的是一个非短划线部分后紧跟一个或多个短划线再紧跟一个非短划线部分（比如 5–7）。任意数目的连续短划线都只会产生一个表示范围的横线。典型的范围域是 `pages` 域。也可以参考 `\bibrangessep` 命令，它用于定制多重范围间的分隔符。如果不包括范围，那么范围域将被忽略并生成警告信息。可以使用 `\DeclareSourcecmap` 命令在解析范围域之前对其进行整理（见 § 4.5.3 节）。

**整数域 (integer field)** 包含的整数当打印时会转化为序数或者字符串。典型的例子是 `extrayear` 和 `volume` 域。这些域会按照数字进行排序。出于排序的目的，Biber 会尝试将非阿拉伯数字的表示（例如罗马数字）转成相应的整数。

**日期部分域 (datepart field)** 处理未格式化的整数，当打印时会转化为序数或者字符串。典型的例子是 `month` 域。在数据模型中，对于每一个数据类型为 `date` 的域 `X`，会自动创建带有如下名称的日期部分域：

```
<datatype>year, <datatype>endyear, <datatype>month, <datatype>endmonth,  
<datatype>day, <datatype>endday, <datatype>hour, <datatype>endhour,  
<datatype>minute, <datatype>endminute, <datatype>second,  
<datatype>endsecond, <datatype>timezone, <datatype>endtimezone
```

其中，对于任何 `datatype=date` 的数据模型域，`<datatype>` 是在 ‘date’ 之前的字符串。例如，在默认数据模型中，日期域 `date` 对应的是 ‘event’, ‘orig’, ‘url’ 和空字符串 ‘’。

**日期域 (date field)** 处理形如 `yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn[+-][hh[:nn]Z]` 格式的日期，或者格式为 `yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn[+-][hh[:nn]Z]/yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn[+-][hh[:nn]Z]` 的日期范围，或者其它 EDTF level 1 允许的格式，见 § 2.3.8 节。日期域的特殊之处在于，日期会被解析并分解成各个日期部分类型的成分。当数据模型中定义一个数据类型为 `date` 的域时，会自动定义并识别相应的 `datepart` 组件（见上文）。典型的例子是 `date` 域。

**抄录域 (verbatim field)** 在抄录模式下处理，可以包含特殊字符。典型的抄录域是 `file` 和 `doi`。

**URI 域** 在抄录模式下处理，可以包含特殊字符。如果看起来不像其实质，也可以进行 URL 转义。（They are also URL-escaped if they don’t look like they already are.）典型的例子是 `url` 域。

**分隔值域 ( separated value field )** 被分隔的文本值列表。例子是 `keywords` 和 `options` 域。通过 `xsvsep` 选项可以将分隔符配置成任何 Perl 正则表达式，其默认值是通常 BibTeX 中的（西文）逗号或者逗号加空格。

**模式域 ( pattern field )** 是必须匹配某一特定模式的文本域。例子有 § 2.2.3 一节中的 `gender` 域。

**关键字域 ( key field )** 可以处理可打印的数据或本地化的关键字。首先测试是否是已知的本地化关键字键值（本地化关键字的默认定义在 § 4.9.2 一节中）。如果是，就打印本地化的字符串；否则，就按本身来打印。典型的例子是 `type` 域。

**代码域 ( code field )** 处理 TeX 代码。

### 2.2.2 数据域 Data Fields

本节所列的域是在默认数据模型中处理可打印数据的常规域。左边的名称是域的默认数据模型名，会在 Biblatex 和后端使用。右边则是相应的 Biblatex 数据类型。不同数据类型的解释请参考 § 2.2.1 节。

一些域标记为“label”域，这说明当打印文献列表时（在 § 3.6.4 节的意义下）这些域通常用于标签缩写。Biblatex 会自动创建支持这些域的宏，详见 § 3.6.4。

`abstract` 域 (文本)

该域用来记录 `bib` 文件中的摘要，在某些特别的文献样式会打印出来。但在所有的标准文献样式中都不会使用。

`addendum` 域 (文本)

在条目末尾打印的杂项文献数据。它与 `note` 域类似，而不同之处是在文献条目末尾打印。

`afterword` 列表 (姓名)

后记的作者。如果与 `editor` 或 `translator` 相同，那么标准样式在参考文献中就会自动把这些域关联起来。参考 `introduction` 域和 `foreword` 域。

`annotation` 域 (文本)

该域在实现带注释的文献样式时很有用。所有的标准文献样式都不使用。请注意，该域与 `annotator` 域毫无关系，后者是释文（被引用著作的一部分）的作者。

`annotator` 列表 (姓名)

释文的作者。如果与 `editor` 或 `translator` 相同，那么标准样式在参考文献中就会自动把这些域关联起来。参考 `commentator` 域。

`author` 列表 (姓名)

`title` 域的作者。

<code>authortype</code>	域 (关键字)
	作者的类型。该域会影响介绍作者的字符串。标准文献样式不使用。
<code>bookauthor</code>	列表 (姓名)
	<code>booktitle</code> 域的作者。
<code>bookpagination</code>	域 (关键字)
	如果该作品是另一件作品的一部分，该域就是被附作品的分页格式。也就是说， <code>bookpagination</code> 相对于 <code>pagination</code> 正如同 <code>booktitle</code> 相对于 <code>title</code> 。该域的值会影响 <code>pages</code> 和 <code>pagetotal</code> 域的格式。关键字应当是简单的形式。可能的关键字包括 <code>page</code> 、 <code>column</code> 、 <code>line</code> 、 <code>verse</code> 、 <code>section</code> 和 <code>paragraph</code> 等。参考 <code>pagination</code> 域以及 § 2.3.10 节。
<code>booksubtitle</code>	域 (文本)
	<code>booktitle</code> 的副标题。如果 <code>subtitle</code> 域指的是一个更大出版物中的一部分作品的副标题，那么该域则给出了整个作品的副标题。参考 <code>subtitle</code> 。
<code>booktitle</code>	域 (文本)
	如果 <code>title</code> 域指的是一个更大出版物中的一部分工作的标题，那么该域则给出了整个作品的标题。参考 <code>title</code> 。
<code>booktitleaddon</code>	域 (文本)
	<code>booktitle</code> 的附语，会用不同的字体打印。
<code>chapter</code>	域 (文本)
	作品的章节或其它单元。
<code>commentator</code>	列表 (姓名)
	作品评论的作者。请注意，该域用于那种带评论的作品版本，即，在作者之外还有一位评论者。如果作品是独立的评论，那么评论者应该在 <code>author</code> 域中给出。如果评论者与 <code>editor</code> 或 <code>translator</code> 相同，那么标准样式就会在文献中自动将这些域关联起来。参考 <code>annotator</code> 域。
<code>date</code>	域 (日期)
	出版日期。参考 <code>month</code> 和 <code>year</code> 域以及 § 2.3.8 节。
<code>doi</code>	域 (抄录)
	作品的数字对象标识符 (Digital Object Identifier, DOI)。
<code>edition</code>	域 (整数或文本)
	出版物的版次。这必须是整数而不是序数。不要用 <code>edition={First}</code> 或 <code>edition={1st}</code> ，而要用 <code>edition={1}</code> 。文献样式会将其转为跟语言相关的序数。也可以用文本字符串表示版次，例如 “Third, revised and expanded edition”。

**editor** 列表 (姓名)

title、booktitle 或者 maintitle 的编辑，这取决于条目类型。如果不是“editor”的话，使用 editortype 域来确定具体的角色。更多提示参考 § 2.3.6 节。

**editora** 列表 (姓名)

次要编辑，执行汇集、编校等不同编辑任务。使用 editoratype 域来确定具体的角色。更多提示参考 § 2.3.6 节。

**editorb** 列表 (姓名)

另一位执行不同任务的次要编辑。使用 editorbtype 域来确定具体的角色。更多提示参考 § 2.3.6 节。

**editorc** 列表 (姓名)

另一位执行不同编辑任务的次要编辑。使用 editorctype 域来确定具体的角色。更多提示参考 § 2.3.6 节。

**editortype** 域 (关键字)

editor 执行的编辑任务类型。默认支持的任务包括 editor、compiler、founder、continuator、redactor、reviser 和 collaborator。默认值是“editor”，此时该域可以省略。更多提示参考 § 2.3.6 节。

**editoratype** 域 (关键字)

类似于 editortype 但对应的是 editora 域。更多提示参考 § 2.3.6 节。

**editorbtype** 域 (关键字)

类似于 editortype 但对应的是 editorb 域。更多提示参考 § 2.3.6 节。

**editorctype** 域 (关键字)

类似于 editortype 但对应的是 editorc 域。更多提示参考 § 2.3.6 节。

**eid** 域 (文本)

@article 的电子标识符 (electronic identifier)。

**entrysubtype** 域 (文本)

该域用于确定一个条目类型的子类型。它不会在标准样式中使用，但可用于支持细粒化条目类型的文献样式。

**eprint** 域 (抄录)

在线出版物的电子标识符。它大致相当于 DOI，但针对于某个档案、资源库、服务或系统。参考 § 3.11.7 一节以及 eprinttype 和 eprintclass 域。



**eprintclass** 域 (文本)

由 **eprinttype** 域指明的资源额外信息。它可以是档案的一部分、标识服务的路径、某个排序的分类等等。参考 § 3.11.7 一节以及 **eprint** 和 **eprinttype** 域。

**eprinttype** 域 (文本)

**eprint** 标识符的类型，例如 **eprint** 所指的档案、资源库、服务或系统的名称。参考 § 3.11.7 一节以及 **eprint** 和 **eprintclass** 域。

**eventdate** 域 (日期)

会议、研讨会或其它在 **@proceedings** 和 **@inproceedings** 条目中事件的发生日期。该域还可以用于在 § 2.1.3 一节所列的定制类型。参考 **eventtitle** 和 **venue** 域以及 § 2.3.8 一节。

**eventtitle** 域 (文本)

会议、研讨会或其它在 **@proceedings** 和 **@inproceedings** 条目中事件的标题。该域还可以用于在 § 2.1.3 一节所列的定制类型。请注意，该域处理事件的主标题。诸如 “Proceedings of the Fifth XYZ Conference” 之类的信息会归入 **titleaddon** 或 **booktitleaddon** 域。参考 **eventdate** 和 **venue** 域。

**eventtitleaddon** 域 (文本)

**eventtitle** 域的附语。例如可以用于已知事件的首字母缩写词。

**file** 域 (抄录)

某个作品的 PDF 或其它版本的本地链接。标准文献样式中不使用。

**foreword** 列表 (姓名)

作品前言的作者。如果前言的作者与 **editor** 或 **translator** 相同，那么标准样式就会在文献中自动将其与这些域关联起来。参考 **introduction** 和 **afterword** 域。

**holder** 列表 (名称)

**@patent** 的持有者（如果与 **author** 不同的话）。注意，共同持有者需要各自放到额外的花括号里，参考 § 2.3.3 一节。该域可以用于 § 2.1.3 一节所列的定制类型中。

**howpublished** 域 (文本)

不适合任何常见类型的非常规出版物的出版公告。

**indextitle** 域 (文本)

在索引中用于取代常规 **title** 域的标题。如果你有一个带有 “An Introduction to ...” 之类标题的条目，并且想索引为 “Introduction to ..., An”，那么就可以使用该域。样式作者需要注意，如果 **indextitle** 没有定义，那么 Biblatex 会自动将 **title** 域的值复制给 **indextitle**。

**institution** 列表 (文本)

大学或其它研究机构的名字，这取决于条目类型。传统的  $\text{\LaTeX}$  使用 `school` 域来表示。本宏包也支持 `school`，但只作为本域的别名。参考 §§ 2.2.5 和 2.3.4。

**introduction** 列表 (姓名)

作品导论的作者。如果导论的作者与 `editor` 或 `translator` 相同，那么标准样式就会在文献中自动将这些域关联起来。参考 `foreword` 和 `afterword` 域。

**isan** 域 (文本)

音像作品的视听数码国际标准 (International Standard Audiovisual Number, ISAN)。不会在标准文献样式中使用。

**isbn** 域 (文本)

书籍的国际标准书号 (International Standard Book Number, ISBN)。

**ismn** 域 (文本)

乐谱等的发行音乐作品的国际标准印刷音乐作品编码 (International Standard Music Number, ISMN)。

**isrn** 域 (文本)

技术报告的国际标准技术报告编码 (International Standard Technical Report Number, ISRN)。

**issn** 域 (文本)

连续出版物的国际标准连续出版物号 (International Standard Serial Number, ISSN)。

**issue** 域 (文本)

期刊的卷数。该域适用的期刊特点是，每一卷由 “Spring” 或 “Summer” 等名称而不是由月份或数字确定。由于 `issue` 的位置与 `month` 和 `number` 类似，该域也可用于双重卷数或其它特殊场合<sup>16</sup>。参考 `month` 和 `number` 域以及 § 2.3.9 一节。

**issuesubtitle** 域 (文本)

期刊或其它连续出版物中某一卷的副标题。

**issuetitle** 域 (文本)

期刊或其它连续出版物中某一卷的标题。

**iswc** 域 (文本)

音乐作品的国际标准音乐作品编码 (International Standard Work Code, ISWC)。标准文献样式中不使用。

---

<sup>16</sup> 例如增刊、特刊等。——译注

`journalsubtitle` 域 (文本)

期刊、报纸或其它连续出版物的副标题。

`journaltitle` 域 (文本)

期刊、报纸或其它连续出版物的标题。

`label` 域 (文本)

如果缺失生成常规标签所需的某一数据，那么该域就是替代常规标签而被引用样式所用的指定文本。例如，当作者-年份引用样式要生成条目的引用，但作者或年份缺失，那么它就会使用后备的 `label`。详情请参考 § 2.3.2 节。请注意，与 `shorthand` 域相反，`label` 只是作为后备而使用。同样参考 `shorthand`。

`language` 列表 (关键字)

作品的语言。语言可以按字面或者本地化关键字确定。如果使用本地化关键字，那么前缀 `lang` 将省略。参考 `origlanguage` 域并比较 § 2.2.3 节中的 `langid`。

`library` 域 (文本)

该域可用于记录图书馆名称或书架号码等信息。某些特殊的文献样式可能需要打印出来。但在标准文献样式中不使用。

`location` 列表 (文本)

出版地，即 `publisher` 或 `institution`（取决于条目类型）的所在地。传统 BibTeX 使用 `address` 域，在这里作为别名也被支持。参考 §§ 2.2.5 和 2.3.4 几节。在 `@patent` 条目里，该列表表示专利范围。该文本列表可用于 § 2.1.3 中的定制类型。

`mainsubtitle` 域 (文本)

对应于 `maintitle` 的副标题。参考 `subtitle` 域。

`maintitle` 域 (文本)

多卷本书籍（例如著作集）的主标题。如果 `title` 或 `booktitle` 域指的是多卷本中某一卷的标题，那么该域则给出了全集的标题。

`maintitleaddon` 域 (文本)

`maintitle` 的附言，会用不同的字体打印。

`month` 域 (日期部分)

出版月份。必须是整数，而不能是序数或字符。例如使用 `month={1}` 而不是 `month={January}`。文献样式会在需要时将它转换为语言相关的字符串或序数。参考 `date` 以及 §§ 2.3.9 和 2.3.8。

**nameaddon** 域 (文本)

参考文献中立即在作者名之后输出的插入语。标准文献样式中不使用。该域可用于添加别名或笔名（或者给出原名，如果作者的化名更熟知的话）。

**note** 域 (文本)

不可归类于其它域的杂项文献数据。**note** 域可以用于记录自由格式的文献数据。典型的 **note** 域包括一些出版信息，例如“Reprint of the edition London 1831”。参考 **addendum**。

**number** 域 (整数)

期刊的期数或者 **series** 丛书中某本书的卷数/期数。参考 **issue** 以及 §§ 2.3.7 和 2.3.9。在 **@patent** 条目中，这是专利或专利申请的号码或记录标识。应该是整数，但实际上不必是阿拉伯数字的形式，因为 Biber 为了排序会自动将罗马数字或者阿拉伯数码转成整数。

**organization** 列表 (文本)

出版 **@manual** 或者 **@online** 资源以及赞助会议的组织。参考 § 2.3.4 节。

**origdate** 域 (日期)

如果作品是译作、重印或其它类似情况，该域指的是原始版次的出版日期。在标准文献样式中不使用。参考 **date** 域。

**origlanguage** 域 (关键字)

如果作品是译作，该域指的是原作的语言。参考 **language** 域。

**origlocation** 列表 (文本)

如果作品是译作、重印或其它类似情况，该域指的是原始版次的 **location**。标准文献样式不使用。参考 **location** 域和 § 2.3.4 节。

**origpublisher** 列表 (文本)

如果作品是译作、重印或其它类似情况，该域指的是原始版次的 **publisher**。在标准文献样式中不使用。参考 **publisher** 域和 § 2.3.4 节。

**origtitle** 域 (文本)

如果作品是译作，该域指的是原作的 **title**。标准文献样式不使用。参考 **title** 域。

**pages** 域 (range)

**pages** 域 (范围)

一个或多个页码数或页码范围。如果这项作品是其它出版作品的一部分，例如期刊或文集的文章，该域指的是在那项作品中的相关页码范围。它也可以用于指明著作中某一特定部分（例如一本书中的一章）。

<code>pagetotal</code>	域 (文本)	
	作品的总页码数。	
<code>pagination</code>	域 (关键字)	
	作品的分页格式。该域的值或影响引用命令的 <code>&lt;postnote&gt;</code> 选项的格式。该域应当以单数的形式给出。可能的关键字包括 <code>page</code> 、 <code>column</code> 、 <code>line</code> 、 <code>verse</code> 、 <code>section</code> 和 <code>paragraph</code> 。参考 <code>bookpagination</code> 域以及 §§ 2.3.10 和 3.12.3 节。	
<code>part</code>	域 (文本)	
	部分卷的编号。该域只用于书籍而不能用于期刊。它可以用于一个逻辑卷册包括两个或更多实际卷册的情形。此时逻辑卷册的编号由 <code>volume</code> 给出，而这一卷的每一部分的编号由 <code>part</code> 给出。参考 <code>volume</code> 域。	
<code>publisher</code>	列表 (文本)	
	出版者的名字。参考 § 2.3.4 一节。	
<code>pubstate</code>	域 (关键字)	
	作品的出版状态，例如 “in press”。已知的出版状态请参考 § 4.9.2.11 一节。	
<code>reprinttitle</code>	域 (文本)	
	作品重印时的标题。标准样式中不使用。	
<code>series</code>	域 (文本)	
	丛书的名称，例如 “Studies in ...”，或者期刊系列的编号。系列出版的丛书通常带有编号。其编号或者卷数由 <code>number</code> 域给出。请注意， <code>@article</code> 条目类型也使用 <code>series</code> 域，但是以一种特别的方式处理。参考 § 2.3.7 一节。	
<code>shortauthor</code>	列表 (姓名)	Label field
	作者名的缩写形式。该域主要用于集体作者的缩写形式。参考 § 2.3.3 一节。	
<code>shorteditor</code>	列表 (姓名)	Label field
	编辑名的缩写形式。该域主要用于集体编辑的缩写形式。参考 § 2.3.3 一节。	
<code>shorthand</code>	域 (文本)	Label field
	替代通常的标签而被引用样式使用的指定域。如果有定义，那么它会覆盖默认的标签。参考 <code>label</code> 域。	
<code>shorthandintro</code>	域 (文本)	
	本宏包附带一些引用样式会使用比较冗长的引用格式，例如，在第一次引用时会使用诸如 “henceforth cited as [shorthand]” 的短语来声明 <code>shorthand</code> 。如果 <code>shorthandintro</code> 域有定义，它将覆盖标准的声明短语。请注意，使用的备选短语必须包含 <code>shorthand</code> 。	

<code>shortjournal</code>	域 (文本)	Label field
	<code>journaltitle</code> 的缩写版本或其首字母缩略语。标准文献样式中不会使用。	
<code>shortseries</code>	域 (文本)	Label field
	<code>series</code> 的缩写版本或其首字母缩略语。标准文献样式中不会使用。	
<code>shorttitle</code>	域 (文本)	Label field
	缩略形式的标题。该域通常不会包括在参考文献列表中。它可用于 <code>author-title</code> 格式的引用。如果有该域的话, <code>author-title</code> 引用样式使用该域来替代 <code>title</code> 域。	
<code>subtitle</code>	域 (文本)	
	作品的副标题。	
<code>title</code>	域 (文本)	
	作品的标题。	
<code>titleaddon</code>	域 (文本)	
	<code>title</code> 的附文, 会用不同字体打印。	
<code>translator</code>	列表 (名称)	
	<code>title</code> 或 <code>booktitle</code> 的译者, 具体取决于条目类型。如果译者与 <code>editor</code> 相同, 标准样式会在文献中自动将这些域关联起来。	
<code>type</code>	域 (关键字)	
	<code>manual</code> 、 <code>patent</code> 、 <code>report</code> 或 <code>thesis</code> 的类型。该域可用于 § 2.1.3 节的定制类型。	
<code>url</code>	域 (uri)	
	在线出版物的 URL。如果它不是 URL-转义的 (没有 “%” 字符), 那么会根据 RFC 3987 <sup>17</sup> 将其 URI-转义, 也就是说, 即使 Unicode 字符也会正确转义。	
<code>urldate</code>	域 (日期)	
	<code>url</code> 域中网址的获取日期。参考 § 2.3.8 一节。	
<code>venue</code>	域 (文本)	
	<code>@proceedings</code> 和 <code>@inproceedings</code> 条目中的会议、研讨会或其它事件的地点。该域可用于 § 2.1.3 一节所列的定制类型。请注意, <code>location</code> 列表指的是出版地点, 因此对应于 <code>publisher</code> 和 <code>institution</code> 列表。而会议事件的会场地点则由 <code>venue</code> 域给出。参考 <code>eventdate</code> 和 <code>eventtitle</code> 域。	
<code>version</code>	域 (文本)	
	软件、手册等作品的修订次数。	

<sup>17</sup> 参考<https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3987>——译注

**volume** 域 (整数)

多卷本或连续出版物中作品的卷数。应当是整数，但不必是阿拉伯数字的形式。这是因为 Biber 为了排序会将罗马数字和阿拉伯数码自动转成整数。参考 **part** 域。

**volumes** 域 (整数)

多卷本著作的总卷数。根据文献条目类型，该域对应于 **title** 或 **maintitle** 域。应当是整数，但不必是阿拉伯数字的形式。这是因为 Biber 为了排序会将罗马数字和阿拉伯数码自动转成整数。

**year** 域 (文本)

出版年份。不过使用 **date** 域更好些，因为它也和普通年份兼容。参考 § 2.3.8 节。

### 2.2.3 特殊域 Special Fields

The fields listed in this section do not hold printable data but serve a different purpose. They apply to all entry types in the default data model.

本节中的域不包括可打印的数据，用于其它用途，可用于默认数据模型的所有条目类型。

**crossref** 域 (entry key)

This field holds an entry key for the cross-referencing feature. Child entries with a **crossref** field inherit data from the parent entry specified in the **crossref** field. If the number of child entries referencing a specific parent entry hits a certain threshold, the parent entry is automatically added to the bibliography even if it has not been cited explicitly. The threshold is settable with the **mincrossrefs** package option from § 3.1.2.1. Style authors should note that whether or not the **crossref** fields of the child entries are defined on the Biblatex level depends on the availability of the parent entry. If the parent entry is available, the **crossref** fields of the child entries will be defined. If not, the child entries still inherit the data from the parent entry but their **crossref** fields will be undefined. Whether the parent entry is added to the bibliography implicitly because of the threshold or explicitly because it has been cited does not matter. See also the **xref** field in this section as well as § 2.4.1.

**entryset** 域 (separated values)

This field is specific to entry sets. See § 3.11.5 for details. This field is consumed by the backend processing and does not appear in the .bbl.

**execute** 域 (code)

A special field which holds arbitrary TeX code to be executed whenever the data of the respective entry is accessed. This may be useful to handle special cases. Conceptually, this field is comparable to the hooks `\AtEveryBibitem`, `\AtEveryLositem`, and `\AtEveryCitekey` from § 4.10.6, except that it is definable on a per-entry basis in the bib file. Any code in this field is executed automatically immediately after these hooks.



Language	Region/Dialect	Identifiers
Catalan	Spain, France, Andorra, Italy	catalan
Croatian	Croatia, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Serbia	croatian
Czech	Czech Republic	czech
Danish	Denmark	danish
Dutch	Netherlands	dutch
English	USA	american, USenglish, english
	United Kingdom	british, UKenglish
	Canada	canadian
	Australia	australian
	New Zealand	newzealand
Finnish	Finland	finnish
French	France, Canada	french
German	Germany	german
	Austria	austrian
German (new)	Germany	ngerman
	Austria	naustrian
Greek	Greece	greek
Italian	Italy	italian
Norwegian	Norway	norwegian, norsk, nynorsk
Polish	Poland	polish
Portuguese	Brazil	brazil
	Portugal	portuguese, portuges
Russian	Russia	russian
Slovene	Slovenian	slovene
Spanish	Spain	spanish
Swedish	Sweden	swedish

**Table 2: Supported Languages**

**gender** 域 (Pattern matching one of: sf, sm, sn, pf, pm, pn, pp)

The gender of the author or the gender of the editor, if there is no author. The following identifiers are supported: sf (feminine singular, a single female name), sm (masculine singular, a single male name), sn (neuter singular, a single neuter name), pf (feminine plural, a list of female names), pm (masculine plural, a list of male names), pn (neuter plural, a list of neuter names), pp (plural, a mixed gender list of names). This information is only required by special bibliography and citation styles and only in certain languages. For example, a citation style may replace recurrent author names with a term such as ‘idem’. If the Latin word is used, as is custom in English and French, there is no need to specify the gender. In German publications, however, such key terms are usually given in German and in this case they are gender-sensitive.

**langid** 域 (identifier)

The language id of the bibliography entry. The alias hyphenation is provided for backwards compatibility. The identifier must be a language name known to the babel/polyglossia packages. This information may be used to switch hyphenation patterns and localize strings in the bibliography. Note that the language names are case sensitive. The languages currently supported by this package are given in 表 2. Note that babel treats the identifier english as an alias for british or american, de-

pending on the `babel` version. The Biblatex package always treats it as an alias for `american`. It is preferable to use the language identifiers `american` and `british` (`babel`) or a language specific option to specify a language variant (`polyglossia`, using the `langidopts` field) to avoid any possible confusion. Compare `language` in § 2.2.2.

`langidopts` 域 (literal)

For `polyglossia` users, allows per-entry language specific options. The literal value of this field is passed to `polyglossia`'s language switching facility when using the package option `autolang=langname`. For example, the fields:

```
langid      = {english},
langidopts  = {variant=british},
```

would wrap the bibliography entry in:

```
\english[variant=british]
...
\endenglish
```

`ids` 域 (separated list of entrykeys)

Biber only

Citation key aliases for the main citation key. An entry may be cited by any of its aliases and Biblatex will treat the citation as if it had used the primary citation key. This is to aid users who change their citation keys but have legacy documents which use older keys for the same entry. This field is consumed by the backend processing and does not appear in the `.bbl`.

`indexsorttitle` 域 (literal)

The title used when sorting the index. In contrast to `indextitle`, this field is used for sorting only. The printed title in the index is the `indextitle` or the `title` field. This field may be useful if the title contains special characters or commands which interfere with the sorting of the index. Consider this example:

```
title      = {The \LaTeX\ Companion},
indextitle = {\LaTeX\ Companion, The},
indexsorttitle = {LATEX Companion},
```

Style authors should note that Biblatex automatically copies the value of either the `indextitle` or the `title` field to `indexsorttitle` if the latter field is undefined.

`keywords` 域 (separated values)

A separated list of keywords. These keywords are intended for the bibliography filters (see §§ 3.6.2 和 3.11.4), they are usually not printed. Note that with the default separator (comma), spaces around the separator are ignored.

**options** 域 (separated  $\langle key \rangle = \langle value \rangle$  options)

A separated list of entry options in  $\langle key \rangle = \langle value \rangle$  notation. This field is used to set options on a per-entry basis. See § 3.1.3 for details. Note that citation and bibliography styles may define additional entry options.

**presort** 域 (string)

A special field used to modify the sorting order of the bibliography. This field is the first item the sorting routine considers when sorting the bibliography, hence it may be used to arrange the entries in groups. This may be useful when creating subdivided bibliographies with the bibliography filters. Please refer to § 3.5 for further details. Also see § 4.5.6. This field is consumed by the backend processing and does not appear in the .bbl.

**related** 域 (separated values)

Biber only

Citation keys of other entries which have a relationship to this entry. The relationship is specified by the `relatedtype` field. Please refer to § 3.4 for further details.

**relatedoptions** 域 (separated values)

Biber only

Per-type options to set for a related entry. Note that this does not set the options on the related entry itself, only the `dataonly` clone which is used as a `datasource` for the parent entry.

**relatedtype** 域 (identifier)

Biber only

An identifier which specified the type of relationship for the keys listed in the `related` field. The identifier is a localized bibliography string printed before the data from the related entry list. It is also used to identify type-specific formatting directives and bibliography macros for the related entries. Please refer to § 3.4 for further details.

**relatedstring** 域 (literal)

Biber only

A field used to override the bibliography string specified by `relatedtype`. Please refer to § 3.4 for further details.

**sortkey** 域 (literal)

A field used to modify the sorting order of the bibliography. Think of this field as the master sort key. If present, Biblatex uses this field during sorting and ignores everything else, except for the `presort` field. Please refer to § 3.5 for further details. This field is consumed by the backend processing and does not appear in the .bbl.

**sortname** 列表 (name)

A name or a list of names used to modify the sorting order of the bibliography. If present, this list is used instead of `author` or `editor` when sorting the bibliography. Please refer to § 3.5 for further details. This field is consumed by the backend processing and does not appear in the .bbl.

Similar to `sortkey` but used in the list of shorthands. If present, Biblatex uses this field instead of `shorthand` when sorting the list of shorthands. This is useful if the `shorthand` field holds shorthands with formatting commands such as `\emph` or `\textbf`. This field is consumed by the backend processing and does not appear in the `.bbl`.

#### sorttitle 域 (literal)

A field used to modify the sorting order of the bibliography. If present, this field is used instead of the `title` field when sorting the bibliography. The `sorttitle` field may come in handy if you have an entry with a title like “An Introduction to...” and want that alphabetized under ‘I’ rather than ‘A’. In this case, you could put “Introduction to...” in the `sorttitle` field. Please refer to § 3.5 for further details. This field is consumed by the backend processing and does not appear in the `.bbl`.

#### sortyear 域 (literal)

A field used to modify the sorting order of the bibliography. If present, this field is used instead of the `year` field when sorting the bibliography. Please refer to § 3.5 for further details. This field is consumed by the backend processing and does not appear in the `.bbl`.

#### xdata 域 (separated list of entrykeys)

This field inherits data from one or more `@xdata` entries. Conceptually, the `xdata` field is related to `crossref` and `xref`: `crossref` establishes a logical parent/child relation and inherits data; `xref` establishes as logical parent/child relation without inheriting data; `xdata` inherits data without establishing a relation. The value of the `xdata` may be a single entry key or a separated list of keys. See § 3.11.6 for further details. This field is consumed by the backend processing and does not appear in the `.bbl`.

#### xref 域 (entry key)

This field is an alternative cross-referencing mechanism. It differs from `crossref` in that the child entry will not inherit any data from the parent entry specified in the `xref` field. If the number of child entries referencing a specific parent entry hits a certain threshold, the parent entry is automatically added to the bibliography even if it has not been cited explicitly. The threshold is settable with the `mincrossrefs` package option from § 3.1.2.1. Style authors should note that whether or not the `xref` fields of the child entries are defined on the Biblatex level depends on the availability of the parent entry. If the parent entry is available, the `xref` fields of the child entries will be defined. If not, their `xref` fields will be undefined. Whether the parent entry is added to the bibliography implicitly because of the threshold or explicitly because it has been cited does not matter. See also the `crossref` field in this section as well as § 2.4.1.

### 2.2.4 自定义域 Custom Fields

The fields listed in this section are intended for special bibliography styles. They are not used by the standard bibliography styles.

本节中的域用于特定的参考文献样式，标准样式不使用。

`name[a-c]` 列表 (name)

Custom lists for special bibliography styles. Not used by the standard bibliography styles.

`name[a-c]type` 域 (key)

Similar to `authortype` and `editortype` but referring to the fields `name[a-c]`. Not used by the standard bibliography styles.

`list[a-f]` 列表 (literal)

Custom lists for special bibliography styles. Not used by the standard bibliography styles.

`user[a-f]` 域 (literal)

Custom fields for special bibliography styles. Not used by the standard bibliography styles.

`verb[a-c]` 域 (literal)

Similar to the custom fields above except that these are verbatim fields. Not used by the standard bibliography styles.

### 2.2.5 域的别名 Field Aliases

The aliases listed in this section are provided for backwards compatibility with traditional BibTeX and other applications based on traditional BibTeX styles. Note that these aliases are immediately resolved as the `bib` file is processed. All bibliography and citation styles must use the names of the fields they point to, not the alias. In `bib` files, you may use either the alias or the field name but not both at the same time.

本级列出的别名用于兼容传统的 `bibtex`。在 `biblatex` 的样式文件中则必须使用这些别名所指代的域名。

`address` 列表 (literal)

An alias for `location`, provided for BibTeX compatibility. Traditional BibTeX uses the slightly misleading field name `address` for the place of publication, i. e., the location of the publisher, while Biblatex uses the generic field name `location`. See §§ 2.2.2 和 2.3.4. `address` 就是 `location`。

`annotate` 域 (literal)

An alias for `annotation`, provided for `jurabib` compatibility. See § 2.2.2.

`archiveprefix` 域 (literal)

An alias for `eprinttype`, provided for arXiv compatibility. See §§ 2.2.2 和 3.11.7.

`journal` 域 (literal)

An alias for `journaltitle`, provided for BibTeX compatibility. See § 2.2.2.

`journal` 就是 `journaltitle`。

`key` 域 (literal)

An alias for `sortkey`, provided for BibTeX compatibility. See § 2.2.3.

`key` 是 `sortkey`。

`pdf` 域 (verbatim)

An alias for `file`, provided for JabRef compatibility. See § 2.2.2.

`pdf` 是 `file`。

`primaryclass` 域 (literal)

An alias for `eprintclass`, provided for arXiv compatibility. See §§ 2.2.2 和 3.11.7.

`school` 列表 (literal)

An alias for `institution`, provided for BibTeX compatibility. The `institution` field is used by traditional BibTeX for technical reports whereas the `school` field holds the institution associated with theses. The Biblatex package employs the generic field name `institution` in both cases. See §§ 2.2.2 和 2.3.4.

`school` 是 `institution`。

## 2.3 使用注意事项 Usage Notes

The entry types and fields supported by this package should for the most part be intuitive to use for anyone familiar with BibTeX. However, apart from the additional types and fields provided by this package, some of the familiar ones are handled in a way which is in need of explanation.

本包支持的类型和域对于熟悉 `bibtex` 的人来说可以直觉的使用。然而除了传统的类型和域，其中某些熟悉的域和类型需要进一步解释。

This package includes some compatibility code for `bib` files which were generated with a traditional BibTeX style in mind. Unfortunately, it is not possible to handle all legacy files automatically because Biblatex's data model is slightly different from traditional BibTeX. Therefore, such `bib` files will most likely require editing in order to work properly with this package. In sum, the following items are different from traditional BibTeX styles:

本包包含了一些兼容 `bibtex` 的代码，但不可能完全处理所有的继承 `bib` 文件，因此这些 `bib` 需要修改，一些不同的需要修改的地方，总结如下：

- The entry type `@inbook`. See §§ 2.1.1 和 2.3.1 for details.
- The fields `institution`, `organization`, and `publisher` as well as the aliases `address` and `school`. See §§ 2.2.2、2.2.5、2.3.4 for details.
- The handling of certain types of titles. See § 2.3.5 for details.
- The field `series`. See §§ 2.2.2 和 2.3.7 for details.
- The fields `year` and `month`. See §§ 2.2.2、2.3.8、2.3.9 for details.
- The field `edition`. See § 2.2.2 for details.
- The field `key`. See § 2.3.2 for details.

Users of the `jurabib` package should note that the `shortauthor` field is treated as a name list by `Biblatex`, see § 2.3.3 for details.

### 2.3.1 `@inbook` 条目类型 The Entry Type `@inbook`

`@inbook` 条目类型只用来表示以书籍 (专著) 中包含的某一具有标题的部分作为引文的参考文献。它与 `@book` 的关系如同 `@incollection` 和 `@collection` 的关系。具体示例见 § 2.3.5。如果只是将书籍的章节作为引文，简单的使用 `book` 类型再加上 `chapter` 和/或 `pages` 域即可。至于参考文献列表是否应该完全包含章节引文的问题是有争议的，因为章并不是一个参考文献实体。

### 2.3.2 缺失和可忽略数据 Missing and Omissible Data

The fields marked as ‘required’ in § 2.1.1 are not strictly required in all cases. The bibliography styles which ship with this package can get by with as little as a `title` field for most entry types. A book published anonymously, a periodical without an explicit editor, or a software manual without an explicit author should pose no problem as far as the bibliography is concerned. Citation styles, however, may have different requirements. For example, an author-year citation scheme obviously requires an `author`/editor and a `year` field.

You may generally use the `label` field to provide a substitute for any missing data required for citations. How the `label` field is employed depends on the citation style. The author-year citation styles which come with this package use the `label` field as a fallback if either the `author`/editor or the `year` is missing. The numeric styles, on the other hand, do not use it at all since the numeric scheme is independent of the available data. The author-title styles ignore it as well, because the bare `title` is usually sufficient to form a unique citation and a `title` is expected to be available in any case. The `label` field may also be used to override the non-numeric portion of the automatically generated `labelalpha` field used by alphabetic citation styles. See § 4.2.4 for details.

Note that traditional BibTeX styles support a `key` field which is used for alphabetizing if both `author` and `editor` are missing. The `Biblatex` package treats `key` as an alias for `sortkey`. In addition to that, it offers very fine-grained sorting controls, see §§ 2.2.3 和 3.5 for details. The `natbib` package employs the `key` field as a fallback label for citations. Use the `label` field instead.



### 2.3.3 集体作者和编者 Corporate Authors and Editors

Corporate authors and editors are given in the author or editor field, respectively. Note that they must be wrapped in an extra pair of curly braces to prevent data parsing from treating them as personal names which are to be dissected into their components. Use the shortauthor field if you want to give an abbreviated form of the name or an acronym for use in citations.

```
author      = {{National Aeronautics and Space Administration}},  
shortauthor = {NASA},
```

The default citation styles will use the short name in all citations while the full name is printed in the bibliography. For corporate editors, use the corresponding fields editor and shorteditor. Since all of these fields are treated as name lists, it is possible to mix personal names and corporate names, provided that the names of all corporations and institutions are wrapped in braces.

```
editor      = {{National Aeronautics and Space Administration}  
              and Doe, John},  
shorteditor = {NASA and Doe, John},
```

Users switching from the jurabib package to Biblatex should note that the shortauthor field is treated as a name list.

### 2.3.4 原样输出列表 Literal Lists

The fields institution, organization, publisher, and location are literal lists in terms of § 2.2. This also applies to origlocation, origpublisher and to the field aliases address and school. All of these fields may contain a list of items separated by the keyword ‘and’. If they contain a literal ‘and’, it must be wrapped in braces.

```
publisher    = {William Reid {and} Company},  
institution  = {Office of Information Management {and} Communications},  
organization = {American Society for Photogrammetry {and} Remote Sensing  
              and  
              American Congress on Surveying {and} Mapping},
```

Note the difference between a literal ‘{and}’ and the list separator ‘and’ in the above examples. You may also wrap the entire name in braces:

```
publisher    = {{William Reid and Company}},  
institution  = {{Office of Information Management and Communications}},  
organization = {{American Society for Photogrammetry and Remote Sensing  
              and  
              {American Congress on Surveying and Mapping}}},
```

Legacy files which have not been updated for use with Biblatex will still work if these fields do not contain a literal ‘and’. However, note that you will miss out on the additional features of literal lists in this case, such as configurable formatting and automatic truncation.

### 2.3.5 题名 Titles

The following examples demonstrate how to handle different types of titles. Let’s start with a five-volume work which is referred to as a whole:

```
@MvBook{works,  
  author    = {Shakespeare, William},  
  title     = {Collected Works},  
  volumes   = {5},  
  ...
```

The individual volumes of a multi-volume work usually have a title of their own. Suppose the fourth volume of the *Collected Works* includes Shakespeare’s sonnets and we are referring to this volume only:

```
@Book{works:4,  
  author    = {Shakespeare, William},  
  maintitle = {Collected Works},  
  title     = {Sonnets},  
  volume    = {4},  
  ...
```

If the individual volumes do not have a title, we put the main title in the `title` field and include a volume number:

```
@Book{works:4,  
  author    = {Shakespeare, William},  
  title     = {Collected Works},  
  volume    = {4},  
  ...
```

In the next example, we are referring to a part of a volume, but this part is a self-contained work with its own title. The respective volume also has a title and there is still the main title of the entire edition:

```
@InBook{lear,  
  author    = {Shakespeare, William},  
  bookauthor = {Shakespeare, William},  
  maintitle = {Collected Works},  
  booktitle = {Tragedies},
```

```
title      = {King Lear},
volume     = {1},
pages      = {53-159},
...
```

Suppose the first volume of the *Collected Works* includes a reprinted essay by a well-known scholar. This is not the usual introduction by the editor but a self-contained work. The *Collected Works* also have a separate editor:

```
@InBook{stage,
  author      = {Expert, Edward},
  title       = {Shakespeare and the Elizabethan Stage},
  bookauthor  = {Shakespeare, William},
  editor      = {Bookmaker, Bernard},
  maintitle   = {Collected Works},
  booktitle   = {Tragedies},
  volume      = {1},
  pages       = {7-49},
  ...
}
```

See § 2.3.7 for further examples.

### 2.3.6 编辑角色 Editorial Roles

The type of editorial role performed by an editor in one of the editor fields (i.e., editor, editora, editorb, editorc) may be specified in the corresponding editor...type field. The following roles are supported by default. The role ‘editor’ is the default. In this case, the editortype field is omissible.

- editor** The main editor. This is the most generic editorial role and the default value.
- compiler** Similar to editor but used if the task of the editor is mainly compiling.
- founder** The founding editor of a periodical or a comprehensive publication project such as a ‘Collected Works’ edition or a long-running legal commentary.
- continuator** An editor who continued the work of the founding editor (founder) but was subsequently replaced by the current editor (editor).
- redactor** A secondary editor whose task is redacting the work.
- reviser** A secondary editor whose task is revising the work.
- collaborator** A secondary editor or a consultant to the editor.

For example, if the task of the editor is compiling, you may indicate that in the corresponding editortype field:

```
@Collection{...,
  editor      = {Editor, Edward},
  editortype  = {compiler},
  ...
}
```

There may also be secondary editors in addition to the main editor:

```
@Book{...,
  author      = {...},
  editor      = {Editor, Edward},
  editora     = {Redactor, Randolph},
  editoratype = {redactor},
  editorb     = {Consultant, Conrad},
  editorbtype = {collaborator},
  ...
}
```

Periodicals or long-running publication projects may see several generations of editors. For example, there may be a founding editor in addition to the current editor:

```
@Book{...,
  author      = {...},
  editor      = {Editor, Edward},
  editora     = {Founder, Frederic},
  editoratype = {founder},
  ...
}
```

Note that only the editor is considered in citations and when sorting the bibliography. If an entry is typically cited by the founding editor (and sorted accordingly in the bibliography), the founder goes into the editor field and the current editor moves to one of the editor... fields:

```
@Collection{...,
  editor      = {Founder, Frederic},
  editortype  = {founder},
  editora     = {Editor, Edward},
  ...
}
```

You may add more roles by initializing and defining a new localization key whose name corresponds to the identifier in the editor...type field. See §§ 3.8 和 4.9.1 for details.

### 2.3.7 出版物和期刊系列 Publication and Journal Series

The series field is used by traditional BibTeX styles both for the main title of a multi-volume work and for a publication series, i. e., a loosely related sequence of books

by the same publisher which deal with the same general topic or belong to the same field of research. This may be ambiguous. This package introduces a maintitle field for multi-volume works and employs series for publication series only. The volume or number of a book in the series goes in the number field in this case:

```
@Book{...,
  author      = {Expert, Edward},
  title       = {Shakespeare and the Elizabethan Age},
  series      = {Studies in English Literature and Drama},
  number      = {57},
  ...
}
```

The @article entry type makes use of the series field as well, but handles it in a special way. First, a test is performed to determine whether the value of the field is an integer. If so, it will be printed as an ordinal. If not, another test is performed to determine whether it is a localization key. If so, the localized string is printed. If not, the value is printed as is. Consider the following example of a journal published in numbered series:

```
@Article{...,
  journal      = {Journal Name},
  series       = {3},
  volume       = {15},
  number       = {7},
  year         = {1995},
  ...
}
```

This entry will be printed as “*Journal Name*. 3rd ser. 15.7 (1995)”. Some journals use designations such as “old series” and “new series” instead of a number. Such designations may be given in the series field as well, either as a literal string or as a localization key. Consider the following example which makes use of the localization key newseries:

```
@Article{...,
  journal      = {Journal Name},
  series       = {newseries},
  volume       = {9},
  year         = {1998},
  ...
}
```

This entry will be printed as “*Journal Name*. New ser. 9 (1998)”. See § 4.9.2 for a list of localization keys defined by default.

### 2.3.8 日期格式 Date Specifications

The date fields date, origdate, eventdate, and urldate require a date specification in yyyy-mm-dd format. Date ranges are given as yyyy-mm-dd/yyyy-mm-dd. Partial dates

Date Specification	Formatted Date (Examples)	
	Short Format	Long Format
1850	1850	1850
1997/	1997–	1997–
1967-02	02/1967	February 1967
2009-01-31	31/01/2009	31st January 2009
1988/1992	1988–1992	1988–1992
2002-01/2002-02	01/2002–02/2002	January 2002–February 2002
1995-03-30/1995-04-05	30/03/1995–05/04/1995	30th March 1995–5th April 1995

**Table 3: Date Specifications**

are valid provided that date components are omitted at the end only. You may specify an open ended date range by giving the range separator and omitting the end date (e. g., yyyy/). See 表 3 for some examples of valid date specifications and the formatted date automatically generated by Biblatex. The formatted date is language specific and will be adapted automatically. If there is no date field in an entry, Biblatex will also consider the fields year and month for backwards compatibility with traditional BibTeX. Style author should note that date fields like date or origdate are only available in the bib file. All dates are parsed and dissected into their components as the bib file is processed. The date components are made available to styles by way of the special fields discussed in § 4.2.4.3. See this section and 表 8 on page 161 for further information.

### 2.3.9 月份和期刊季度号 Months and Journal Issues

The month field is an integer field. The bibliography style converts the month to a language-dependent string as required. For backwards compatibility, you may also use the following three-letter abbreviations in the month field: jan, feb, mar, apr, may, jun, jul, aug, sep, oct, nov, dec. Note that these abbreviations are BibTeX strings which must be given without any braces or quotes. When using them, don't say month={jan} or month="jan" but month=jan. It is not possible to specify a month such as month={8/9}. Use the date field for date ranges instead.

用于区分季刊的‘Spring’或‘Summer’应该放在issue域内，@article条目的issue域位置类似于month域并覆盖该域。

### 2.3.10 标记页码 Pagination

当在条目的pages域或者一个引用命令的⟨postnote⟩参数中指定页码或者页码范围，很方便让 Biblatex 自动添加像 ‘p.’ 或 ‘pp.’ 之类的前缀，这也是该包的默认处理方式。然而，一些文档可能使用一种不同的页码标记格式或者可能不是以页码而是以诗节号或者行号为标记。这时pagination和bookpagination域就可以起到作用了，举例考虑下面的条目：

```
@InBook{key,
  title      = {...},
  pagination = {verse},
```

```

booktitle      = {...},
bookpagination = {page},
pages          = {53--65},
...

```

The `bookpagination` field affects the formatting of the `pages` and `pagetotal` fields in the list of references. Since `page` is the default, this field is omissible in the above example. In this case, the page range will be formatted as ‘pp. 53–65’. Suppose that, when quoting from this work, it is customary to use verse numbers rather than page numbers in citations. This is reflected by the `pagination` field, which affects the formatting of the `<postnote>` argument to any citation command. With a citation like `\cite[17]{key}`, the postnote will be formatted as ‘v. 17’. Setting the `pagination` field to `section` would yield ‘§ 17’. See § 3.12.3 for further usage instructions.

The `pagination` and `bookpagination` fields are key fields. This package will try to use their value as a localization key, provided that the key is defined. Always use the singular form of the key name in bib files, the plural is formed automatically. The keys `page`, `column`, `line`, `verse`, `section`, and `paragraph` are predefined, with `page` being the default. The string ‘none’ has a special meaning when used in a `pagination` or `bookpagination` field. It suppresses the prefix for the respective entry. If there are no predefined localization keys for the pagination scheme required by a certain entry, you can simply add them. See the commands `\NewBibliographyString` and `\DefineBibliographyStrings` in § 3.8. You need to define two localization strings for each additional pagination scheme: the singular form (whose localization key corresponds to the value of the `pagination` field) and the plural form (whose localization key must be the singular plus the letter ‘s’). See the predefined keys in § 4.9.2 for examples.

## 2.4 提示与警告 Hints and Caveats

This section provides some additional hints concerning the data interface of this package. It also addresses some common problems.

### 2.4.1 交叉引用 Cross-referencing

**2.4.1.1 The `crossref` field (BibTeX)** The `crossref` field is a convenient way to establish a parent/child relation between two associated entries. Unfortunately, the BibTeX program uses symmetric field mapping which reduces the usefulness of the `crossref` field significantly. There are two issues with symmetric field mapping, as seen in the following example:

```

@Book{book,
  author      = {Author},
  bookauthor  = {Author},
  title       = {Booktitle},

```



```

booktitle    = {Booktitle},
subtitle     = {Booksubtitle},
booksubtitle = {Booksubtitle},
publisher    = {Publisher},
location     = {Location},
date         = {1995},
}
@InBook{inbook,
  crossref    = {book},
  title       = {Title},
  subtitle    = {},
  pages       = {5--25},
}

```

As BibTeX is not capable of mapping the title field of the parent to the booktitle field of the child, the title of the book needs to be given twice. The style then needs to ignore the booktitle of the parent since it is only required to work around this fundamental limitation of BibTeX. The problem with the subtitle field is the inverse of that. Since the subtitle of the parent would become the subtitle, rather than in the booksubtitle, of the child, we need to add an empty subtitle field to the child entry to prevent inheritance of this field. Of course we also need to duplicate the subtitle in the parent entry to ensure that it is available as booksubtitle in the child entry. In short, using BibTeX's crossref field tends to bloat database files and corrupt the data model.

**2.4.1.2 The crossref field (Biber)** With Biber, the limitations of BibTeX's crossref field belong to the past. Biber features a highly customizable cross-referencing mechanism with flexible data inheritance rules. Duplicating certain fields in the parent entry or adding empty fields to the child entry is no longer required. Entries are specified in a natural way:

```

@Book{book,
  author      = {Author},
  title       = {Booktitle},
  subtitle    = {Booksubtitle},
  publisher   = {Publisher},
  location    = {Location},
  date        = {1995},
}
@InBook{inbook,
  crossref    = {book},
  title       = {Title},
  pages       = {5--25},
}

```

```
}
```

The title field of the parent will be copied to the booktitle field of the child, the subtitle becomes the booksubtitle. The author of the parent becomes the bookauthor of the child and, since the child does not provide an author field, it is also duplicated as the author of the child. After data inheritance, the child entry is similar to this:

```
author      = {Author},
bookauthor  = {Author},
title       = {Title},
booktitle   = {Booktitle},
booksubtitle = {Booksubtitle},
publisher   = {Publisher},
location    = {Location},
date        = {1995},
pages       = {5--25},
```

See 附录 B for a list of mapping rules set up by default. Note that all of this is customizable. See § 4.5.11 on how to configure Biber’s cross-referencing mechanism. See also § 2.2.3.

**2.4.1.3 The xref field** In addition to the crossref field, Biblatex supports a simplified cross-referencing mechanism based on the xref field. This is useful if you want to establish a parent/child relation between two associated entries but prefer to keep them independent as far as the data is concerned. The xref field differs from crossref in that the child entry will not inherit any data from the parent. If the parent is referenced by a certain number of child entries, Biblatex will automatically add it to the bibliography. The threshold is controlled by the mincrossrefs package option from § 3.1.2.1. The xref field is supported with all backends. See also § 2.2.3.

## 2.4.2 能力问题 Capacity Issues

**2.4.2.1 BibTeX** 当参考文献量较大时，BibTeX 可能存在内存不足的情形，这里给出了一些出错情况。最后建议使用 bibtex8 或 biber。

**2.4.2.2 bibtex8** bibtex8 比之 bibtex 有所增强，还有一些参数设置可以增大默认能力。但其能力仍然有限，还可能存在内存不足的问题。

**2.4.2.3 Biber** Biber 可以消除上述所有局限。

## 2.4.3 排序和编码问题 Sorting and Encoding Issues

**2.4.3.1 BibTeX** Traditional BibTeX can only alphabetize Ascii characters correctly. If the bibliographic data includes non-Ascii characters, they have to be given in Ascii

Parameter	Switch	Capacity			
		Default	--big	--huge	--wolfgang
max_cites	--mcites	750	2000	5000	7500
max_ent_ints	--mentints	3000	4000	5000	7500
max_ent_strs	--mentstrs	3000	6000	10000	10000
max_fields	--mfields	17250	30000	85000	125000
max_strings	--mstrings	4000	10000	19000	30000
pool_size	--mpool	65530	130000	500000	750000
wiz_fn_space	--mwizfuns	3000	6000	10000	10000
hash_prime		4253	8501	16319	30011
hash_size		5000	10000	19000	35000

**Table 4: Capacity and Switches of bibtex8**

notation. For example, instead of typing a letter like ‘ä’ directly, you need to input it as `\“a`, using an accent command and the Ascii letter. This Ascii notation needs to be wrapped in a pair of curly braces. Traditional BibTeX will then ignore the accent and use the Ascii letter for sorting. Here are a few examples:

```
author    = {S{\‘a}nchez, Jos{\‘e}},
editor    = {Ma{\ss}mann, R{\“u}diger},
translator = {Ferdi{\‘e}re, Fr{\c{c}}ois},
title     = {{\OE}uvres compl{\‘e}tes},
```

Apart from it being inconvenient, there are two major issues with this convention. One subtle problem is that the extra set of braces suppresses the kerning on both sides of all non-Ascii letters. But first and foremost, simply ignoring all accents may not be the correct way to handle them. For example, in Danish, the letter ‘å’ is the very last letter of the alphabet, so it should be alphabetized after ‘z’. BibTeX will sort it like an ‘a’. The ‘æ’ ligature and the letter ‘ø’ are also sorted after ‘z’ in this language. There are similar cases in Norwegian. In Swedish, the letter ‘ö’ is the very last letter of the alphabet and the letters ‘å’ and ‘ä’ are also alphabetized after ‘z’, rather than like an ‘a’. What’s more, even the sorting of Ascii characters is done in a rather peculiar way by traditional BibTeX because the sorting algorithm uses Ascii codepage order (0-9, A-Z, a-z). This implies that the lowercase letter ‘a’ would end up after the uppercase ‘Z’, which is not even acceptable in the language BibTeX was originally designed for. The traditional bst files work around this problem by converting all strings used for sorting to lowercase, i. e., sorting is effectively case-insensitive. See also § 2.4.3.4.

**2.4.3.2 bibtex8** Switching to bibtex8 will help in such cases. bibtex8 can sort case-sensitively and it can handle 8-bit characters properly, provided that you supply it with a suitable csf file and give the `--csfile` switch on the command line. This also implies that it is possible to apply language specific sorting rules to the bibliography. The Biblalex package comes with csf files for some common Western European encodings. bibtex8 also ships with a few csf files. Note that biblalex.bst can not detect if it is running under traditional BibTeX or bibtex8, hence the bibtex8 package option. By

default, sorting is case-insensitive since this is required for traditional BibTeX. If the `bibtex8` package option is enabled, sorting is case-sensitive.

Since `bibtex8` is backwards compatible with traditional BibTeX, it is possible to mix 8-bit input and Ascii notation. This is useful if the encoding used in the `bib` file does not cover all required characters. There are also a few marginal cases in which the Ascii notation scheme would yield better sorting results. A typical example is the ligature ‘œ’. `bibtex8` will handle this ligature like a single character. Depending on the sorting scheme defined in the `csf` file, it could be treated like an ‘o’ or alphabetized after the letter ‘o’ but it can not be sorted as ‘oe’. The Ascii notation (`\oe`) is equivalent to ‘œ’ during sorting:

```
title      = {\oeuvres complètes},  
title      = {\OEuvres complètes},
```

Sometimes even that is not sufficient and further tricks are required. For example, the letter ‘ß’ in German is particularly tricky. This letter is essentially alphabetized as ‘ss’ but after ‘ss’. The name ‘Baßmann’ would be alphabetized as follows: Basmann/Bassmann/Baßmann/Bastmann. In this case, the Ascii notation (`\ss`) would yield slightly better sorting results than ‘ß’ in conjunction with a `csf` file which treats ‘ß’ like ‘s’:

```
author      = {Ba{\ss}mann, Paul},
```

To get it absolutely right, however, you need to resort to the `sortname` field:

```
author      = {Baßmann, Paul},  
sortname    = {Basszzmann, Paul},
```

Not only BibTeX, LaTeX needs to know about the encoding as well. See § 2.4.3.4 on how to specify encodings.

**2.4.3.3 Biber** Biber handles Ascii, 8-bit encodings such as Latin 1, and UTF-8. It features true Unicode support and is capable of reencoding the `bib` data on the fly in a robust way. For sorting, Biber uses a Perl implementation of the Unicode Collation Algorithm (UCA), as outlined in Unicode Technical Standard #10.<sup>18</sup> Collation tailoring based on the Unicode Common Locale Data Repository (CLDR) is also supported.<sup>19</sup> The bottom line is that Biber will deliver sorting results far superior to both BibTeX and `bibtex8` in many cases. If you are interested in the technical details, section 1.8 of Unicode Technical Standard #10 will provide you with a very concise summary of why the inadequateness of traditional BibTeX and even `bibtex8` is of a very general nature and not limited to the lack of UTF-8 support.<sup>20</sup>

<sup>18</sup><http://unicode.org/reports/tr10/>

<sup>19</sup><http://cldr.unicode.org/>

<sup>20</sup>[http://unicode.org/reports/tr10/#Common\\_Misperceptions](http://unicode.org/reports/tr10/#Common_Misperceptions)

Supporting Unicode implies much more than handling UTF-8 input. Unicode is a complex standard covering more than its most well-known parts, the Unicode character encoding and transport encodings such as UTF-8. It also standardizes aspects such as string collation, which is required for language-sensitive sorting. For example, by using the Unicode Collation Algorithm, Biber can handle the character ‘ß’ mentioned as an example in § 2.4.3.2 without any manual intervention. All you need to do to get localized sorting is specify the locale:

```
\usepackage[backend=biber,sortlocale=de]{biblatex}
```

or if you are using german as the main document language via Babel or Polyglossia:

```
\usepackage[backend=biber,sortlocale=auto]{biblatex}
```

This will make Biblatex pass the Babel/Polyglossia main document language as the locale which Biber will map into a suitable default locale. Biber will not try to get locale information from its environment as this makes document processing dependent on something not in the document which is against TeX’s spirit of reproducibility. This also makes sense since Babel/Polyglossia are in fact the relevant environment for a document. Note that this will also work with 8-bit encodings such as Latin 9, i. e., you can take advantage of Unicode-based sorting even though you are not using UTF-8 input. See § 2.4.3.4 on how to specify input and data encodings properly.

**2.4.3.4 Specifying Encodings** When using a non-Ascii encoding in the bib file, it is important to understand what Biblatex can do for you and what may require manual intervention. The package takes care of the LaTeX side, i. e., it ensures that the data imported from the bbl file is interpreted correctly, provided that the bibencoding package option is set properly. Depending on the backend, the BibTeX side may demand attention, too. When using bibtex8, you need to supply bibtex8 with a matching csf file as it needs to know about the encoding of the bib file to be able to alphabetize the entries correctly. Unfortunately, there is no way for Biblatex to pass this information to bibtex8 automatically. The only way is setting its --csfile option on the command line when running bibtex8. When using Biber, all of this is handled automatically and no further steps, apart from setting the bibencoding option in certain cases, are required. Here are a few typical usage scenarios along with the relevant lines from the document preamble:

- Ascii notation in both the tex and the bib file with pdfTeX or traditional TeX (this will work with BibTeX, bibtex8, and Biber):

```
\usepackage{biblatex}
```

- Latin 1 encoding (iso-8859-1) in the tex file, Ascii notation in the bib file with pdfTeX or traditional TeX (BibTeX, bibtex8, Biber):

```
\usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}
\usepackage[bibencoding=ascii]{biblatex}
```

- Latin 9 encoding (ISO-8859-15) in both the tex and the bib file with pdfTeX or traditional TeX (bibtex8, Biber):

```
\usepackage[latin9]{inputenc}
\usepackage[bibencoding=auto]{biblatex}
```

Since `bibencoding=auto` is the default setting, the option is omissible. The following setup will have the same effect:

```
\usepackage[latin9]{inputenc}
\usepackage{biblatex}
```

- UTF-8 encoding in the tex file, Latin 1 (ISO-8859-1) in the bib file with pdfTeX or traditional TeX (bibtex8, Biber):

```
\usepackage[utf8]{inputenc}
\usepackage[bibencoding=latin1]{biblatex}
```

The same scenario with XeTeX or LuaTeX in native UTF-8 mode:

```
\usepackage[bibencoding=latin1]{biblatex}
```

- Using UTF-8 encoding in both the tex and the bib file is not possible with traditional BibTeX or bibtex8 since neither of them is capable of handling UTF-8. Unless you switch to Biber, you need to use an 8-bit encoding such as Latin 1 (see above) or resort to Ascii notation in this case:

```
\usepackage[utf8]{inputenc}
\usepackage[bibencoding=ascii]{biblatex}
```

The same scenario with XeTeX or LuaTeX in native UTF-8 mode:

```
\usepackage[bibencoding=ascii]{biblatex}
```

Biber can handle Ascii notation, 8-bit encodings such as Latin 1, and UTF-8. It is also capable of reencoding the bib data on the fly (replacing the limited macro-level reencoding feature of Biblatex). This will happen automatically if required, provided that you specify the encoding of the bib files properly. In addition to the scenarios discussed above, Biber can also handle the following cases:

- Transparent UTF-8 workflow, i. e., UTF-8 encoding in both the tex and the bib file with pdfTeX or traditional TeX:

```
\usepackage[utf8]{inputenc}
\usepackage[bibencoding=auto]{biblatex}
```

Since bibencoding=auto is the default setting, the option is omissible:

```
\usepackage[utf8]{inputenc}
\usepackage{biblatex}
```

The same scenario with XeTeX or LuaTeX in native UTF-8 mode:

```
\usepackage{biblatex}
```

- It is even possible to combine an 8-bit encoded tex file with UTF-8 encoding in the bib file, provided that all characters in the bib file are also covered by the selected 8-bit encoding:

```
\usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}
\usepackage[bibencoding=utf8]{biblatex}
```

Some workarounds may be required when using traditional TeX or pdfTeX with UTF-8 encoding because inputenc's utf8 module does not cover all of Unicode. Roughly speaking, it only covers the Western European Unicode range. When loading inputenc with the utf8 option, Biblatex will normally instruct Biber to reencode the bib data to UTF-8. This may lead to inputenc errors if some of the characters in the bib file are outside the limited Unicode range supported by inputenc.

- If you are affected by this problem, try setting the safeinputenc option:

```
\usepackage[utf8]{inputenc}
\usepackage[safeinputenc]{biblatex}
```

If this option is enabled, Biblatex will ignore inputenc's utf8 option and use Ascii. Biber will then try to convert the bib data to Ascii notation. For example, it will convert S to \k{S}. This option is similar to setting texencoding=ascii but will only take effect in this specific scenario (inputenc/inputenx with UTF-8). This workaround takes advantage of the fact that both Unicode and the UTF-8 transport encoding are backwards compatible with Ascii.



This solution may be acceptable as a workaround if the data in the bib file is mostly Ascii anyway, with only a few strings, such as some authors' names, causing problems. However, keep in mind that it will not magically make traditional TeX or pdfTeX support Unicode. It may help if the occasional odd character is not supported by inputenc, but may still be processed by TeX when using an accent command (e. g., `\d{S}` instead of `\S`). If you need full Unicode support, however, switch to XeTeX or LuaTeX.

Typical errors when inputenc cannot handle a certain UTF-8 character are:

```
Package inputenc Error: Unicode char \u8: not set up for use with LaTeX
```

but also less obvious things like:

```
! Argument of \UTFviii@three@octets has an extra }.
```

#### 2.4.4 编纂者脚本 Editors and Compiler Scripts

本节需要更新以配合 Biblatex 使用的新的脚本接口。目前，草稿内容可以参考 `logreq` 包的说明文档<sup>21</sup>和 Biblatex 开发者百科<sup>22</sup>。

### 3 用户使用手册

本部分介绍 biblatex 包的用户接口。这一部分的用户指南包含了所有要使用标准样式的信息。无论如何首先要阅读这一用户指南，如果要写自己的样式，则需要继续阅读后面的作者指南。

#### 3.1 宏包选项

所有的包选项都以  $\langle key \rangle = \langle value \rangle$  形式标记。对于所有的布尔选项，其值 `true` 都可以忽略。比如给出 `sortcites` 不带选项值等价于 `sortcites=true`。

##### 3.1.1 加载选项

下面的选项必须在 Biblatex 加载时给出，即作为 `\usepackage` 命令的可选参数。

`backend=bibtex, bibtex8, bibtexu, biber` default: biber

用于指定数据库后端。支持的后端包括:

- |               |   |
|---------------|---|
| <b>biber</b>  | Biber, Biblatex 的默认后端，支持 Ascii, 8-bit 编码, UTF-8, 再编码 <sup>23</sup> , 本地定制排序和很多其他特性。本地定制排序、大小写敏感排序、大小写优先分别由 <code>sortlocale</code> , <code>sortcase</code> , 和 <code>sortupper</code> 选项控制。 |
| <b>bibtex</b> | 遗留的 BibTeX. 传统的 BibTeX 仅支持 Ascii 编码。排序总是大小写敏感。  |

<sup>21</sup><http://www.ctan.org/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/logreq/>

<sup>22</sup>[http://sourceforge.net/apps/mediawiki/biblatex/index.php?title=Workflow\\_Automation](http://sourceforge.net/apps/mediawiki/biblatex/index.php?title=Workflow_Automation)

<sup>23</sup>on-the-fly?

<code>bibtex8</code>	<code>bibtex8</code> , BibTeX 的 8-bit 实现, 支持 Ascii 和 8-bit 编码比如 Latin 1。根据 <code>csf</code> 文件, 可以支持大小写敏感排序
<code>bibtexu</code>	<code>bibtexu</code> 是 BibTeX 为支持 Unicode 的实现版本, 可以支持UTF-8。注意 Biblatex 不主动支持 <code>bibtexu</code> , 并没有以任何方式进行测试。Biber 则是推荐的后端。

关于文件编码的更多说明见 § 2.4.3节。该选项仅在加载的是偶作为内部选项提供, 代码根据 `backend` 选择完全不同的路径。这意味着不能用导言区的命令比如`\ExecuteBibliographyOptions`设置后端。

`style=<file>` default: numeric

加载参考文献著录样式`file.bbx` 和标注样式`file.cbx`。各标准样式介绍见 § 3.3节。

`bibstyle=<file>` default: numeric

加载参考文献著录样式`file.bbx`。各标准著录样式介绍见 § 3.3.2节。

`citestyle=<file>` default: numeric

加载参考文献标注样式`file.cbx`。各标准标注样式介绍见 § 3.3.1节。

`natbib=true, false` default: false

加载兼容模块, 提供了`natbib`包的引用命令的同名替代命令。详见 § 3.7.9节。

`mcite=true, false` default: false

加载一个引用命令模块, 提供了类似`mcite/mciteplus`的引用命令。详见 § 3.7.10节。

### 3.1.2 导言区选项

**3.1.2.1 一般选项** 下面的选项可以作为`\usepackage`命令的可选参数, 也可以在配置文件和导言区设置。默认值列在右侧作为包的默认值。注意著录和标注样式可以修改加载时的默认设置, 详见 § 3.3节。

`sorting=nty, nyt, nyvt, anyt, anyvt, ynt, ydnt, none, debug, <name>` default: nty

参考文献的排序方式。除非进行声明, 否则条目以升序排列。下面提供的是预设可选值:

<code>nty</code>	Sort by name, title, year.
<code>nyt</code>	Sort by name, year, title.
<code>nyvt</code>	Sort by name, year, volume, title.
<code>anyt</code>	Sort by alphabetic label, name, year, title.
<code>anyvt</code>	Sort by alphabetic label, name, year, volume, title.
<code>ynt</code>	Sort by year, name, title.
<code>ydnt</code>	Sort by year (descending), name, title.

<code>none</code>	Do not sort at all. All entries are processed in citation order.	
<code>debug</code>	Sort by entry key. This is intended for debugging only.	
<code>⟨name⟩</code>	Use <code>⟨name⟩</code> , as defined with <code>\DeclareSortingScheme</code> (§ 4.5.6)	Biber only

Using any of the ‘alphabetic’ sorting schemes only makes sense in conjunction with a bibliography style which prints the corresponding labels. Note that some bibliography styles initialize this package option to a value different from the package default (`nty`). See § 3.3.2 for details. Please refer to § 3.5 for an in-depth explanation of the above sorting options as well as the fields considered in the sorting process. See also § 4.5.6 on how to adapt the predefined schemes or define new ones.

`sortcase=true, false` default: `true`

Whether or not to sort the bibliography and the list of shorthands case-sensitively. Note that case-sensitive sorting is only supported by the `bibtex8` and Biber backends. Sorting is always case-insensitive with legacy BibTeX. See the backend option for details.

`sortupper=true, false` default: `true` Biber only

This option corresponds to Biber’s `--sortupper` command-line option. It has no effect with any other backend. If enabled, the bibliography is sorted in ‘uppercase before lowercase’ order. Disabling this option means ‘lowercase before uppercase’ order.

`sortlocale=auto, ⟨locale⟩` Biber only

This option sets the global sorting locale. Every sorting scheme inherits this locale if none is specified using the `⟨locale⟩` option to `\printbibliography`. Setting this to `auto` requests that it be set to the Babel/Polyglossia main document language identifier, if these packages are used and `en_US` otherwise. Biber will map Babel/Polyglossia language identifiers into sensible locale identifiers (see the Biber documentation). You can therefore specify either a normal locale identifier like `de_DE_phonebook`, `es_ES` or one of the supported Babel/Polyglossia language identifiers if the mapping Biber makes of this is fine for you.

`sortlos=bib, los` default: `los` BibTeX only

The sorting order of the list of shorthands. The following choices are available:

<code>bib</code>	Sort according to the sorting order of the bibliography.
<code>los</code>	Sort by shorthand.

The sorting order of shorthands with Biber is more flexible and is set with the `sorting` option to the `\printbiblist` command.

`related=true, false` default: `true` Biber only

Whether or not to use information from related entries or not. See § 3.4.

是否使用相关条目的信息。

`sortcites=true, false` default: false

Whether or not to sort citations if multiple entry keys are passed to a citation command. If this option is enabled, citations are sorted according to the current bibliography context sorting scheme (see § 3.6.11). This feature works with all citation styles.

当多个条目关键词传给引用命令时，是否进行排序。

`maxnames=<integer>` default: 3

A threshold affecting all lists of names (author, editor, etc.). If a list exceeds this threshold, i. e., if it holds more than *<integer>* names, it is automatically truncated according to the setting of the minnames option. maxnames is the master option which sets both maxbibnames and maxcitenames.

最大名字数量，超过截断。

`minnames=<integer>` default: 1

A limit affecting all lists of names (author, editor, etc.). If a list holds more than *<maxnames>* names, it is automatically truncated to *<minnames>* names. The *<minnames>* value must be smaller than or equal to *<maxnames>*. minnames is the master option which sets both minbibnames and mincitenames.

超过多于*<maxnames>*的名字，截断到*<minnames>* names。

`maxbibnames=<integer>` default: *<maxnames>*

Similar to maxnames but affects only the bibliography.

`minbibnames=<integer>` default: *<minnames>*

Similar to minnames but affects only the bibliography.

`maxcitenames=<integer>` default: *<maxnames>*

Similar to maxnames but affects only the citations in the document body.

`mincitenames=<integer>` default: *<minnames>*

Similar to minnames but affects only the citations in the document body.

`maxitems=<integer>` default: 3

Similar to maxnames, but affecting all literal lists (publisher, location, etc.).

最大项数类似于姓名的处理，用于publisher, location等域。

`minitems=<integer>` default: 1

Similar to minnames, but affecting all literal lists (publisher, location, etc.).

`autocite=plain, inline, footnote, superscript, ...`

控制引用文字的样式。注意 `superscript` 选项只有在以数字引用的样式中使用，其它则总是可以。

This option controls the behavior of the `\autocite` command discussed in § 3.7.4. The `plain` option makes `\autocite` behave like `\cite`, `inline` makes it behave like `\parencite`, `footnote` makes it behave like `\footcite`, and `superscript` makes it behave like `\supercite`. The options `plain`, `inline`, and `footnote` are always available, the `superscript` option is only provided by the numeric citation styles which come with this package. The citation style may also define additional options. The default setting of this option depends on the selected citation style, see § 3.3.1.

`autopunct=true, false`

default: `true`

This option controls whether the citation commands scan ahead for punctuation marks. See § 3.7 and `\DeclareAutoPunctuation` in § 4.7.5 for details.

控制引用命令是否在标点前扫描。

`language=autobib, autocite, auto, <language>`

default: `autobib`

This option controls multilingual support. When set to `autobib`, `autocite` or `auto`, Biblatex will try to get the main document language from the `babel/polyglossia` package (and fall back to English if `babel/polyglossia` is not available). It is also possible to select the document language manually. In this case, the `autolang` option below will have no effect. Please refer to 表 2 for a list of supported languages and the corresponding identifiers. `autobib` switches the language for each entry in the bibliography using the `langid` field and the language environment specified by the `autolang` option. `autocite` switches the language for each citation using the `langid` field and the language environment specified by the `autolang` option. `auto` is a shorthand to set both `autobib` and `autocite`. The default is to switch languages automatically only for bibliography entries (`autobib`).

`clearlang=true, false`

default: `true`

If this option is enabled, Biblatex will automatically clear the `language` field of all entries whose language matches the `babel/polyglossia` language of the document (or the language specified explicitly with the `language` option) in order to omit redundant language specifications. The language mappings required by this feature are provided by the `\DeclareRedundantLanguages` command from § 4.9.1.

`autolang=none, hyphen, other, other*, language`

default: `none`

This option controls which `babel` language environment<sup>24</sup> is used if the `babel/polyglossia` package is loaded and a bibliography entry includes a `langid` field

---

<sup>24</sup>`polyglossia` understands the `babel` language environments too and so this option controls both the `babel` and `polyglossia` language environments.

(see § 2.2.3). Note that Biblatex automatically adjusts to the main document language if `babel/polyglossia` is loaded. In multilingual documents, it will also continually adjust to the current language as far as citations and the default language of the bibliography is concerned. This option is for switching languages on a per-entry basis within the bibliography. The possible choices are:

<code>none</code>	Disable this feature, i. e., do not use any language environment at all.
<code>hyphen</code>	Enclose the entry in a <code>hyphenrules</code> environment. This will load hyphenation patterns for the language specified in the <code>hyphenation</code> field of the entry, if available.
<code>other</code>	Enclose the entry in an <code>otherlanguage</code> environment. This will load hyphenation patterns for the specified language, enable all extra definitions which <code>babel/polyglossia</code> and Biblatex provide for the respective language, and translate key terms such as ‘editor’ and ‘volume’. The extra definitions include localizations of the date format, of ordinals, and similar things.
<code>other*</code>	Enclose the entry in an <code>otherlanguage*</code> environment. Please note that Biblatex treats <code>otherlanguage*</code> like <code>otherlanguage</code> but other packages may make a distinction in this case.
<code>langname</code>	<code>polyglossia</code> only. Enclose the entry in a ‘ <code>language</code> name’ environment. The benefit of this option value for <code>polyglossia</code> users is that it takes note of the <code>langidopts</code> field so that you can add per-language options to an entry (like selecting a language variant). When using <code>babel</code> , this option does the same as the <code>other</code> option value.

`block=none, space, par, nbpar, ragged` default: none

`block=` 选项控制块之间的额外空间，比如参考文献条目的更大部分。

This option controls the extra spacing between blocks, i. e., larger segments of a bibliography entry. The possible choices are:

<code>none</code>	Do not add anything at all. 不添加任何东西
<code>space</code>	Insert additional horizontal space between blocks. This is similar to the default behavior of the standard LaTeX document classes. 在块之间插入水平空间，类似于 latex 文档类的默认方式。
<code>par</code>	Start a new paragraph for every block. This is similar to the <code>openbib</code> option of the standard LaTeX document classes. 开启新的一段，类似于标准 latex 文档类的 <code>openbib</code> 选项。
<code>nbpar</code>	Similar to the <code>par</code> option, but disallows page breaks at block boundaries and within an entry. 类似域 <code>par</code> 选项，但在条目中块边界处不允许分页。

**ragged** Inserts a small negative penalty to encourage line breaks at block boundaries and sets the bibliography ragged right. 插入一个负的罚值用于鼓励在块的编辑处换行，使其左对齐。

The `\newblockpunct` command may also be redefined directly to achieve different results, see § 3.9.1. Also see § 4.7.1 for additional information.

`\newblockpunct`可以重定义实现不同的效果，见 § 3.9.1。更多的信息参见 § 4.7.1。

**notetype**=foot+end, footonly, endonly default: foot+end

该选项控制`\mkbibfootnote`、`\mkbibendnote`或类似 § 4.10.4 的 wrappers 的行为。

This option controls the behavior of `\mkbibfootnote`, `\mkbibendnote`, and similar wrappers from § 4.10.4. The possible choices are:

**foot+end** Support both footnotes and endnotes, i. e., `\mkbibfootnote` will generate footnotes and `\mkbibendnote` will generate endnotes.

脚注和尾注分开

**footonly** Force footnotes, i. e., make `\mkbibendnote` generate footnotes.

都生成脚注

**endonly** Force endnotes, i. e., make `\mkbibfootnote` generate endnotes.

都生成尾注

**hyperref**=true, false, auto default: auto

是否形成超连接，需要样式文件支持。标准样式支持。

Whether or not to transform citations and back references into clickable hyperlinks. This feature requires the `hyperref` package. It also requires support by the selected citation style. All standard styles which ship with this package support hyperlinks. `hyperref=auto` automatically detects if the `hyperref` package has been loaded.

**backref**=true, false default: false

是否形成反向超连接，需要样式文件支持。标准样式支持。

Whether or not to print back references in the bibliography. The back references are a list of page numbers indicating the pages on which the respective bibliography entry is cited. If there are refsection environments in the document, the back references are local to the reference sections. Strictly speaking, this option only controls whether the Biblatex package collects the data required to print such references. This feature still has to be supported by the selected bibliography style. All standard styles which ship with this package do so.

**backrefstyle**=none, three, two, two+, three+, all+ default: three

控制反向连接的页码连续形式。

This option controls how sequences of consecutive pages in the list of back references are formatted. The following styles are available:



<b>none</b>	Disable this feature, i. e., do not compress the page list.
<b>three</b>	Compress any sequence of three or more consecutive pages to a range, e. g., the list ‘1, 2, 11, 12, 13, 21, 22, 23, 24’ is compressed to ‘1, 2, 11–13, 21–24’.
<b>two</b>	Compress any sequence of two or more consecutive pages to a range, e. g., the above list is compressed to ‘1–2, 11–13, 21–24’.
<b>two+</b>	Similar in concept to two but a sequence of exactly two consecutive pages is printed using the starting page and the localization string <code>sequens</code> , e. g., the above list is compressed to ‘1 sq., 11–13, 21–24’.
<b>three+</b>	Similar in concept to two+ but a sequence of exactly three consecutive pages is printed using the starting page and the localization string <code>sequentes</code> , e. g., the above list is compressed to ‘1 sq., 11 sqq., 21–24’.
<b>all+</b>	Similar in concept to three+ but any sequence of consecutive pages is printed as an open-ended range, e. g., the above list is compressed to ‘1 sq., 11 sqq., 21 sqq.’.

All styles support both Arabic and Roman numerals. In order to avoid potentially ambiguous lists, different sets of numerals will not be mixed when generating ranges, e. g., the list ‘iii, iv, v, 6, 7, 8’ is compressed to ‘iii–v, 6–8’.

**backrefsetstyle**=setonly, memonly, setormem, setandmem, memandset, setplusmem default: setonly

控制 set 条目如何反向连接。

This option controls how back references to @set entries and their members are handled. The following options are available:

<b>setonly</b>	All back references are added to the @set entry. The pageref lists of set members remain blank.
<b>memonly</b>	References to set members are added to the respective member. References to the @set entry are added to all members. The pageref list of the @set entry remains blank.
<b>setormem</b>	References to the @set entry are added to the @set entry. References to set members are added to the respective member.
<b>setandmem</b>	References to the @set entry are added to the @set entry. References to set members are added to the respective member and to the @set entry.
<b>memandset</b>	References to the @set entry are added to the @set entry and to all members. References to set members are added to the respective member.
<b>setplusmem</b>	References to the @set entry are added to the @set entry and to all members. References to set members are added to the respective member and to the @set entry.

`indexing=true, false, cite, bib`

default: false

该选项控制在参考文献或引用中使用索引。

This option controls indexing in citations and in the bibliography. More precisely, it affects the `\ifciteindex` and `\ifbibindex` commands from § 4.6.2. The option is settable on a global, a per-type, or on a per-entry basis. The possible choices are:

- `true`            Enable indexing globally.
- `false`          Disable indexing globally.
- `cite`            Enable indexing in citations only.
- `bib`            Enable indexing in the bibliography only.

This feature requires support by the selected citation style. All standard styles which ship with this package support indexing of both citations and entries in the bibliography. Note that you still need to enable indexing globally with `\makeindex` to get an index.

`loadfiles=true, false`

default: false

This option controls whether external files requested by way of the `\printfile` command are loaded. See also § 3.11.8 and `\printfile` in § 4.4.1. Note that this feature is disabled by default for performance reasons.

`refsection=none, part, chapter, section, subsection`

default: none

该选项自动产生一个新的参考文献分部在文档划分为章节的时候。This option automatically starts a new reference section at a document division such as a chapter or a section. This is equivalent to the `\newrefsection` command, see § 3.6.5 for details. The following choice of document divisions is available:

- `none`            Disable this feature.
- `part`            Start a reference section at every `\part` command.
- `chapter`        Start a reference section at every `\chapter` command.
- `section`        Start a reference section at every `\section` command.
- `subsection`    Start a reference section at every `\subsection` command.

带星号的文档划分章节命令不产生参考文献部分。

The starred versions of these commands will not start a new reference section.

`refsegment=none, part, chapter, section, subsection`

default: none

类似于 `refsection` 选项。

Similar to the `refsection` option but starts a new reference segment. This is equivalent to the `\newrefsegment` command, see § 3.6.6 for details. When using both options, note that you can only apply this option to a lower-level document division than the one `refsection` is applied to and that nested reference segments will be local to the enclosing reference section.

`citereset`=none, part, chapter, section, subsection default: none

该选项控制在文档划分时自动执行`\citereset`命令。

This option automatically executes the `\citereset` command from § 3.7.8 at a document division such as a chapter or a section. The following choice of document divisions is available:

- |                         |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| <code>none</code>       | Disable this feature.                                      |
| <code>part</code>       | Perform a reset at every <code>\part</code> command.       |
| <code>chapter</code>    | Perform a reset at every <code>\chapter</code> command.    |
| <code>section</code>    | Perform a reset at every <code>\section</code> command.    |
| <code>subsection</code> | Perform a reset at every <code>\subsection</code> command. |

The starred versions of these commands will not trigger a reset.

`abbreviate`=true, false default: true

是否在引用和参考文献中使用长或缩略的字符串。

Whether or not to use long or abbreviated strings in citations and in the bibliography. This option affects the localization modules. If this option is enabled, key terms such as ‘editor’ are abbreviated. If not, they are written out.

`date`=year, short, long, terse, comp, iso8601 default: comp

该选项控制打印日期的规范。

This option controls the basic format of printed date specifications. The following choices are available:

- |                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>year</code>  | Use only years, for example:<br>2010<br>2010–2012   |
| <code>short</code> | Use the short format with verbose ranges, for example:<br>01/01/2010<br>21/01/2010–30/01/2010<br>01/21/2010–01/30/2010                                |
| <code>long</code>  | Use the long format with verbose ranges, for example:<br>1st January 2010<br>21st January 2010–30th January 2010<br>January 21, 2010–January 30, 2010 |
| <code>terse</code> | Use the short format with compact ranges, for example:<br>21–30/01/2010<br>01/21–01/30/2010   |

<code>comp</code>	Use the long format with compact ranges, for example: 21st–30th January 2010 January 21–30, 2010
<code>iso8601</code>	Use extended ISO-8601 format (yyyy-mm-dd), for example: 2010-01-01 2010-01-21/2010-01-30

As seen in the above examples, the actual date format is language specific. Note that the month name in all long formats is responsive to the `abbreviate` package option. The leading zeros in all short formats may be controlled separately with the `datezeros` package option.

`datelabel`=year, short, long, terse, comp, iso8601 default: year

类似域 `date` 选项，但控制由 `\DeclareLabeldate` 命令选择的日期域。

Similar to the `date` option but controls the format of the date field selected with `\DeclareLabeldate`.

`origdate`=year, short, long, terse, comp, iso8601 default: comp

Similar to the `date` option but controls the format of the `origdate`.

`eventdate`=year, short, long, terse, comp, iso8601 default: comp

Similar to the `date` option but controls the format of the `eventdate`.

`urldate`=year, short, long, terse, comp, iso8601 default: short

Similar to the `date` option but controls the format of the `urldate`.

`alldates`=year, short, long, terse, comp, iso8601

设置上述所有的日期选项为相同值。Sets all of the above date options to the same value.

`datezeros`=true, false default: true

This option controls whether short and terse dates are printed with leading zeros.

`dateabbrev`=true, false default: true

This option controls whether long and comp dates are printed with long or abbreviated month names. The option is similar to the generic `abbreviate` option but specific to the date formatting.

`defernumbers`=true, false default: false

In contrast to standard LaTeX, the numeric labels generated by this package are normally assigned to the full list of references at the beginning of the document body. If

this option is enabled, numeric labels (i. e., the `labelnumber` field discussed in § 4.2.4) are assigned the first time an entry is printed in any bibliography. See § 3.12.5 for further explanation. This option requires two LaTeX runs after the data has been exported to the `bbl` file by the backend (in addition to any other runs required by page breaks changing etc.). An important thing to note is that if you change the value of this option in your document (or the value of options which depend on this like some of the options to the `\printbibliography` macro, see § 3.6.2), then it is likely that you will need to delete your current aux file and re-run LaTeX to obtain the correct numbering. See § 4.1.

`punctfont=true, false` default: false

启用处理单位标点时的替换机制 This option enables an alternative mechanism for dealing with unit punctuation after a field printed in a different font (for example, a title printed in italics). See `\setpunctfont` in § 4.7.1 for details.

`arxiv=abs, ps, pdf, format` default: abs

Path selector for arXiv links. If hyperlink support is enabled, this option controls which version of the document the arXiv eprint links will point to. The following choices are available:

- `abs`            Link to the abstract page.
- `ps`             Link to the PostScript version.
- `pdf`            Link to the PDF version.
- `format`        Link to the format selector page.

See § 3.11.7 for details on support for arXiv and electronic publishing information.

`texencoding=auto,  $\langle encoding \rangle$`  default: auto

指定 tex 文件的编码。

Specifies the encoding of the tex file. This option affects the data transferred from the backend to Biblatex. When using Biber, this corresponds to Biber's `--output_encoding` option. The following choices are available:

- `auto`            Try to auto-detect the input encoding. If the `inputenc/inputenx/luainputenc` package is available, Biblatex will get the main encoding from that package. If not, it assumes UTF-8 encoding if XeTeX or LuaTeX has been detected, and Ascii otherwise.
- $\langle encoding \rangle$     Specifies the  $\langle encoding \rangle$  explicitly. This is for odd cases in which auto-detection fails or you want to force a certain encoding for some reason.

Note that setting `texencoding= $\langle encoding \rangle$`  will also affect the `bibencoding` option if `bibencoding=auto`.

`bibencoding=auto, <encoding>`

default: auto

Specifies the encoding of the bib files. When using Bibex, this corresponds to Bibex's `--input_encoding` option. The following choices are available:

- `auto` Use this option if the workflow is transparent, i. e., if the encoding of the bib file is identical to the encoding of the tex file.
- `<encoding>` If the encoding of the bib file is different from the one of the tex file, you need to specify it explicitly.

By default, Biblatex assumes that the tex file and the bib file use the same encoding (`bibencoding=auto`). Note that some backends only support a limited number of encodings. See § 2.4.3 for further instructions.

`safeinputenc=true, false`

default: false

Biber only

If this option is enabled, Biblatex will automatically force `texencoding=ascii` if the `inputenc/inputex` package has been loaded and the input encoding is UTF-8, i. e., it will ignore any macro-based UTF-8 support and use Ascii only. Bibex will then try to convert any non-Ascii data in the bib file to Ascii. For example, it will convert `§` to `\d{S}`. See § 2.4.3.4 for an explanation of why you may want to enable this option.

`bibwarn=true, false`

default: true

By default, Biblatex will report warnings issued by the backend concerning the data in the bib file as LaTeX warnings. Use this option to suppress such warnings.

`mincrossrefs=<integer>`

default: 2

Sets the minimum number of cross references to `<integer>` when requesting a backend run.<sup>25</sup> Note that when using the BibTeX backend, this package option merely affects the format of certain requests written to the transcript file. It will not have any effect if the editor or compiler script launching BibTeX does not include dedicated Biblatex support or if BibTeX is manually launched from the command-line.<sup>26</sup> See § 2.4.4 for details. This option also affects the handling of the `xref` field. See the field description in § 2.2.3 as well as § 2.4.1 for details.

**3.1.2.2 Style-specific** The following options are provided by the standard styles (as opposed to the core package). Technically, they are preamble options like those in § 3.1.2.1.

下面的选项是标准样式提供的。技术上来说，它们是导言区选项。

---

<sup>25</sup>If an entry which is cross-referenced by other entries in the bib file hits this threshold, it is included in the bibliography even if it has not been cited explicitly. This is a standard feature of the BibTeX (also Bibex) and not specific to Biblatex. See the description of the `crossref` field in § 2.2.3 for further information.

<sup>26</sup>As of this writing, no LaTeX editors or compiler scripts with dedicated Biblatex support are known, but this will hopefully change in the future.

`isbn=true, false` default: true

控制类似 `isbn` 的域是否打印。

This option controls whether the fields `isbn/issn/isrn` are printed.

`url=true, false` default: true

控制 `url` 域和访问日期是否打印。

This option controls whether the `url` field and the access date is printed. The option only affects entry types whose `url` information is optional. The `url` field of `@online` entries is always printed.

`doi=true, false` default: true

This option controls whether the field `doi` is printed.

控制 `doi` 域是否打印

`eprint=true, false` default: true

This option controls whether `eprint` information is printed.

控制 `eprint` 信息是否打印。

**3.1.2.3 Internal** The default settings of the following preamble options are controlled by bibliography and citation styles. Apart from the `pagetracker` and `firstinits` options, which you may want to adapt, there is normally no need to set them explicitly.

下面的导言区选项是由样式文件控制的。

`pagetracker=true, false, page, spread` default: false

This option controls the page tracker which is required by the `\ifsamepage` and `\iffirstonpage` tests from § 4.6.2. The possible choices are:

页码追踪器选项。

`true` Enable the tracker in automatic mode. This is like `spread` if LaTeX is in `twoside` mode, and like `page` otherwise.

`false` Disable the tracker.

`page` Enable the tracker in page mode. In this mode, tracking works on a per-page basis.

`spread` Enable the tracker in spread mode. In this mode, tracking works on a per-spread (double page) basis.

Note that this tracker is disabled in all floats, see § 4.11.5.

`citecounter=true, false, context` default: false

控制引用计数器的使用模式。

This option controls the citation counter which is required by `citecounter` from § 4.6.2. The possible choices are:



<code>true</code>	Enable the citation counter in global mode.
<code>false</code>	Disable the citation counter.
<code>context</code>	Enable the citation counter in context-sensitive mode. In this mode, citations in footnotes and in the body text are counted independently.

`citetracker=true, false, context, strict, constrict` default: `false`

控制引用追踪器的使用模式。

This option controls the citation tracker which is required by the `\ifciteseen` and `\ifentryseen` tests from § 4.6.2. The possible choices are:

<code>true</code>	Enable the tracker in global mode.
<code>false</code>	Disable the tracker.
<code>context</code>	Enable the tracker in context-sensitive mode. In this mode, citations in footnotes and in the body text are tracked independently.
<code>strict</code>	Enable the tracker in strict mode. In this mode, an item is only considered by the tracker if it appeared in a stand-alone citation, i. e., if a single entry key was passed to the citation command.
<code>constrict</code>	This mode combines the features of <code>context</code> and <code>strict</code> .

Note that this tracker is disabled in all floats, see § 4.11.5.

`ibidtracker=true, false, context, strict, constrict` default: `false`

控制出处追踪器的使用模式。

This option controls the ‘ibidem’ tracker which is required by the `\ifciteibid` test from § 4.6.2. The possible choices are:

<code>true</code>	Enable the tracker in global mode.
<code>false</code>	Disable the tracker.
<code>context</code>	Enable the tracker in context-sensitive mode. In this mode, citations in footnotes and in the body text are tracked separately.
<code>strict</code>	Enable the tracker in strict mode. In this mode, potentially ambiguous references are suppressed. A reference is considered ambiguous if either the current citation (the one including the ‘ibidem’) or the previous citation (the one the ‘ibidem’ refers to) consists of a list of references. <sup>27</sup>
<code>constrict</code>	This mode combines the features of <code>context</code> and <code>strict</code> . It also keeps track of footnote numbers and detects potentially ambiguous references in footnotes in a stricter way than the <code>strict</code> option. In addition to the conditions imposed by the <code>strict</code> option, a reference in a footnote will

---

<sup>27</sup>For example, suppose the initial citation is “Jones, *Title*; Williams, *Title*” and the following one “ibidem”. From a technical point of view, it is fairly clear that the ‘ibidem’ refers to ‘Williams’ because this is the last reference processed by the previous citation command. To a human reader, however, this may not be obvious because the ‘ibidem’ may also refer to both titles. The strict mode avoids such ambiguous references.

only be considered as unambiguous if the current citation and the previous citation are given in the same footnote or in immediately consecutive footnotes.

Note that this tracker is disabled in all floats, see § 4.11.5.

`opcittracker=true, false, context, strict, constrict` default: false

前述引用追踪器的使用模式。

This option controls the ‘opcit’ tracker which is required by the `\ifopcit` test from § 4.6.2. This feature is similar to the ‘ibidem’ tracker, except that it tracks citations on a per-author/editor basis, i. e., `\ifopcit` will yield `true` if the cited item is the same as the last one by this author/editor. The possible choices are:

- |                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>true</code>      | Enable the tracker in global mode.   |
| <code>false</code>     | Disable the tracker.   |
| <code>context</code>   | Enable the tracker in context-sensitive mode. In this mode, citations in footnotes and in the body text are tracked separately.                          |
| <code>strict</code>    | Enable the tracker in strict mode. In this mode, potentially ambiguous references are suppressed. See <code>ibidtracker=strict</code> for details.       |
| <code>constrict</code> | This mode combines the features of <code>context</code> and <code>strict</code> . See the explanation of <code>ibidtracker=constrict</code> for details. |

Note that this tracker is disabled in all floats, see § 4.11.5.

`loccittracker=true, false, context, strict, constrict` default: false

引用位置追踪器。

This option controls the ‘loccit’ tracker which is required by the `\ifloccit` test from § 4.6.2. This feature is similar to the ‘opcit’ tracker except that it also checks whether the `⟨postnote⟩` arguments match, i. e., `\ifloccit` will yield `true` if the citation refers to the same page cited before. The possible choices are:

- |                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>true</code>      | Enable the tracker in global mode.   |
| <code>false</code>     | Disable the tracker.   |
| <code>context</code>   | Enable the tracker in context-sensitive mode. In this mode, citations in footnotes and in the body text are tracked separately.  |
| <code>strict</code>    | Enable the tracker in strict mode. In this mode, potentially ambiguous references are suppressed. See <code>ibidtracker=strict</code> for details. In addition to that, this mode also checks if the <code>⟨postnote⟩</code> argument is numerical (based on <code>\ifnumerals</code> from § 4.6.2).       |
| <code>constrict</code> | This mode combines the features of <code>context</code> and <code>strict</code> . See the explanation of <code>ibidtracker=constrict</code> for details. In addition to that, this mode also checks if the <code>⟨postnote⟩</code> argument is numerical (based on <code>\ifnumerals</code> from § 4.6.2). |

Note that this tracker is disabled in all floats, see § 4.11.5.

`idemtracker=true, false, context, strict, constrict` default: false

同前追踪器。

This option controls the ‘idem’ tracker which is required by the `\ifciteidem` test from § 4.6.2. The possible choices are:

- |                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| <code>true</code>      | Enable the tracker in global mode.   |
| <code>false</code>     | Disable the tracker.   |
| <code>context</code>   | Enable the tracker in context-sensitive mode. In this mode, citations in footnotes and in the body text are tracked separately.  |
| <code>strict</code>    | This is an alias for <code>true</code> , provided only for consistency with the other trackers. Since ‘idem’ replacements do not get ambiguous in the same way as ‘ibidem’ or ‘op. cit.’, the <code>strict</code> tracking mode does not apply to them.                |
| <code>constrict</code> | This mode is similar to <code>context</code> with one additional condition: a reference in a footnote will only be considered as unambiguous if the current citation and the previous citation are given in the same footnote or in immediately consecutive footnotes. |

Note that this tracker is disabled in all floats, see § 4.11.5.

`parenttracker=true, false` default: true

圆括号追踪器。

This option controls the parenthesis tracker which keeps track of nested parentheses and brackets. This information is used by `\parenttext` and `\brackettext` from § 3.7.5, `\mkbibparens` and `\mkbibbrackets` from § 4.10.4 and `\bibopenparen`, `\bibcloseparen`, `\bibopenbracket`, `\bibclosebracket` (also § 4.10.4).

`maxparens=<integer>` default: 3

括号嵌套的最大层级。

The maximum permitted nesting level of parentheses and brackets. If parentheses and brackets are nested deeper than this value, Biblatex will issue errors.

`firstinits=true, false` default: false

启用名字由首字母表示。

When enabled, all first and middle names will be rendered as initials. The option will affect the `\iffirstinits` test from § 4.6.2.

`sortfirstinits=true, false` default: false

姓名排序时，利用首字母进行。

When enabled, sorting names will only use their initials. This is separate from `firstinits` in case users want to show only inits but sort on full names, for example. Biber only

`terseinits=true, false` default: false

控制 biblatex 生成的首字母的格式。biber 后端可以重定义一些宏来控制格式，详见 § 3.12.4。

This option controls the format of initials generated by Biblatex. If enabled, initials are rendered using a terse format without dots and spaces. For example, the initials of Donald Ervin Knuth would be rendered as ‘D. E.’ by default, and as ‘DE’ if this option is enabled. The option will affect the `\ifterseinits` test from § 4.6.2. With Biber, the option works by redefining some macros which control the format of initials. See § 3.12.4 for details. Biber only

`labelalpha=true, false` default: false

是否提供特殊的域，详见 § 4.2.4。

Whether or not to provide the special fields `labelalpha` and `extraalpha`, see § 4.2.4 for details. With Biber, this option is also settable on a per-type basis. See also `maxalphanames` and `minalphanames`. Table 5 summarises the various `extra*` disambiguation counters and what they track. Biber only

`maxalphanames=<integer>` default: 3 Biber only

Similar to the `maxnames` option but customizes the format of the `labelalpha` field.

`minalphanames=<integer>` default: 1 Biber only

Similar to the `minnames` option but customizes the format of the `labelalpha` field.

`labelnumber=true, false` default: false

是否提供特殊域 `labelnumber`。Whether or not to provide the special field `labelnumber`, see § 4.2.4 for details. This option is also settable on a per-type basis.

`labeltitle=true, false` default: false Biber only

是否提供特殊域 `extratitle`。Whether or not to provide the special field `extratitle`, see § 4.2.4 for details. Note that the special field `labeltitle` is always provided and this option controls rather whether `labeltitle` is used to generate `extratitle` information. This option is also settable on a per-type basis. Table 5 summarises the various `extra*` disambiguation counters and what they track.

`labeltitleyear=true, false` default: false Biber only

Whether or not to provide the special field `extratitleyear`, see § 4.2.4 for details. Note that the special field `labeltitle` is always provided and this option controls rather whether `labeltitle` is used to generate `extratitleyear` information. This option is also settable on a per-type basis. Table 5 summarises the various `extra*` disambiguation counters and what they track.

`labeldate=true, false` default: false

Whether or not to provide the special fields `labelyear`, `labelmonth`, `labelday` and `extrayear`, see § 4.2.4 for details. With Biber, this option is also settable on a per-type basis. Table 5 summarises the various extra\* disambiguation counters and what they track. Biber only

`singletitle=true, false` default: false

Whether or not to provide the data required by the `\ifsingletitle` test, see § 4.6.2 for details. With Biber, this option is also settable on a per-type basis. Biber only

`uniquename=true, false, init, full, allinit, allfull, mininit, minfull` default: false Biber only

是否更新`uniquename`计数器。

Whether or not to update the `uniquename` counter, see § 4.6.2 for details. This feature will disambiguate individual names in the `labelname` list. This option is also settable on a per-type basis. The possible choices are:

- |                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| <code>true</code>    | An alias for <code>full</code> .  |
| <code>false</code>   | Disable this feature.   |
| <code>init</code>    | Disambiguate names using initials only.   |
| <code>full</code>    | Disambiguate names using initials or full names, as required.   |
| <code>allinit</code> | Similar to <code>init</code> but disambiguates all names in the <code>labelname</code> list, beyond <code>maxnames/minnames/unique</code> list. |
| <code>allfull</code> | Similar to <code>full</code> but disambiguates all names in the <code>labelname</code> list, beyond <code>maxnames/minnames/unique</code> list. |
| <code>mininit</code> | A variant of <code>init</code> which only disambiguates names in lists with identical last names.   |
| <code>minfull</code> | A variant of <code>full</code> which only disambiguates names in lists with identical last names.   |

Note that the `uniquename` option will also affect `unique` list, the `\ifsingletitle` test, and the `extrayear` field. See § 4.11.4 for further details and practical examples.

`unique` list=true, false, minyear default: false Biber only

是否更新`unique` list计数器。

Whether or not to update the `unique` list counter, see § 4.6.2 for details. This feature will disambiguate the `labelname` list if it has become ambiguous after `maxnames/minnames` truncation. Essentially, it overrides `maxnames/minnames` on a per-field basis. This option is also settable on a per-type basis. The possible choices are:

- |                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>true</code>  | Disambiguate the <code>labelname</code> list. |
| <code>false</code> | Disable this feature.                         |

Option	Enabled field	Enabled counter	Counter tracks
labelalpha	labelalpha	extraalpha	label
labeldate	labelyear	extrayear	labelname+labelyear
labeltitle	–	extratitle	labelname+labeltitle
labeltitleyear	–	extratitleyear	labeltitle+labelyear

**Table 5: Disambiguation counters**

**minyear** Disambiguate the `labelname` list only if the truncated list is identical to another one with the same `labelyear`. This mode of operation is useful for author-year styles and requires `labeldate=true`.

Note that the `uniquelist` option will also affect the `\ifsingletitle` test and the `extrayear` field. See § 4.11.4 for further details and practical examples.

### 3.1.3 条目选项 Entry Options

Entry options are package options which determine how bibliography data entries are handled. They may be set at various scopes defined below.

条目选项是控制参考文献数据条目处理的包选项。

**3.1.3.1 Preamble/Type/Entry Options** The following options are settable on a per-type basis or on a per-entry in the options field. In addition to that, they may also be used in the optional argument to `\usepackage` as well as in the configuration file and the document preamble. This is useful if you want to change the default behaviour globally.

下面的选项是可以根据条目和类型重设的。而且也可以在 `\usepackage` 命令中作为选项使用。如果需要改变默认的全局行为会非常有用。

**useauthor**=true, false default: true

是否在标签中使用 `author` 或者在排序中考虑。

Whether the `author` is used in labels and considered during sorting. This may be useful if an entry includes an `author` field but is usually not cited by `author` for some reason. Setting `useauthor=false` does not mean that the `author` is ignored completely. It means that the `author` is not used in labels and ignored during sorting. The entry will then be alphabetized by `editor` or `title`. With the standard styles, the `author` is printed after the title in this case. See also § 3.5. With Biber, this option is also settable on a per-type and per-entry basis. Biber only

**useeditor**=true, false default: true

是否用 `editor` 代替缺失的 `author`。

Whether the `editor` replaces a missing `author` in labels and during sorting. This may be useful if an entry includes an `editor` field but is usually not cited by `editor`. Setting

`useeditor=false` does not mean that the editor is ignored completely. It means that the editor does not replace a missing author in labels and during sorting. The entry will then be alphabetized by title. With the standard styles, the editor is printed after the title in this case. See also § 3.5. With Biber, this option is also settable on a per-type and per-entry basis.

Biber only

`usetranslator=true, false`

default: false

Whether the translator replaces a missing author/editor in labels and during sorting. Setting `usetranslator=true` does not mean that the translator overrides the author/editor. It means that the translator is considered as a fallback if the author/editor is missing or if `useauthor` and `useeditor` are set to false. In other words, in order to cite a book by translator rather than by author, you need to set the following options: With Biber, this option is also settable on a per-type and per-entry basis.

Biber only

```
@Book{...,
  options    = {useauthor=false,usetranslator=true},
  author     = {...},
  translator = {...},
  ...
}
```

With the standard styles, the translator is printed after the title by default. See also § 3.5.

`use<name>=true, false`

default: true

As per `useauthor`, `useeditor` and `usetranslator`, all name lists defined in the data model have an option controlling their behaviour in sorting and labelling automatically defined. Global, per-type and per-entry options called ‘`use<name>`’ are automatically created.

`useprefix=true, false`

default: false

Whether the name prefix (von, van, of, da, de, della, etc.) is considered when printing the last name in citations. This also affects the sorting and formatting of the bibliography as well as the generation of certain types of labels. If this option is enabled, BibLaTeX always precedes the last name with the prefix. For example, Ludwig van Beethoven would be cited as “Beethoven” and alphabetized as “Beethoven, Ludwig van” by default. If this option is enabled, he is cited as “van Beethoven” and alphabetized as “Van Beethoven, Ludwig” instead. With Biber, this option is also settable on a per-type basis.

Biber only

`indexing=true, false, cite, bib`

The indexing option is also settable per-type or per-entry basis. See § 3.1.2.1 for details.

**3.1.3.2 Type/Entry Options** The following options are settable on a per-type basis or on a per-entry in the options field. They are not available globally.

`skipbib=true, false` default: false

If this option is enabled, the entry is excluded from the bibliography but it may still be cited. With Biber, this option is also settable on a per-type basis.

Biber only

`skiplos=true, false` default: false

BibTeX only

If this option is enabled, the entry is excluded from the list of shorthands. It is still included in the bibliography and it may also be cited by shorthand. This option is deprecated when using Biber as the backend. Use `skipbiblist` instead.

`skipbiblist=true, false` default: false

Biber only

This is the same as the `skiplos` option when using the BibTeX backend. It is renamed for Biber to be consistent with the more generalised bibliography list functionality See § 3.6.4. If this option is enabled, the entry is excluded from the list of shorthands. It is still included in the bibliography and it may also be cited by shorthand. This option is also settable on a per-type basis.

`skiplab=true, false` default: false

If this option is enabled, Biblatex will not assign any labels to the entry. It is not required for normal operation. Use it with care. If enabled, Biblatex can not guarantee unique citations for the respective entry and citations styles which require labels may fail to create valid citations for the entry. With Biber, this option is also settable on a per-type basis.

Biber only

`dataonly=true, false` default: false

Setting this option is equivalent to `uniquename=false`, `uniquelist=false`, `skipbib`, `skiplos/skipbiblist`, and `skiplab`. It is not required for normal operation. Use it with care. With Biber, this option is also settable on a per-type basis.

Biber only

**3.1.3.3 Entry Only Options** The following options are settable only on a per-entry in the options field. They are not available globally or per-type.

`labelnamefield=<fieldname>`

Specifies the field to consider first when looking for a `labelname` candidate. It is essentially prepended to the search list created by `\DeclareLabelname` for just this entry.

`labeltitlefield=<fieldname>`

Specifies the field to consider first when looking for a `labeltitle` candidate. It is essentially prepended to the search list created by `\DeclareLabeltitle` for just this entry.



### 3.1.4 遗留选项 Legacy Options

下面的遗留选项可以在`\documentclass`中全局使用或者在`\usepackage`中作为可选参数。

`openbib` 这一选项用于兼容标准的 LaTeX 文档类。`openbib`类似于 `block=par`。

Deprecated

## 3.2 全局定制 Global Customization

除了写新的标注和参考文献样式，还有多种方式来定制本宏包提供的样式。定制可以在导言区中进行，也可以在配置文件中进行以便长期使用。配置文件也用来初始化与默认值不同的包选项。

### 3.2.1 配置文件 Configuration File

如果提供该文件，则包将加载该配置文件`biblatex.cfg`。该文件在包末尾读入，紧跟在标注和参考文献样式后面。

### 3.2.2 设置包选项 Setting Package Options

§ 3.1.1节的加载用包选项必须在`\usepackage`的可选参数中给出。§ 3.1.2给出的包选项也需要在导言区给出。这些选项与如下命令一起使用：

```
\ExecuteBibliographyOptions[⟨entrytype, ...⟩]{⟨key=value, ...⟩}
```

This command may also be used in the configuration file to modify the default setting of a package option. Certain options are also settable on a per-type basis. In this case, the optional `⟨entrytype⟩` argument specifies the entry type. The `⟨entrytype⟩` argument may be a comma-separated list of values.

## 3.3 标准样式 Standard Styles

This section provides a short description of all bibliography and citation styles which ship with the Biblatex package. If you want to write your own styles, see § 4.

### 3.3.1 标注样式 Citation Styles

The citation styles which come with this package implement several common citation schemes. All standard styles cater for the shorthand field and support hyperlinks as well as indexing.

`numeric` This style implements a numeric citation scheme similar to the standard bibliographic facilities of LaTeX. It should be employed in conjunction with a numeric bibliography style which prints the corresponding labels in the bibliography. It is intended for in-text citations. The style will set the following package options at load time: `autocite=inline`, `labelnumber=true`. This style also provides an additional preamble option called `subentry` which affects the handling of entry sets. If this option is disabled, citations referring to a member of a set will point to the entire set. If it is enabled, the

style supports citations like “[5c]” which point to a subentry in a set (the third one in this example). See the style example for details.

- numeric-comp** A compact variant of the numeric style which prints a list of more than two consecutive numbers as a range. This style is similar to the cite package and the sort&compress option of the natbib package in numerical mode. For example, instead of “[8, 3, 1, 7, 2]” this style would print “[1–3, 7, 8]”. It is intended for in-text citations. The style will set the following package options at load time: autocite=inline, sortcites=true, labelnumber=true. It also provides the subentry option.
- numeric-verb** A verbose variant of the numeric style. The difference affects the handling of a list of citations and is only apparent when multiple entry keys are passed to a single citation command. For example, instead of “[2, 5, 6]” this style would print “[2]; [5]; [6]”. It is intended for in-text citations. The style will set the following package options at load time: autocite=inline, labelnumber=true. It also provides the subentry option.
- alphabetic** This style implements an alphabetic citation scheme similar to the alpha.bst style of traditional BibTeX. The alphabetic labels resemble a compact author-year style to some extent, but the way they are employed is similar to a numeric citation scheme. For example, instead of “Jones 1995” this style would use the label “[Jon95]”. “Jones and Williams 1986” would be rendered as “[JW86]”. This style should be employed in conjunction with an alphabetic bibliography style which prints the corresponding labels in the bibliography. It is intended for in-text citations. The style will set the following package options at load time: autocite=inline, labelalpha=true.
- alphabetic-verb** A verbose variant of the alphabetic style. The difference affects the handling of a list of citations and is only apparent when multiple entry keys are passed to a single citation command. For example, instead of “[Doe92; Doe95; Jon98]” this style would print “[Doe92]; [Doe95]; [Jon98]”. It is intended for in-text citations. The style will set the following package options at load time: autocite=inline, labelalpha=true.
- authoryear** This style implements an author-year citation scheme. If the bibliography contains two or more works by the same author which were all published in the same year, a letter is appended to the year. For example, this style would print citations such as “Doe 1995a; Doe 1995b; Jones 1998”. This style should be employed in conjunction with an author-year bibliography style which prints the corresponding labels in the bibliography. It is primarily intended for in-text citations, but it could also be used with citations given in footnotes. The style will set the following package options at load time: autocite=inline, labeldate=true, uniquename=full, uniquelist=true.
- authoryear-comp** A compact variant of the authoryear style which prints the author only once if subsequent references passed to a single citation command share the same author. If they share the same year as well, the year is also printed only once. For example, instead of “Doe 1995b; Doe 1992; Jones 1998; Doe 1995a” this style would print “Doe 1992, 1995a,b; Jones 1998”. It is primarily intended for in-text citations, but it could also be

used with citations given in footnotes. The style will set the following package options at load time: `autocite=inline`, `sortcites=true`, `labeldate=true`, `uniquename=full`, `uniquelist=true`.

- authoryear-ibid** A variant of the `authoryear` style which replaces repeated citations by the abbreviation *ibidem* unless the citation is the first one on the current page or double-page spread, or the *ibidem* would be ambiguous in the sense of the package option `ibidtracker=constrict`. The style will set the following package options at load time: `autocite=inline`, `labeldate=true`, `uniquename=full`, `uniquelist=true`, `ibidtracker=constrict`, `pagetracker=true`. This style also provides an additional preamble option called `ibidpage`. See the style example for details.
- authoryear-icomp** A style combining `authoryear-comp` and `authoryear-ibid`. The style will set the following package options at load time: `autocite=inline`, `labeldate=true`, `uniquename=full`, `uniquelist=true`, `ibidtracker=constrict`, `pagetracker=true`, `sortcites=true`. This style also provides an additional preamble option called `ibidpage`. See the style example for details.
- authortitle** This style implements a simple author-title citation scheme. It will make use of the `shorttitle` field, if available. It is intended for citations given in footnotes. The style will set the following package options at load time: `autocite=footnote`, `uniquename=full`, `uniquelist=true`.
- authortitle-comp** A compact variant of the `authortitle` style which prints the author only once if subsequent references passed to a single citation command share the same author. For example, instead of “Doe, *First title*; Doe, *Second title*” this style would print “Doe, *First title, Second title*”. It is intended for citations given in footnotes. The style will set the following package options at load time: `autocite=footnote`, `sortcites=true`, `uniquename=full`, `uniquelist=true`.
- authortitle-ibid** A variant of the `authortitle` style which replaces repeated citations by the abbreviation *ibidem* unless the citation is the first one on the current page or double-page spread, or the *ibidem* would be ambiguous in the sense of the package option `ibidtracker=constrict`. It is intended for citations given in footnotes. The style will set the following package options at load time: `autocite=footnote`, `uniquename=full`, `uniquelist=true`, `ibidtracker=constrict`, `pagetracker=true`. This style also provides an additional preamble option called `ibidpage`. See the style example for details.
- authortitle-icomp** A style combining the features of `authortitle-comp` and `authortitle-ibid`. The style will set the following package options at load time: `autocite=footnote`, `uniquename=full`, `uniquelist=true`, `ibidtracker=constrict`, `pagetracker=true`, `sortcites=true`. This style also provides an additional preamble option called `ibidpage`. See the style example for details.
- authortitle-terse** A terse variant of the `authortitle` style which only prints the title if the bibliography contains more than one work by the respective author/editor. This style will make

use of the `shorttitle` field, if available. It is suitable for in-text citations as well as citations given in footnotes. The style will set the following package options at load time: `autocite=inline`, `singletitle=true`, `uniquename=full`, `uniquelist=true`.

**authortitle-tcomp** A style combining the features of `authortitle-comp` and `authortitle-terse`. This style will make use of the `shorttitle` field, if available. It is suitable for in-text citations as well as citations given in footnotes. The style will set the following package options at load time: `autocite=inline`, `sortcites=true`, `singletitle=true`, `uniquename=full`, `uniquelist=true`.

**authortitle-ticomp** A style combining the features of `authortitle-icomp` and `authortitle-terse`. In other words: a variant of the `authortitle-tcomp` style with an *ibidem* feature. This style is suitable for in-text citations as well as citations given in footnotes. It will set the following package options at load time: `autocite=inline`, `ibidtracker=constrict`, `pagetracker=true`, `sortcites=true`, `singletitle=true`, `uniquename=full`, `uniquelist=true`. This style also provides an additional preamble option called `ibidpage`. See the style example for details.

**verbose** A verbose citation style which prints a full citation similar to a bibliography entry when an entry is cited for the first time, and a short citation afterwards. If available, the `shorttitle` field is used in all short citations. If the `shorthand` field is defined, the shorthand is introduced on the first citation and used as the short citation thereafter. This style may be used without a list of references and shorthands since all bibliographic data is provided on the first citation. It is intended for citations given in footnotes. The style will set the following package options at load time: `autocite=footnote`, `citracker=context`. This style also provides an additional preamble option called `citepages`. See the style example for details.

**verbose-ibid** A variant of the `verbose` style which replaces repeated citations by the abbreviation *ibidem* unless the citation is the first one on the current page or double-page spread, or the *ibidem* would be ambiguous in the sense of `ibidtracker=strict`. This style is intended for citations given in footnotes. The style will set the following package options at load time: `autocite=footnote`, `citracker=context`, `ibidtracker=constrict`, `pagetracker=true`. This style also provides additional preamble options called `ibidpage` and `citepages`. See the style example for details.

**verbose-note** This style is similar to the `verbose` style in that it prints a full citation similar to a bibliography entry when an entry is cited for the first time, and a short citation afterwards. In contrast to the `verbose` style, the short citation is a pointer to the footnote with the full citation. If the bibliography contains more than one work by the respective author/editor, the pointer also includes the title. If available, the `shorttitle` field is used in all short citations. If the `shorthand` field is defined, it is handled as with the `verbose` style. This style may be used without a list of references and shorthands since all bibliographic data is provided on the first citation. It is exclusively intended for citations given in footnotes. The style will set the following package options at

load time: autocite=footnote, citetracker=context, singletitle=true. This style also provides additional preamble options called pageref and citepages. See the style example for details.

**verbose-inote** A variant of the verbose-note style which replaces repeated citations by the abbreviation *ibidem* unless the citation is the first one on the current page or double-page spread, or the *ibidem* would be ambiguous in the sense of ibidtracker=strict. This style is exclusively intended for citations given in footnotes. It will set the following package options at load time: autocite=footnote, citetracker=context, ibidtracker=constrict, singletitle=true, pagetracker=true. This style also provides additional preamble options called ibidpage, pageref, and citepages. See the style example for details.

**verbose-trad1** This style implements a traditional citation scheme. It is similar to the verbose style in that it prints a full citation similar to a bibliography entry when an item is cited for the first time, and a short citation afterwards. Apart from that, it uses the scholarly abbreviations *ibidem*, *idem*, *op. cit.*, and *loc. cit.* to replace recurrent authors, titles, and page numbers in repeated citations in a special way. If the shorthand field is defined, the shorthand is introduced on the first citation and used as the short citation thereafter. This style may be used without a list of references and shorthands since all bibliographic data is provided on the first citation. It is intended for citations given in footnotes. The style will set the following package options at load time: autocite=footnote, citetracker=context, ibidtracker=constrict, idemtracker=constrict, opcittracker=context, loccittracker=context. This style also provides additional preamble options called ibidpage, strict, and citepages. See the style example for details.

**verbose-trad2** Another traditional citation scheme. It is also similar to the verbose style but uses scholarly abbreviations like *ibidem* and *idem* in repeated citations. In contrast to the verbose-trad1 style, the logic of the *op. cit.* abbreviations is different in this style and *loc. cit.* is not used at all. It is in fact more similar to verbose-ibid and verbose-inote than to verbose-trad1. The style will set the following package options at load time: autocite=footnote, citetracker=context, ibidtracker=constrict, idemtracker=constrict. This style also provides additional preamble options called ibidpage, strict, and citepages. See the style example for details.

**verbose-trad3** Yet another traditional citation scheme. It is similar to the verbose-trad2 style but uses the scholarly abbreviations *ibidem* and *op. cit.* in a slightly different way. The style will set the following package options at load time: autocite=footnote, citetracker=context, ibidtracker=constrict, loccittracker=constrict. This style also provides additional preamble options called strict and citepages. See the style example for details.

**reading** A citation style which goes with the bibliography style by the same name. It simply loads the authortitle style.

The following citation styles are special purpose styles. They are not intended for the final version of a document:

- draft** A draft style which uses the entry keys in citations. The style will set the following package options at load time: `autocite=plain`.
- debug** This style prints the entry key rather than some kind of label. It is intended for debugging only and will set the following package options at load time: `autocite=plain`.

### 3.3.2 参考文献样式 Bibliography Styles

All bibliography styles which come with this package use the same basic format for the individual bibliography entries. They only differ in the kind of label printed in the bibliography and the overall formatting of the list of references. There is a matching bibliography style for every citation style. Note that some bibliography styles are not mentioned below because they simply load a more generic style. For example, the bibliography style `authortitle-comp` will load the `authortitle` style.

- numeric** This style prints a numeric label similar to the standard bibliographic facilities of LaTeX. It is intended for use in conjunction with a numeric citation style. Note that the `shorthand` field overrides the default label. The style will set the following package options at load time: `labelnumber=true`. This style also provides an additional preamble option called `subentry` which affects the formatting of entry sets. If this option is enabled, all members of a set are marked with a letter which may be used in citations referring to a set member rather than the entire set. See the style example for details.
- alphabetic** This style prints an alphabetic label similar to the `alpha.bst` style of traditional BibTeX. It is intended for use in conjunction with an alphabetic citation style. Note that the `shorthand` field overrides the default label. The style will set the following package options at load time: `labelalpha=true`, `sorting=anyt`.
- authoryear** This style differs from the other styles in that the publication date is not printed towards the end of the entry but rather after the author/editor. It is intended for use in conjunction with an author-year citation style. Recurring author and editor names are replaced by a dash unless the entry is the first one on the current page or double-page spread. This style provides an additional preamble option called `dashed` which controls this feature. It also provided a preamble option called `mergedate`. See the style example for details. The style will set the following package options at load time: `labeldate=true`, `sorting=nyt`, `pagetracker=true`, `mergedate=true`.
- authortitle** This style does not print any label at all. It is intended for use in conjunction with an author-title citation style. Recurring author and editor names are replaced by a dash unless the entry is the first one on the current page or double-page spread. This style also provides an additional preamble option called `dashed` which controls this feature. See the style example for details. The style will set the following package options at load time: `pagetracker=true`.

- verbose** This style is similar to the `authortitle` style. It also provides an additional preamble option called `dashed`. See the style example for details. The style will set the following package options at load time: `pagetracker=true`.
- reading** This special bibliography style is designed for personal reading lists, annotated bibliographies, and similar applications. It optionally includes the fields `annotation`, `abstract`, `library`, and `file` in the bibliography. If desired, it also adds various kinds of short headers to the bibliography. This style also provides the additional preamble options `entryhead`, `entrykey`, `annotation`, `abstract`, `library`, and `file` which control whether or not the corresponding items are printed in the bibliography. See the style example for details. See also § 3.11.8. The style will set the following package options at load time: `loadfiles=true`, `entryhead=true`, `entrykey=true`, `annotation=true`, `abstract=true`, `library=true`, `file=true`.

The following bibliography styles are special purpose styles. They are not intended for the final version of a document:

- draft** This draft style includes the entry keys in the bibliography. The bibliography will be sorted by entry key. The style will set the following package options at load time: `sorting=debug`.
- debug** This style prints all bibliographic data in tabular format. It is intended for debugging only and will set the following package options at load time: `sorting=debug`.

### 3.4 相关条目 Related Entries

Almost all bibliography styles require authors to specify certain types of relationship between entries such as “Reprint of”, “Reprinted in” etc. It is impossible to provide data fields to cover all of these relationships and so Biblatex provides a general mechanism for this using the entry fields `related`, `relatedtype` and `relatedstring`. A related entry does not need to be cited and does not appear in the bibliography itself (unless of course it is also cited itself independently) as a clone is taken of the related entry to be used as a data source. The `relatedtype` field should specify a localization string which will be printed before the information from the related entries is printed, for example “Orig. Pub. as”. The `relatedstring` field can be used to override the string determined via `relatedtype`. Some examples:

```
@Book{key1,
  ...
  related      = {key2},
  relatedtype = {reprintof},
  ...
}

@Book{key2,
```

```

...
}

```

Here we specify that entry key1 is a reprint of entry key2. In the bibliography driver for Book entries, when `\usebibmacro{related}` is called for entry key1:

- If the localization string “reprintof” is defined, it is printed in the `relatedstring:reprintof` format. If this formatting directive is undefined, the string is printed in the `relatedstring:default` format.
- If the `related:reprintof` macro is defined, it is used to format the information contained in entry key2, otherwise the `related:default` macro is used
- If the `related:reprintof` format is defined, it is used to format both the localization string and data. If this format is not defined, then the `related` format is used instead.

It is also supported to have cascading and/or circular relations:

```

@Book{key1,
...
related      = {key2},
relatedtype = {reprintof},
...
}

@Book{key2,
...
related      = {key3},
relatedtype = {translationof},
...
}

@Book{key3,
...
related      = {key2},
relatedtype = {translatedas},
...
}

```

Multiple relations to the same entry are also possible:

```

@MVBook{key1,
...
related      = {key2,key3},

```



```

relatedtype = {multivolume},
...
}

@Book{key2,
...
}

@Book{key3,
...
}

```

Note the the order of the keys in lists of multiple related entries is important. The data from multiple related entries is printed in the order of the keys listed in this field. See § 4.5.1 for a more details on the mechanisms behind this feature. You can turn this feature off using the package option `related` from § 3.1.2.1.

You can use the `relatedoptions` to set options on the related entry data clone. This is useful if you need to override the `dataonly` option which is set by default on all related entry clones. For example, if you will expose some of the names in the related clone in your document, you may want to have them disambiguated from names in other entries but normally this won't happen as related clones have the per-entry `dataonly` option set and this in turn sets `uniquename=false` and `uniqueelist=false`. In such a case, you can set `relatedoptions` to just `skiplab`, `skipbib`, `skiplos/skipbiblist`.

### 3.5 排序选项 **Sorting Options**

This package supports various sorting schemes for the bibliography. The sorting scheme is selected with the `sorting` package option from § 3.1.2.1. Apart from the regular data fields there are also some special fields which may be used to optimize the sorting of the bibliography. 附录 C.1 和 C.2 give an outline of the alphabetic sorting schemes supported by Biblatex. Chronological sorting schemes are listed in 附录 C.3. A few explanations concerning these schemes are in order.

The first item considered in the sorting process is always the `presort` field of the entry. If this field is undefined, Biblatex will use the default value `'mm'` as a `presort` string. The next item considered is the `sortkey` field. If this field is defined, it serves as the master sort key. Apart from the `presort` field, no further data is considered in this case. If the `sortkey` field is undefined, sorting continues with the name. The package will try using the `sortname`, `author`, `editor`, and `translator` fields, in this order. Which fields are considered also depends on the setting of the `use<name>` options. If all such options are disabled, the `sortname` field is ignored as well. Note that all name fields are responsive to `maxnames` and `minnames`. If no name field is available, either because all of them are undefined or because all `use<name>` options are disabled, Biblatex will fall back to the `sorttitle` and `title` fields as a last resort. The remaining items are,

in various order: the `sortyear` field, if defined, or the first four digits of the `year` field otherwise; the `sorttitle` field, if defined, or the `title` field otherwise; the `volume` field, which is padded to four digits with leading zeros, or the string `0000` otherwise. Note that the sorting schemes shown in 附录 C.2 include an additional item: `labelalpha` is the label used by ‘alphabetic’ bibliography styles. Strictly speaking, the string used for sorting is `labelalpha + extraalpha`. The sorting schemes in 附录 C.2 are intended to be used in conjunction with alphabetic styles only.

The chronological sorting schemes presented in 附录 C.3 also make use of the `presort` and `sortkey` fields, if defined. The next item considered is the `sortyear` or the `year` field, depending on availability. The `ynt` scheme extracts the first four Arabic figures from the field. If both fields are undefined, the string `9999` is used as a fallback value. This means that all entries without a year will be moved to the end of the list. The `ydnt` scheme is similar in concept but sorts the year in descending order. As with the `ynt` scheme, the string `9999` is used as a fallback value. The remaining items are similar to the alphabetic sorting schemes discussed above. Note that the `ydnt` sorting scheme will only sort the date in descending order. All other items are sorted in ascending order as usual.

Using special fields such as `sortkey`, `sortname`, or `sorttitle` is usually not required. The Biblatex package is quite capable of working out the desired sorting order by using the data found in the regular fields of an entry. You will only need them if you want to manually modify the sorting order of the bibliography or if any data required for sorting is missing. Please refer to the field descriptions in § 2.2.3 for details on possible uses of the special fields. Also note that using Biber instead of legacy BibTeX is strongly recommended.

## 3.6 参考文献命令 Bibliography Commands

### 3.6.1 文献数据源 Resources

`\addbibresource[⟨options⟩]{⟨resource⟩}`

Adds a `⟨resource⟩`, such as a `.bib` file, to the default resource list. This command is only available in the preamble. It replaces the `\bibliography` legacy command. Note that files must be specified with their full name, including the extension. Do not omit the `.bib` extension from the filename. Also note that the `⟨resource⟩` is a single resource. Invoke `\addbibresource` multiple times to add more resources, for example:

```
\addbibresource{bibfile1.bib}
\addbibresource{bibfile2.bib}
\addbibresource[location=remote]{http://www.citeulike.org/bibtex/group
  ↪ /9517}
\addbibresource[location=remote,label=lan]{ftp://192.168.1.57/~user/file.
  ↪ bib}
```

Since the  $\langle resource \rangle$  string is read in a verbatim-like mode, it may contain arbitrary characters. The only restriction is that any curly braces must be balanced. The following  $\langle options \rangle$  are available:

`label= $\langle identifier \rangle$`

Assigns a label to a resource. The  $\langle identifier \rangle$  may be used in place of the full resource name in the optional argument of `refsection` (see § 3.6.5).

`location= $\langle location \rangle$`  default: local

The location of the resource. The  $\langle location \rangle$  may be either `local` for local resources or `remote` for URLs. Remote resources require Biber. The protocols `HTTP` and `FTP` are supported. The remote URL must be a fully qualified path to a bib file or a URL which returns a bib file.

`type= $\langle type \rangle$`  default: file

The type of resource. Currently, the only supported type is `file`.

`datatype= $\langle datatype \rangle$`  default: bibtex

The data type (format) of the resource. The following formats are currently supported:

`bibtex` BibTeX format.

`ris` Research Information Systems (RIS) format.<sup>28</sup> Note that an ID tag is required in all RIS records. The ID value corresponds to the entry key. Support for this format is experimental. Biber only

`zoterordfxml` Zotero RDF/XML format. Support for this format is experimental. Refer to the Biber manual for details. Biber only

`endnotexml` EndNote XML format. Support for this format is experimental. Refer to the Biber manual for details. Biber only

`\addglobalbib[ $\langle options \rangle$ ]{ $\langle resource \rangle$ }`

This command differs from `\addbibresource` in that the  $\langle resource \rangle$  is added to the global resource list. The difference between default resources and global resources is only relevant if there are reference sections in the document and the optional argument of `refsection` (§ 3.6.5) is used to specify alternative resources which replace the default resource list. Any global resources are added to all reference sections.

`\addsectionbib[ $\langle options \rangle$ ]{ $\langle resource \rangle$ }`

This command differs from `\addbibresource` in that the resource  $\langle options \rangle$  are registered but the  $\langle resource \rangle$  not added to any resource list. This is only required for resources which 1) are given exclusively in the optional argument of `refsection` (§ 3.6.5) and 2) require options different from the default settings. In this case, `\addsectionbib` is employed to qualify the  $\langle resource \rangle$  prior to using it by setting the appropriate  $\langle options \rangle$  in the preamble. The `label` option may be useful to assign a short name to the resource.

<sup>28</sup>[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/RIS\\_\(file\\_format\)](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/RIS_(file_format))

The legacy command for adding bibliographic resources, supported for backwards compatibility. Like `\addbibresource`, this command is only available in the preamble and adds resources to the default resource list. Its argument is a comma-separated list of bib files. The `.bib` extension may be omitted from the filename. Invoking this command multiple times to add more files is permissible. This command is deprecated. Please consider using `\addbibresource` instead.

### 3.6.2 参考文献表 The Bibliography

`\printbibliography[<key=value, ...>]`

This command prints the bibliography. It takes one optional argument, which is a list of options given in `<key>=<value>` notation. The following options are available:

`env=<name>` default: bibliography/shorthands

The ‘high-level’ layout of the bibliography and the list of shorthands is controlled by environments defined with `\defbibenvironment`. This option selects an environment. The `<name>` corresponds to the identifier used when defining the environment with `\defbibenvironment`. By default, the `\printbibliography` command uses the identifier `bibliography`; `\printbiblist` uses `shorthands`. See also §§ 3.6.4 和 3.6.8.

`heading=<name>` default: bibliography/shorthands

The bibliography and the list of shorthands typically have a chapter or section heading. This option selects the heading `<name>`, as defined with `\defbibheading`. By default, the `\printbibliography` command uses the heading `bibliography`; `\printbiblist` uses `shorthands`. See also §§ 3.6.4 和 3.6.8.

`title=<text>`

This option overrides the default title provided by the heading selected with the `heading` option, if supported by the heading definition. See § 3.6.8 for details.

`prenote=<name>`

The prenote is an arbitrary piece of text to be printed after the heading but before the list of references. This option selects the prenote `<name>`, as defined with `\defbibnote`. By default, no prenote is printed. The note is printed in the standard text font. It is not affected by `\bibsetup` and `\bibfont` but it may contain its own font declarations. See § 3.6.9 for details.

`postnote=<name>`

The postnote is an arbitrary piece of text to be printed after the list of references. This option selects the postnote `<name>`, as defined with `\defbibnote`. By default, no postnote is printed. The note is printed in the standard text font. It is not affected by

`\bibsetup` and `\bibfont` but it may contain its own font declarations. See § 3.6.9 for details.

`section=<integer>` default: current section

Print only entries cited in reference section `<integer>`. The reference sections are numbered starting at 1. All citations given outside a `refsection` environment are assigned to section 0. See § 3.6.5 for details and § 3.11.3 for usage examples.

`segment=<integer>` default: 0

Print only entries cited in reference segment `<integer>`. The reference segments are numbered starting at 1. All citations given outside a `refsegment` environment are assigned to segment 0. See § 3.6.6 for details and § 3.11.3 for usage examples. Remember that segments within a section are numbered local to the section so the segment you request will be the *n*th segment in the requested (or currently active enclosing) section.

`type=<entrytype>`

Print only entries whose entry type is `<entrytype>`.

`nottype=<entrytype>`

Print only entries whose entry type is not `<entrytype>`. This option may be used multiple times.

`subtype=<subtype>`

Print only entries whose `entrysubtype` is defined and `<subtype>`.

`notsubtype=<subtype>`

Print only entries whose `entrysubtype` is undefined or not `<subtype>`. This option may be used multiple times.

`keyword=<keyword>`

Print only entries whose `keywords` field includes `<keyword>`. This option may be used multiple times.

`notkeyword=<keyword>`

Print only entries whose `keywords` field does not include `<keyword>`. This option may be used multiple times.

`category=<category>`

Print only entries assigned to category `<category>`. This option may be used multiple times.

`notcategory=⟨category⟩`

Print only entries not assigned to category  $\langle category \rangle$ . This option may be used multiple times.

`filter=⟨name⟩`

Filter the entries with filter  $\langle name \rangle$ , as defined with `\defbibfilter`. See § 3.6.10 for details.

`check=⟨name⟩`

Filter the entries with check  $\langle name \rangle$ , as defined with `\defbibcheck`. See § 3.6.10 for details.

`prefixnumbers=⟨string⟩`

This option applies to numerical citation/bibliography styles only and requires that the `defernumbers` option from § 3.1.2.1 be enabled globally. Setting this option will implicitly enable `resetnumbers` for the current bibliography. The option assigns the  $\langle string \rangle$  as a prefix to all entries in the respective bibliography. For example, if the  $\langle string \rangle$  is A, the numerical labels printed will be [A1], [A2], [A3], etc. This is useful for subdivided numerical bibliographies where each subbibliography uses a different prefix. The  $\langle string \rangle$  is available to styles in the `prefixnumber` field of all affected entries. See § 4.2.4.2 for details.

`resetnumbers=⟨true,false,number⟩`

This option applies to numerical citation/bibliography styles only and requires that the `defernumbers` option from § 3.1.2.1 be enabled globally. If enabled, it will reset the numerical labels assigned to the entries in the respective bibliography, i.e., the numbering will restart at 1. You can also pass a number to this option, for example: `resetnumbers=10` to reset numbering to the specified number to aid numbering continuity across documents. Use this option with care as Biblatex can not guarantee unique labels globally if they are reset manually.

`omitnumbers=true, false`

This option applies to numerical citation/bibliography styles only and requires that the `defernumbers` option from § 3.1.2.1 be enabled globally. If enabled, Biblatex will not assign a numerical label to the entries in the respective bibliography. This is useful when mixing a numerical subbibliography with one or more subbibliographies using a different scheme (e.g., author-title or author-year).

`\bibbysection[⟨key=value, ...⟩]`

This command automatically loops over all reference sections. This is equivalent to giving one `\printbibliography` command for every section but has the additional benefit of automatically skipping sections without references. Note that `\bibbysection` starts

looking for references in section 1. It will ignore references given outside of `refsection` environments since they are assigned to section 0. See § 3.11.3 for usage examples. The options are a subset of those supported by `\printbibliography`. Valid options are `env`, `heading`, `prenote`, `postnote`. The current bibliography context sorting scheme is used for all sections (see § 3.6.11).

`\bibbysegment` [*<key=value, ...>*]

This command automatically loops over all reference segments. This is equivalent to giving one `\printbibliography` command for every segment in the current `refsection` but has the additional benefit of automatically skipping segments without references. Note that `\bibbysegment` starts looking for references in segment 1. It will ignore references given outside of `refsegment` environments since they are assigned to segment 0. See § 3.11.3 for usage examples. The options are a subset of those supported by `\printbibliography`. Valid options are `env`, `heading`, `prenote`, `postnote`. The current bibliography context sorting scheme is used for all segments (see § 3.6.11).

`\bibbycategory` [*<key=value, ...>*]

This command loops over all bibliography categories. This is equivalent to giving one `\printbibliography` command for every category but has the additional benefit of automatically skipping empty categories. The categories are processed in the order in which they were declared. See § 3.11.3 for usage examples. The options are a subset of those supported by `\printbibliography`. Valid options are `env`, `prenote`, `postnote`, `section`. Note that `heading` is not available with this command. The name of the current category is automatically used as the heading name. This is equivalent to passing `heading=<category>` to `\printbibliography` and implies that there must be a matching heading definition for every category. The current bibliography context sorting scheme is used for all categories (see § 3.6.11).

`\printbibheading` [*<key=value, ...>*]

This command prints a bibliography heading defined with `\defbibheading`. It takes one optional argument, which is a list of options given in *<key>=<value>* notation. The options are a small subset of those supported by `\printbibliography`. Valid options are `heading` and `title`. By default, this command uses the heading `bibliography`. See § 3.6.8 for details. Also see §§ 3.11.3 和 3.11.4 for usage examples.

To print a bibliography with a different sorting scheme than the global sorting scheme, use the bibliography context switching commands from § 3.6.11.

### 3.6.3 缩略表 The List of Shorthands

This section applies only to BibTeX. When using Biber, the list of shorthands is just a special case of a bibliography list. See § 3.6.4.<sup>29</sup> BibTeX only

---

<sup>29</sup>本节需要重点关注一下，之前没有搞清楚

If any entry includes a shorthand field, biblatex automatically builds a list of shorthands which may be printed in addition to the regular bibliography. The following command prints the list of shorthands.

`\printshorthands[⟨key=value, ...⟩]`

This command prints the list of shorthands. It takes one optional argument, which is a list of options given in  $\langle key \rangle = \langle value \rangle$  notation. Valid options are all options supported by `\printbibliography` (§ 3.6.2) except `prefixnumbers`, `resetnumbers`, and `omitnumbers`. If there are any `refsection` environments in the document, the list of shorthands will be local to these environments; see § 3.6.5 for details. By default, this command uses the heading shorthands. See § 3.6.8 for details.

The sorting option differs from `\printbibliography` in that if omitted, the default is to sort by shorthand.

### 3.6.4 各类参考文献表 Bibliography Lists

This section applies only to Biber. It is a generalisation of the shorthands facility available in earlier versions and with BibTeX. When using BibTeX as the backend, please refer to section § 3.6.3. Biber only

Biblatex can, in addition to printing normal bibliographies, also print arbitrary lists of information derived from the bibliography data such as a list of shorthand abbreviations for particular entries or a list of abbreviations of journal titles.

A bibliography list differs from a normal bibliography in that the same bibliography driver is used to print all entries rather than a specific driver being used for each entry depending on the entry type.

`\printbiblist[⟨key=value, ...⟩]{⟨<biblistname>⟩}`

This command prints a bibliography list. It takes an optional argument, which is a list of options given in  $\langle key \rangle = \langle value \rangle$  notation. Valid options are all options supported by `\printbibliography` (§ 3.6.2) except `prefixnumbers`, `resetnumbers`, and `omitnumbers`. If there are any `refsection` environments in the document, the bibliography list will be local to these environments; see § 3.6.5 for details. By default, this command uses the heading `biblist`. See § 3.6.8 for details.

The  $\langle biblistname \rangle$  is a mandatory argument which names the bibliography list. This name is used to identify:

- The default bibliography driver used to print the list entries
- A default filter declared with `\DeclareBiblistFilter` (see § 4.5.7) used to filter the entries returned from Biber
- A default check declared with `\defbibcheck` (see § 3.6.10) used to post-process the list entries
- The default bib environment to use



- The default sorting scheme name to use

In terms of sorting the list, the default is to sort use the sorting scheme named after the bibliography list (if it exists) and only then to fall back to the current context sorting scheme is this is not defined (see § 3.6.11).

The most common bibliography list is a list of shorthand abbreviations for certain entries and so this has a convenience alias `\printshorthands[...]` for backwards compatibility which is defined as:

```
\printbiblist[...]{shorthand}
```

Biblatex provides automatic support for data source fields in the default data model marked as ‘Label fields’ (See § 2.2.2). Such fields automatically have defined for them:

- A default bib environment (See § 3.6.8)
- A bibliography list filter (See § 4.5.7)
- Some supporting formats and lengths (See § 4.10.5 and § 4.10.4)

Therefore only a minimal setup is required to print bibliography lists with such fields. For example, to print a list of journal title abbreviations, you can minimally put this in your preamble:

```
\DeclareBibliographyDriver{shortjournal}{%
  \printfield{journaltitle}}
```

Then you can put this in your document where you want to print the list:

```
\printbiblist[title={Journal Shorthands}]{shortjournal}
```

Since `shortjournal` is defined in the default data model as a ‘Label field’, this example:

- Uses the automatically created ‘shortjournal’ bib environment
- Uses the automatically created ‘shortjournal’ bibliography list filter to return only entries with a `shortjournal` field in the `.bbl`
- Uses the defined ‘shortjournal’ bibliography driver to print the entries
- Uses the default ‘biblist’ heading but overrides the title with ‘Journal Shorthands’
- Uses the current bibliography context sorting scheme no scheme exists with the name `shortjournal`

Often, you will want to sort on the label field of the list and since a sorting scheme is automatically picked up if it is named after the list, in this case you could simply do:

```
\DeclareSortingScheme{shortjournal}{
  \sort{
    \field{shortjournal}
  }
}
```

Naturally all defaults can be overridden by options to `\printbiblist` and definitions of the environments, filters etc. and in this way arbitrary types of bibliography lists can be printed containing a variety of information from the bibliography data.

Bibliography lists are often used to print lists of various kinds of shorthands and this can result in duplicate entries if more than one bibliography entry has the same shorthand. For example, several journal articles in the same journal would result in duplicate entries in a list of journal shorthands. You can use the fact that such lists automatically pick up a `\bibcheck` with the same name as the list to define a check to remove duplicates. If you are defining a list to print all of the journal shorthands using the `shortjournal` field, you could define a `\bibcheck` like this:

```
\defbibcheck{shortjournal}{%
  \iffieldundef{shortjournal}{\skipentry}{%
    \iffieldundef{journal}{\skipentry}{%
      \ifcsdef{\strfield{shortjournal}=\strfield{journal}}
        {\skipentry}
        {\savefieldcs{journal}{\strfield{shortjournal}=\strfield{journal}
          ↪ }}}}}}
```

### 3.6.5 参考文献分节 Bibliography Sections

The `refsection` environment is used in the document body to mark a reference section. This environment is useful if you want separate, independent bibliographies and bibliography lists in each chapter, section, or any other part of a document. Within a reference section, all cited works are assigned labels which are local to the environment. Technically, reference sections are completely independent from document divisions such as `\chapter` and `\section` even though they will most likely be used per chapter or section. See the `refsection` package option in § 3.1.2.1 for a way to automate this. Also see § 3.11.3 for usage examples.

```
\begin{refsection}[\langle resource, ... \rangle]
```

```
\end{refsection}
```

The optional argument is a comma-separated list of resources specific to the reference section. If the argument is omitted, the reference section will use the default resource list, as specified with `\addbibresource` in the preamble. If the argument is provided, it replaces the default resource list. Global resources specified with `\addglobalbib` are always considered. `refsection` environments may not be nested, but you may use `refsegment` environments within a `refsection` to subdivide it into segments. Use the `section` option of `\printbibliography` to select a section when printing the bibliography, and the corresponding option of `\printbiblist` when printing bibliography lists. Bibliography sections are numbered starting at 1. The number of the current section

is also written to the transcript file. All citations given outside a `refsection` environment are assigned to section 0. If `\printbibliography` is used within a `refsection`, it will automatically select the current section. The `section` option is not required in this case. This also applies to `\printbiblist`.

`\newrefsection`[*<resource, ...>*]

This command is similar to the `refsection` environment except that it is a stand-alone command rather than an environment. It automatically ends the previous reference section (if any) and immediately starts a new one. Note that the reference section started by the last `\newrefsection` command in the document will extend to the very end of the document. Use `\endrefsection` if you want to terminate it earlier.

### 3.6.6 参考文献分部 Bibliography Segments

The `refsegment` environment is used in the document body to mark a reference segment. This environment is useful if you want one global bibliography which is subdivided by chapter, section, or any other part of the document. Technically, reference segments are completely independent from document divisions such as `\chapter` and `\section` even though they will typically be used per chapter or section. See the `refsegment` package option in § 3.1.2.1 for a way to automate this. Also see § 3.11.3 for usage examples.

`\begin{refsegment}`

`\end{refsegment}`

The difference between a `refsection` and a `refsegment` environment is that the former creates labels which are local to the environment whereas the latter provides a target for the segment filter of `\printbibliography` without affecting the labels. They will be unique across the entire document. `refsegment` environments may not be nested, but you may use them in conjunction with `refsection` to subdivide a reference section into segments. In this case, the segments are local to the enclosing `refsection` environment. Use the `segment` option of `\printbibliography` to select a segment when printing the bibliography. Within a section, the reference segments are numbered starting at 1 and the number of the current segment will be written to the transcript file. All citations given outside a `refsegment` environment are assigned to segment 0. In contrast to the `refsection` environment, the current segment is not selected automatically if `\printbibliography` is used within a `refsegment` environment.

`\newrefsegment` This command is similar to the `refsegment` environment except that it is a stand-alone command rather than an environment. It automatically ends the previous reference segment (if any) and immediately starts a new one. Note that the reference segment started by the last `\newrefsegment` command will extend to the end of the document. Use `\endrefsegment` if you want to terminate it earlier.

### 3.6.7 参考文献分类 Bibliography Categories

Bibliography categories allow you to split the bibliography into multiple parts dedicated to different topics or different types of references, for example primary and secondary sources. See § 3.11.4 for usage examples.

`\DeclareBibliographyCategory{⟨category⟩}`

Declares a new *⟨category⟩*, to be used in conjunction with `\addtocategory` and the `category` and `notcategory` filters of `\printbibliography`. This command is used in the document preamble.

`\addtocategory{⟨category⟩}{⟨key⟩}`

Assigns a *⟨key⟩* to a *⟨category⟩*, to be used in conjunction with the `category` and `notcategory` filters of `\printbibliography`. This command may be used in the preamble and in the document body. The *⟨key⟩* may be a single entry key or a comma-separated list of keys. The assignment is global.

### 3.6.8 参考文献标题和环境 Bibliography Headings and Environments

`\defbibenvironment{⟨name⟩}{⟨begin code⟩}{⟨end code⟩}{⟨item code⟩}`

This command defines bibliography environments. The *⟨name⟩* is an identifier passed to the `env` option of `\printbibliography` and `\printbiblist` when selecting the environment. The *⟨begin code⟩* is LaTeX code to be executed at the beginning of the environment; the *⟨end code⟩* is executed at the end of the environment; the *⟨item code⟩* is code to be executed at the beginning of each entry in the bibliography or a bibliography list. Here is an example of a definition based on the standard LaTeX `list` environment:

```
\defbibenvironment{bibliography}
{
  \list{
    \setlength{\leftmargin}{\bibhang}%
    \setlength{\itemindent}{-\leftmargin}%
    \setlength{\itemsep}{\bibitemsep}%
    \setlength{\parsep}{\bibparsep}}
{\endlist}
{\item}
```

As seen in the above example, usage of `\defbibenvironment` is roughly similar to `\newenvironment` except that there is an additional mandatory argument for the *⟨item code⟩*.

`\defbibheading{⟨name⟩}[⟨title⟩]{⟨code⟩}`

This command defines bibliography headings. The *⟨name⟩* is an identifier to be passed to the `heading` option of `\printbibliography` or `\printbibheading` and `\printbiblist`.

when selecting the heading. The *code* should be LaTeX code generating a fully-fledged heading, including page headers and an entry in the table of contents, if desired. If `\printbibliography` or `\printbiblist` are invoked with a title option, the title will be passed to the heading definition as #1. If not, the default title specified by the optional *title* argument is passed as #1 instead. The *title* argument will typically be `\bibname`, `\refname`, or `\biblistname` (see § 4.9.2.1). This command is often needed after changes to document headers in the preamble. Here is an example of a simple heading definition:

```
\defbibheading{bibliography}[\bibname]{%
  \chapter*{#1}%
  \markboth{#1}{#1}}
```

The following headings, which are intended for use with `\printbibliography` and `\printbibheading`, are predefined:

### `bibliography`

This is the default heading used by `\printbibliography` if the heading option is not given. Its default definition depends on the document class. If the class provides a `\chapter` command, the heading is similar to the bibliography heading of the standard LaTeX book class, i.e., it uses `\chapter*` to create an unnumbered chapter heading which is not included in the table of contents. If there is no `\chapter` command, it is similar to the bibliography heading of the standard LaTeX article class, i.e., it uses `\section*` to create an unnumbered section heading which is not included in the table of contents. The string used in the heading also depends on the document class. With book-like classes the localization string `bibliography` is used, with other classes it is `references` (see § 4.9.2). See also §§ 3.12.1 和 3.12.2 for class-specific hints.

### `subbibliography`

Similar to `bibliography` but one sectioning level lower. This heading definition uses `\section*` instead of `\chapter*` with a book-like class and `\subsection*` instead of `\section*` otherwise.

### `bibintoc`

Similar to `bibliography` above but adds an entry to the table of contents.

### `subbibintoc`

Similar to `subbibliography` above but adds an entry to the table of contents.

### `bibnumbered`

Similar to `bibliography` above but uses `\chapter` or `\section` to create a numbered heading which is also added to the table of contents.

#### subbibnumbered

Similar to subbibliography above but uses \section or \subsection to create a numbered heading which is also added to the table of contents.

#### none

A blank heading definition. Use this to suppress the heading.

The following headings intended for use with \printbiblist are predefined:

#### biblist

This is the default heading used by \printbiblist if the heading option is not given. It is similar to bibliography above except that it uses the localization string shorthands instead of bibliography or references (see § 4.9.2). See also §§ 3.12.1 和 3.12.2 for class-specific hints.

#### biblistintoc

Similar to biblist above but adds an entry to the table of contents.

#### biblistnumbered

Similar to biblist above but uses \chapter or \section to create a numbered heading which is also added to the table of contents.

### 3.6.9 参考文献注释 Bibliography Notes

`\defbibnote{⟨name⟩}{⟨text⟩}`

Defines the bibliography note ⟨name⟩, to be used via the prenote and postnote options of \printbibliography and \printbiblist. The ⟨text⟩ may be any arbitrary piece of text, possibly spanning several paragraphs and containing font declarations. Also see § 3.12.6.

### 3.6.10 参考文献过滤和检查 Bibliography Filters and Checks

`\defbibfilter{⟨name⟩}{⟨expression⟩}`

Defines the custom bibliography filter ⟨name⟩, to be used via the filter option of \printbibliography. The ⟨expression⟩ is a complex test based on the logical operators and, or, not, the group separator (...), and the following atomic tests:

`segment=⟨integer⟩`

Matches all entries cited in reference segment ⟨integer⟩.

`type=⟨entrytype⟩`

Matches all entries whose entry type is ⟨entrytype⟩.

`subtype=<subtype>`

Matches all entries whose `entrysubtype` is `<subtype>`.

`keyword=<keyword>`

Matches all entries whose `keywords` field includes `<keyword>`. If the `<keyword>` contains spaces, it needs to be wrapped in braces.

`category=<category>`

Matches all entries assigned to `<category>` with `\addtocategory`.

Here is an example of a filter expression:

```
\defbibfilter{example}{%
  ( type=book or type=inbook )
  and keyword=abc
  and not keyword={x y z}
}
```

This filter will match all entries whose entry type is either `@book` or `@inbook` and whose `keywords` field includes the keyword ‘`abc`’ but not ‘`x y z`’. As seen in the above example, all elements are separated by whitespace (spaces, tabs, or line endings). There is no spacing around the equal sign. The logical operators are evaluated with the `\ifboolexpr` command from the `etoolbox` package. See the `etoolbox` manual for details about the syntax. The syntax of the `\ifthenelse` command from the `ifthen` package, which has been employed in older versions of Bibl<sub>at</sub>ex, is still supported. This is the same test using `ifthen`-like syntax:

```
\defbibfilter{example}{%
  \ ( \type{book} \or \type{inbook} \ )
  \and \keyword{abc}
  \and \not \keyword{x y z}
}
```

Note that custom filters are local to the reference section in which they are used. Use the `section filter` of `\printbibliography` to select a different section. This is not possible from within a custom filter.

`\defbibcheck{<name>}{<code>}`

Defines the custom bibliography filter `<name>`, to be used via the `check` option of `\printbibliography`. `\defbibcheck` is similar in concept to `\defbibfilter` but much more low-level. Rather than a high-level expression, the `<code>` is LaTeX code, much like the code used in driver definitions, which may perform arbitrary tests to decide whether or not a given entry is to be printed. The bibliographic data of the respective

entry is available when the `<code>` is executed. Issuing the command `\skipentry` in the `<code>` will cause the current entry to be skipped. For example, the following filter will only output entries with an abstract field:

```
\defbibcheck{abstract}{%
  \iffieldundef{abstract}{\skipentry}{}
  ...
\printbibliography[check=abstract]
```

The following check will exclude all entries published before the year 2000:

```
\defbibcheck{recent}{%
  \iffieldint{year}
  {\ifnumless{\thefield{year}}{2000}
    {\skipentry}
    {}}
  {\skipentry}}
```

See the author guide, in particular §§ 4.6.2 和 4.6.3, for further details.

### 3.6.11 参考文献表内容 Bibliography Contexts

References in a bibliography are cited and printed in a ‘context’. The context determines the data which is actually used for an entry. A context consists currently of the following information (the ‘context’ concept is designed for future extensibility):

- A specific sorting scheme

The data for an entry can vary depending on the context. This is most obvious in the case of the extra\* fields like `extrayear` which are generated by the backend according to the order of entries *after* sorting so that they come out in the expected ‘a, b, c’ order. This clearly shows that the *data* in an entry can be different between sorting schemes. If a document contains more than one bibliography list with different sorting schemes, it can happen then that the `.bbl` contains sorting lists with the same entry but containing different data (a different value for `extrayear`, for example). The purpose of bibliography contexts is to encapsulate things inside a context so that Biblatex can use the correct entry data. An example is printing a bibliography list with a different sorting order to the global sorting order:

```
\usepackage[sorting=nyt]{biblatex}
\cite{one}
\cite{two}
\printbibliography
\newrefcontext[sorting=yndt]
\cite{one}
```



```
\cite{two}
\printbibliography
```

Here, the second use of the citations, along with the `\printbibliography` command will use data from the context of the ‘yndt’ sorting scheme which may well be different from the data associated with the default ‘nyt’ scheme.

```
\begin{refcontext}[<key=value, ...>]
```

```
\end{refcontext}
```

Wraps a bibliography context environment. The options define the context attributes. All context attributes are optional and default to the global settings if absent. The current options are:

```
sorting=<name>
```

Specify a sorting scheme defined previously with `\DeclareSortingScheme`. This scheme is used to determine which data to retrieve and/or print for an entry in the commands inside the context.

The `refcontext` environment cannot be nested and Biblatex will generate an error if you try to do so.

```
\newrefcontext[<key=value, ...>]
```

This command is similar to the `refcontext` environment except that it is a stand-alone command rather than an environment. It automatically ends the previous context section (if any) and immediately starts a new one. Note that the context section started by the last `\newrefcontext` command in the document will extend to the very end of the document. Use `\endrefcontext` if you want to terminate it earlier.

At the beginning of the document, there is always a global context containing global settings for each of the context attributes.

### 3.6.12 动态条目集 Dynamic Entry Sets

In addition to the `@set` entry type, Biblatex also supports dynamic entry sets defined on a per-document/per-refsection basis. The following command, which may be used in the document preamble or the document body, defines the set `<key>`:

```
\defbibentryset{<key>}{<key1,key2,key3, ...>}
```

Biber only

The `<key>` is the entry key of the set, which is used like any other entry key when referring to the set. The `<key>` must be unique and it must not conflict with any other entry key. The second argument is a comma-separated list of the entry keys which make up the set. `\defbibentryset` implies the equivalent of a `\nocite` command, i. e., all sets which are declared are also added to the bibliography. When declaring the same set

more than once, only the first invocation of `\defbibentryset` will define the set. Subsequent definitions of the same  $\langle key \rangle$  are ignored and work like `\nocite{key}`. Dynamic entry sets defined in the document body are local to the enclosing refsection environment, if any. Otherwise, they are assigned to reference section 0. Those defined in the preamble are assigned to reference section 0. Note that dynamic entry sets require Biber. They will not work with any other backend. See § 3.11.5 for further details.

## 3.7 引用命令 Citation Commands

All citation commands generally take one mandatory and two optional arguments. The  $\langle prenote \rangle$  is text to be printed at the beginning of the citation. This is usually a notice such as ‘see’ or ‘compare’. The  $\langle postnote \rangle$  is text to be printed at the very end of the citation. This is usually a page number. If only one of these arguments is given, it is taken as a postnote. If you want to specify a prenote but no postnote, you need to leave the second optional argument empty, as in `\cite[see][]{key}`. The  $\langle key \rangle$  argument to all citation commands is mandatory. This is the entry key or a comma-separated list of keys corresponding to the entry keys in the bib file. In sum, all basic citations commands listed further down have the following syntax:

```
\command[ $\langle prenote \rangle$ ][ $\langle postnote \rangle$ ]{ $\langle keys \rangle$ } $\langle punctuation \rangle$ 
```

If the `autopunct` package option from § 3.1.2.1 is enabled, they will scan ahead for any  $\langle punctuation \rangle$  immediately following their last argument. This is useful to avoid spurious punctuation marks after citations. This feature is configured with `\DeclareAutoPunctuation`, see § 4.7.5 for details.

### 3.7.1 标准命令 Standard Commands

The following commands are defined by the citation style. Citation styles may provide any arbitrary number of specialized commands, but these are the standard commands typically provided by general-purpose styles.

```
\cite[ $\langle prenote \rangle$ ][ $\langle postnote \rangle$ ]{ $\langle key \rangle$ }
```

```
\Cite[ $\langle prenote \rangle$ ][ $\langle postnote \rangle$ ]{ $\langle key \rangle$ }
```

These are the bare citation commands. They print the citation without any additions such as parentheses. The numeric and alphabetic styles still wrap the label in square brackets since the reference may be ambiguous otherwise. `\Cite` is similar to `\cite` but capitalizes the name prefix of the first name in the citation if the `useprefix` option is enabled, provided that there is a name prefix and the citation style prints any name at all.

```
\parencite[ $\langle prenote \rangle$ ][ $\langle postnote \rangle$ ]{ $\langle key \rangle$ }
```

```
\Parencite[ $\langle prenote \rangle$ ][ $\langle postnote \rangle$ ]{ $\langle key \rangle$ }
```

These commands use a format similar to `\cite` but enclose the entire citation in parentheses. The numeric and alphabetic styles use square brackets instead. `\Parencite` is

similar to `\parencite` but capitalizes the name prefix of the first name in the citation if the `useprefix` option is enabled, provided that there is a name prefix and the citation style prints any name at all.

```
\footcite[⟨prenote⟩][⟨postnote⟩]{⟨key⟩}
```

```
\footcitetext[⟨prenote⟩][⟨postnote⟩]{⟨key⟩}
```

These commands use a format similar to `\cite` but put the entire citation in a footnote and add a period at the end. In the footnote, they automatically capitalize the name prefix of the first name if the `useprefix` option is enabled, provided that there is a name prefix and the citation style prints any name at all. `\footcitetext` differs from `\footcite` in that it uses `\footnotetext` instead of `\footnote`.

### 3.7.2 样式相关命令 Style-specific Commands

The following additional citation commands are only provided by some of the citation styles which ship with this package.

```
\textcite[⟨prenote⟩][⟨postnote⟩]{⟨key⟩}
```

```
\Textcite[⟨prenote⟩][⟨postnote⟩]{⟨key⟩}
```

These citation commands are provided by all styles that ship with this package. They are intended for use in the flow of text, replacing the subject of a sentence. They print the authors or editors followed by a citation label which is enclosed in parentheses. Depending on the citation style, the label may be a number, the year of publication, an abridged version of the title, or something else. The numeric and alphabetic styles use square brackets instead of parentheses. In the verbose styles, the label is provided in a footnote. Trailing punctuation is moved between the author or editor names and the footnote mark. `\Textcite` is similar to `\textcite` but capitalizes the name prefix of the first name in the citation if the `useprefix` option is enabled, provided that there is a name prefix.

```
\smartcite[⟨prenote⟩][⟨postnote⟩]{⟨key⟩}
```

```
\Smartcite[⟨prenote⟩][⟨postnote⟩]{⟨key⟩}
```

Like `\parencite` in a footnote and like `\footcite` in the body.

```
\cite*[⟨prenote⟩][⟨postnote⟩]{⟨key⟩}
```

This command is provided by all author-year and author-title styles. It is similar to the regular `\cite` command but merely prints the year or the title, respectively.

```
\parencite*[⟨prenote⟩][⟨postnote⟩]{⟨key⟩}
```

This command is provided by all author-year and author-title styles. It is similar to the regular `\parencite` command but merely prints the year or the title, respectively.

`\supercite{⟨key⟩}`

This command, which is only provided by the numeric styles, prints numeric citations as superscripts without brackets. It uses `\supercitedelim` instead of `\multicitedelim` as citation delimiter. Note that any *⟨prenote⟩* and *⟨postnote⟩* arguments are ignored. If they are given, `\supercite` will discard them and issue a warning message.

### 3.7.3 有限标注表 Qualified Citation Lists

This package supports a class of special citation commands called ‘multicite’ commands. The point of these commands is that their argument is a list of citations where each item forms a fully qualified citation with a pre- and/or postnote. This is particularly useful with parenthetical citations and citations given in footnotes. It is also possible to assign a pre- and/or postnote to the entire list. The multicite commands are built on top of backend commands like `\parencite` and `\footcite`. The citation style provides a multicite definition with `\DeclareMultiCiteCommand` (see § 4.3.1). The following example illustrates the syntax of multicite commands:

```
\parencites[35]{key1}[88--120]{key2}[23]{key3}
```

The format of the arguments is similar to that of the regular citation commands, except that only one citation command is given. If only one optional argument is given for an item in the list, it is taken as a postnote. If you want to specify a prenote but no postnote, you need to leave the second optional argument of the respective item empty:

```
\parencites[35]{key1}[chapter 2 in][]{key2}[23]{key3}
```

In addition to that, the entire citation list may also have a pre- and/or postnote. The syntax of these global notes differs from other optional arguments in that they are given in parentheses rather than the usual brackets:

```
\parencites(and chapter 3)[35]{key1}[78]{key2}[23]{key3}
\parencites(Compare)()[35]{key1}[78]{key2}[23]{key3}
\parencites(See)(and the introduction)[35]{key1}[78]{key2}[23]{key3}
```

Note that the multicite commands keep on scanning for arguments until they encounter a token that is not the start of an optional or mandatory argument. If a left brace or bracket follows a multicite command, you need to mask it by adding `\relax` or a control space (a backslash followed by a space) after the last valid argument. This will cause the scanner to stop.

```
\parencites[35]{key1}[78]{key2}\relax[...]
\parencites[35]{key1}[78]{key2}\_ {...}
```

By default, this package provides the following multicite commands which correspond to regular commands from §§ 3.7.1 和 3.7.2:

```
\cites(\multiprenote)(\multiupostnote)[\prenote][\postnote]{\key}\dots[\prenote][\postnote]{\key}
\Cites(\multiprenote)(\multiupostnote)[\prenote][\postnote]{\key}\dots[\prenote][\postnote]{\key}
```

The multicite version of \cite and \Cite, respectively.

```
\parencites(\multiprenote)(\multiupostnote)[\prenote][\postnote]{\key}\dots[\prenote][\postnote]{\key}
\Parencites(\multiprenote)(\multiupostnote)[\prenote][\postnote]{\key}\dots[\prenote][\postnote]{\key}
```

The multicite version of \parencite and \Parencite, respectively.

```
\footcites(\multiprenote)(\multiupostnote)[\prenote][\postnote]{\key}\dots[\prenote][\postnote]{\key}
\footcitetexts(\multiprenote)(\multiupostnote)[\prenote][\postnote]{\key}\dots[\prenote][\postnote]{\key}
```

The multicite version of \footcite and \footcitetext, respectively.

```
\smartcites(\multiprenote)(\multiupostnote)[\prenote][\postnote]{\key}\dots[\prenote][\postnote]{\key}
\Smartcites(\multiprenote)(\multiupostnote)[\prenote][\postnote]{\key}\dots[\prenote][\postnote]{\key}
```

The multicite version of \smartcite and \Smartcite, respectively.

```
\textcites(\multiprenote)(\multiupostnote)[\prenote][\postnote]{\key}\dots[\prenote][\postnote]{\key}
\Textcites(\multiprenote)(\multiupostnote)[\prenote][\postnote]{\key}\dots[\prenote][\postnote]{\key}
```

The multicite version of \textcite and \Textcite, respectively.

```
\supercites(\multiprenote)(\multiupostnote)[\prenote][\postnote]{\key}\dots[\prenote][\postnote]{\key}
```

The multicite version of \supercite. This command is only provided by the numeric styles.

### 3.7.4 与样式无关的命令 Style-independent Commands

Sometimes it is desirable to give the citations in the source file in a format that is not tied to a specific citation style and can be modified globally in the preamble. The format of the citations is easily changed by loading a different citation style. However, when using commands such as \parencite or \footcite, the way the citations are integrated with the text is still effectively hard-coded. The idea behind the \autocite command is to provide higher-level citation markup which makes global switching from inline citations to citations given in footnotes (or as superscripts) possible. The \autocite command is built on top of backend commands like \parencite and \footcite. The citation style provides an \autocite definition with \DeclareAutoCiteCommand (see § 4.3.1). This definition may be activated with the autocite package option from § 3.1.2.1. The citation style will usually initialize this package option to a value which is suitable for the style, see § 3.3.1 for details. Note that there are certain limits to high-level citation markup. For example, inline author-year citation schemes often integrate citations so tightly with the text that it is virtually impossible to automatically convert them to footnotes. The \autocite command is only applicable in cases in which you would normally use \parencite or \footcite (or \supercite, with a numeric style).

The citations should be given at the end of a sentence or a partial sentence, immediately preceding the terminal punctuation mark, and they should not be a part of the sentence in a grammatical sense (like `\textcite`, for example).

```
\autocite[⟨prenote⟩][⟨postnote⟩]{⟨key⟩}
\Autocite[⟨prenote⟩][⟨postnote⟩]{⟨key⟩}
```

In contrast to other citation commands, the `\autocite` command does not only scan ahead for punctuation marks following its last argument to avoid double punctuation marks, it actually moves them around if required. For example, with `autocite=footnote`, a trailing punctuation mark will be moved such that the footnote mark is printed after the punctuation. `\Autocite` is similar to `\autocite` but capitalizes the name prefix of the first name in the citation if the `useprefix` option is enabled, provided that there is a name prefix and the citation style prints any name at all.

```
\autocite*[⟨prenote⟩][⟨postnote⟩]{⟨key⟩}
\Autocite*[⟨prenote⟩][⟨postnote⟩]{⟨key⟩}
```

The starred variants of `\autocite` do not behave differently from the regular ones. The asterisk is simply passed on to the backend command. For example, if `\autocite` is configured to use `\parencite`, then `\autocite*` will execute `\parencite*`.

```
\autocites(⟨multiprenote⟩)(⟨multipostnote⟩)[⟨prenote⟩][⟨postnote⟩]{⟨key⟩}...[⟨prenote⟩][⟨postnote⟩]{⟨key⟩}
\Autocites(⟨multiprenote⟩)(⟨multipostnote⟩)[⟨prenote⟩][⟨postnote⟩]{⟨key⟩}...[⟨prenote⟩][⟨postnote⟩]{⟨key⟩}
```

This is the multicite version of `\autocite`. It also detects and moves punctuation if required. Note that there is no starred variant. `\Autocites` is similar to `\autocites` but capitalizes the name prefix of the first name in the citation if the `useprefix` option is enabled, provided that there is a name prefix and the citation style prints any name at all.

### 3.7.5 文本命令 Text Commands

The following commands are provided by the core of Biblatex. They are intended for use in the flow of text. Note that all text commands are excluded from citation tracking.

```
\citeauthor[⟨prenote⟩][⟨postnote⟩]{⟨key⟩}
\citeauthor*[⟨prenote⟩][⟨postnote⟩]{⟨key⟩}
\Citeauthor[⟨prenote⟩][⟨postnote⟩]{⟨key⟩}
\Citeauthor*[⟨prenote⟩][⟨postnote⟩]{⟨key⟩}
```

These commands print the authors. Strictly speaking, it prints the `labelname` list, which may be the author, the editor, or the translator. `\Citeauthor` is similar to `\citeauthor` but capitalizes the name prefix of the first name in the citation if the `useprefix` option is enabled, provided that there is a name prefix. The starred variants

effectively force maxcitenames to 1 for just this command on so only print the first name in the labelname list (potentially followed by the “et al” string if there are more names). This allows more natural textual flow when refering to a paper in the singular when otherwise \citeauthor would generate a (naturally plural) list of names.

```
\citetitle[⟨prenote⟩][⟨postnote⟩]{⟨key⟩}
\citetitle*[⟨prenote⟩][⟨postnote⟩]{⟨key⟩}
```

This command prints the title. It will use the abridged title in the shorttitle field, if available. Otherwise it falls back to the full title found in the title field. The starred variant always prints the full title.

```
\citeyear[⟨prenote⟩][⟨postnote⟩]{⟨key⟩}
\citeyear*[⟨prenote⟩][⟨postnote⟩]{⟨key⟩}
```

This command prints the year (year field or year component of date). The starred variant includes the extrayear information, if any.

```
\citedate[⟨prenote⟩][⟨postnote⟩]{⟨key⟩}
\citedate*[⟨prenote⟩][⟨postnote⟩]{⟨key⟩}
```

This command prints the full date (date or year). The starred variant includes the extrayear information, if any.

```
\citeurl[⟨prenote⟩][⟨postnote⟩]{⟨key⟩}
```

This command prints the url field.

```
\parentext{⟨text⟩}
```

This command wraps the ⟨text⟩ in context sensitive parentheses.

```
\brackettext{⟨text⟩}
```

This command wraps the ⟨text⟩ in context sensitive brackets.

### 3.7.6 特殊命令 Special Commands

The following special commands are also provided by the core of Biblatex.

```
\nocite{⟨key⟩}
\nocite{*}
```

This command is similar to the standard LaTeX \nocite command. It adds the ⟨key⟩ to the bibliography without printing a citation. If the ⟨key⟩ is an asterisk, all entries available in the bib file are added to the bibliography. Like all other citation commands, \nocite commands in the document body are local to the enclosing refsection environment, if any. In contrast to standard LaTeX, \nocite may also be used in the document preamble. In this case, the references are assigned to reference section 0.

`\fullcite[⟨prenote⟩][⟨postnote⟩]{⟨key⟩}`

This command uses the bibliography driver for the respective entry type to create a full citation similar to the bibliography entry. It is thus related to the bibliography style rather than the citation style.

`\footfullcite[⟨prenote⟩][⟨postnote⟩]{⟨key⟩}`

Similar to `\fullcite` but puts the entire citation in a footnote and adds a period at the end.

`\volcite[⟨prenote⟩]{⟨volume⟩}[⟨page⟩]{⟨key⟩}`

`\Volcite[⟨prenote⟩]{⟨volume⟩}[⟨page⟩]{⟨key⟩}`

These commands are similar to `\cite` and `\Cite` but intended for references to multi-volume works which are cited by volume and page number. Instead of the `⟨postnote⟩`, they take a mandatory `⟨volume⟩` and an optional `⟨page⟩` argument. Since they merely compose the postnote and pass it to the `\cite` command provided by the citation style as a `⟨postnote⟩` argument, these commands are style independent. The format of the volume portion is controlled by the field formatting directive `volcitevolume`, the format of the page/text portion is controlled by the field formatting directive `volcitepages` (§ 4.10.4). The delimiter printed between the volume portion and the page/text portion may be modified by redefining the macro `\volcitedelim` (§ 4.10.1).

`\volcites(⟨multiprenote⟩)(⟨multipostnote⟩)[⟨prenote⟩]{⟨volume⟩}[⟨page⟩]{⟨key⟩}`

`...[⟨prenote⟩]{⟨volume⟩}[⟨page⟩]{⟨key⟩}`

`\Volcites(⟨multiprenote⟩)(⟨multipostnote⟩)[⟨prenote⟩]{⟨volume⟩}[⟨page⟩]{⟨key⟩}`

`...[⟨prenote⟩]{⟨volume⟩}[⟨page⟩]{⟨key⟩}`

The multicite version of `\volcite` and `\Volcite`, respectively.

`\pvolcite[⟨prenote⟩]{⟨volume⟩}[⟨page⟩]{⟨key⟩}`

`\Pvolcite[⟨prenote⟩]{⟨volume⟩}[⟨page⟩]{⟨key⟩}`

Similar to `\volcite` but based on `\parencite`.

`\pvolcites(⟨multiprenote⟩)(⟨multipostnote⟩)[⟨prenote⟩]{⟨volume⟩}[⟨page⟩]{⟨key⟩}`

`...[⟨prenote⟩]{⟨volume⟩}[⟨page⟩]{⟨key⟩}`

`\Pvolcites(⟨multiprenote⟩)(⟨multipostnote⟩)[⟨prenote⟩]{⟨volume⟩}[⟨page⟩]{⟨key⟩}`

`...[⟨prenote⟩]{⟨volume⟩}[⟨page⟩]{⟨key⟩}`

The multicite version of `\pvolcite` and `\Pvolcite`, respectively.

`\fvolcite[⟨prenote⟩]{⟨volume⟩}[⟨page⟩]{⟨key⟩}`

`\ftvolcite[⟨prenote⟩]{⟨volume⟩}[⟨page⟩]{⟨key⟩}`

Similar to `\volcite` but based on `\footcite` and `\footcitetext`, respectively.



```

\fvollites(<multiprenote>)(<multiupostnote>)[<prenote>]{<volume>}[<page>]{<key>}
...[<prenote>]{<volume>}[<page>]{<key>}
\Fvollites(<multiprenote>)(<multiupostnote>)[<prenote>]{<volume>}[<page>]{<key>}
...[<prenote>]{<volume>}[<page>]{<key>}

```

The multicite version of \fvollite and \Fvollite, respectively.

```

\svollite[<prenote>]{<volume>}[<page>]{<key>}
\Svollite[<prenote>]{<volume>}[<page>]{<key>}

```

Similar to \vollite but based on \smartcite.

```

\svollites(<multiprenote>)(<multiupostnote>)[<prenote>]{<volume>}[<page>]{<key>}
...[<prenote>]{<volume>}[<page>]{<key>}
\Svollites(<multiprenote>)(<multiupostnote>)[<prenote>]{<volume>}[<page>]{<key>}
...[<prenote>]{<volume>}[<page>]{<key>}

```

The multicite version of \svollite and \Svollite, respectively.

```

\tvollite[<prenote>]{<volume>}[<page>]{<key>}
\Tvollite[<prenote>]{<volume>}[<page>]{<key>}

```

Similar to \vollite but based on \textcite.

```

\tvollites(<multiprenote>)(<multiupostnote>)[<prenote>]{<volume>}[<page>]{<key>}
...[<prenote>]{<volume>}[<page>]{<key>}
\Tvollites(<multiprenote>)(<multiupostnote>)[<prenote>]{<volume>}[<page>]{<key>}
...[<prenote>]{<volume>}[<page>]{<key>}

```

The multicite version of \tvollite and \Tvollite, respectively.

```

\avollite[<prenote>]{<volume>}[<page>]{<key>}
\Avollite[<prenote>]{<volume>}[<page>]{<key>}

```

Similar to \vollite but based on \autocite.

```

\avollites(<multiprenote>)(<multiupostnote>)[<prenote>]{<volume>}[<page>]{<key>}
...[<prenote>]{<volume>}[<page>]{<key>}
\Avollites(<multiprenote>)(<multiupostnote>)[<prenote>]{<volume>}[<page>]{<key>}
...[<prenote>]{<volume>}[<page>]{<key>}

```

The multicite version of \avollite and \Avollite, respectively.

```

\notecite[<prenote>][<postnote>]{<key>}
\Notecite[<prenote>][<postnote>]{<key>}

```

These commands print the <prenote> and <postnote> arguments but no citation. Instead, a \nocite command is issued for every <key>. This may be useful for authors who incorporate implicit citations in their writing, only giving information not mentioned before

in the running text, but who still want to take advantage of the automatic  $\langle postnote \rangle$  formatting and the implicit `\nocite` function. This is a generic, style-independent citation command. Special citation styles may provide smarter facilities for the same purpose. The capitalized version forces capitalization (note that this is only applicable if the note starts with a command which is sensitive to Biblatex's punctuation tracker).

`\pnotecite`[ $\langle prenote \rangle$ ][ $\langle postnote \rangle$ ]{ $\langle key \rangle$ }

`\Pnotecite`[ $\langle prenote \rangle$ ][ $\langle postnote \rangle$ ]{ $\langle key \rangle$ }

Similar to `\notecite` but the notes are printed in parentheses.

`\fnotecite`[ $\langle prenote \rangle$ ][ $\langle postnote \rangle$ ]{ $\langle key \rangle$ }

Similar to `\notecite` but the notes are printed in a footnote.

### 3.7.7 底层命令 Low-level Commands

The following commands are also provided by the core of Biblatex. They grant access to all lists and fields at a lower level.

`\citename`[ $\langle prenote \rangle$ ][ $\langle postnote \rangle$ ]{ $\langle key \rangle$ }[ $\langle format \rangle$ ]{ $\langle name list \rangle$ }

The  $\langle format \rangle$  is a formatting directive defined with `\DeclareNameFormat`. Formatting directives are discussed in § 4.4.2. If this optional argument is omitted, this command falls back to the format `citename`. The last argument is the name of a  $\langle name list \rangle$ , in the sense explained in § 2.2.

`\citelist`[ $\langle prenote \rangle$ ][ $\langle postnote \rangle$ ]{ $\langle key \rangle$ }[ $\langle format \rangle$ ]{ $\langle literal list \rangle$ }

The  $\langle format \rangle$  is a formatting directive defined with `\DeclareListFormat`. Formatting directives are discussed in § 4.4.2. If this optional argument is omitted, this command falls back to the format `citelist`. The last argument is the name of a  $\langle literal list \rangle$ , in the sense explained in § 2.2.

`\citefield`[ $\langle prenote \rangle$ ][ $\langle postnote \rangle$ ]{ $\langle key \rangle$ }[ $\langle format \rangle$ ]{ $\langle field \rangle$ }

The  $\langle format \rangle$  is a formatting directive defined with `\DeclareFieldFormat`. Formatting directives are discussed in § 4.4.2. If this optional argument is omitted, this command falls back to the format `citefield`. The last argument is the name of a  $\langle field \rangle$ , in the sense explained in § 2.2.

### 3.7.8 其它命令 Miscellaneous Commands

The commands in this section are little helpers related to citations.

`\citereset` This command resets the citation style. This may be useful if the style replaces repeated citations with abbreviations like *ibidem*, *idem*, *op. cit.*, etc. and you want to force a full citation at the beginning of a new chapter, section, or some other location. The command executes a style specific initialization hook defined with the

`\InitializeCitationStyle` command from § 4.3.1. It also resets the internal citation trackers of this package. The reset will affect the `\ifciteseen`, `\ifentryseen`, `\ifciteibid`, and `\ifciteidem` tests discussed in § 4.6.2. When used inside a refsection environment, the reset of the citation tracker is local to the current refsection environment. Also see the `citereset` package option in § 3.1.2.1.

`\citereset*` Similar to `\citereset` but only executes the style’s initialization hook, without resetting the internal citation trackers.

`\mancite` Use this command to mark manually inserted citations if you mix automatically generated and manual citations. This is particularly useful if the citation style replaces repeated citations by an abbreviation like *ibidem* which may get ambiguous or misleading otherwise. Always use `\mancite` in the same context as the manual citation, e. g., if the citation is given in a footnote, include `\mancite` in the footnote. The `\mancite` command executes a style specific reset hook defined with the `\OnManualCitation` command from § 4.3.1. It also resets the internal ‘ibidem’ and ‘idem’ trackers of this package. The reset will affect the `\ifciteibid` and `\ifciteidem` tests discussed in § 4.6.2.

`\pno` This command forces a single page prefix in the  $\langle postnote \rangle$  argument to a citation command. See § 3.12.3 for further details and usage instructions. Note that this command is only available locally in citations and the bibliography.

`\ppno` Similar to `\pno` but forces a range prefix. See § 3.12.3 for further details and usage instructions. Note that this command is only available locally in citations and the bibliography.

`\nopp` Similar to `\pno` but suppresses all prefixes. See § 3.12.3 for further details and usage instructions. Note that this command is only available locally in citations and the bibliography.

`\psq` In the  $\langle postnote \rangle$  argument to a citation command, this command indicates a range of two pages where only the starting page is given. See § 3.12.3 for further details and usage instructions. The suffix printed is the localization string *sequens*, see § 4.9.2. The spacing inserted between the suffix and the page number may be modified by redefining the macro `\sqspace`. The default is an unbreakable interword space. Note that this command is only available locally in citations and the bibliography.

`\psqq` Similar to `\psq` but indicates an open-ended page range. See § 3.12.3 for further details and usage instructions. The suffix printed is the localization string *sequentes*, see § 4.9.2. This command is only available locally in citations and the bibliography.

`\RN{ $\langle integer \rangle$ }`

This command prints an integer as an uppercase Roman numeral. The formatting applied to the numeral may be modified by redefining the macro `\RNfont`.

`\Rn{integer}`

Similar to `\RN` but prints a lowercase Roman numeral. The formatting applied to the numeral may be modified by redefining the macro `\Rnfont`.

### 3.7.9 与natbib兼容的命令 natbib Compatibility Commands

The `natbib` package option loads a `natbib` compatibility module. The module defines aliases for the citation commands provided by the `natbib` package. This includes aliases for the core citation commands `\citet` and `\citep` as well as the variants `\citealt` and `\citealp`. The starred variants of these commands, which print the full author list, are also supported. The `\cite` command, which is handled in a particular way by `natbib`, is not treated in a special way. The text commands (`\citeauthor`, `\citeyear`, etc.) are also supported, as are all commands which capitalize the name prefix (`\Citet`, `\Citep`, `\Citeauthor`, etc.). Aliasing with `\defcitealias`, `\citetalias`, and `\citepalias` is possible as well. Note that the compatibility commands will not emulate the citation format of the `natbib` package. They merely alias `natbib`'s commands to functionally equivalent facilities of the `Biblatex` package. The citation format depends on the main citation style. However, the compatibility style will adapt `\nameyear delim` to match the default style of the `natbib` package.

### 3.7.10 类似mcite给的标注命令

Biber only

The `mcite` package option loads a special citation module which provides `mcite/mciteplus`-like citation commands. Strictly speaking, what the module provides are wrappers for the commands of the main citation style. For example, the following command:

```
\mcite{key1,setA,*keyA1,*keyA2,*keyA3,key2,setB,*keyB1,*keyB2,*keyB3}
```

is essentially equivalent to this:

```
\defbibentryset{setA}{keyA1,keyA2,keyA3}%  
\defbibentryset{setB}{keyB1,keyB2,keyB3}%  
\cite{key1,setA,key2,setB}
```

The `\mcite` command will work with any style since the `\cite` backend command is controlled by the main citation style as usual. The `mcite` module provides wrappers for the standard commands in §§ 3.7.1 和 3.7.2. See 表 7 for an overview. Pre and postnotes as well as starred variants of all commands are also supported. The parameters will be passed to the backend command. For example:

```
\mcite*[pre][post]{setA,*keyA1,*keyA2,*keyA3}
```

will execute:

Standard Command	mcite-like Command
<code>\cite</code>	<code>\mcite</code>
<code>\Cite</code>	<code>\Mcite</code>
<code>\parencite</code>	<code>\mparencite</code>
<code>\Parencite</code>	<code>\Mparencite</code>
<code>\footcite</code>	<code>\mfootcite</code>
<code>\footcitetext</code>	<code>\mfootcitetext</code>
<code>\textcite</code>	<code>\mtextcite</code>
<code>\Textcite</code>	<code>\Mtextcite</code>
<code>\supercite</code>	<code>\msupercite</code>

**Table 6: mcite-like commands**

```
\defbibentryset{setA}{keyA1,keyA2,keyA3}%
\cite*[pre][post]{setA}
```

Note that the `mcite` module is not a compatibility module. It provides commands which are very similar but not identical in syntax and function to `mcite`'s commands. When migrating from `mcite/mciteplus` to `Biblatex`, legacy files must be updated. With `mcite`, the first member of the citation group is also the identifier of the group as a whole. Borrowing an example from the `mcite` manual, this group:

```
\cite{glashow,*salam,*weinberg}
```

consists of three entries and the entry key of the first one also serves as identifier of the entire group. In contrast to that, a `Biblatex` entry set is an entity in its own right. Therefore, it requires a unique entry key which is assigned to the set as it is defined:

```
\mcite{set1,*glashow,*salam,*weinberg}
```

Once defined, an entry set is handled like any regular entry in a `bib` file. When using one of the numeric styles which ship with `biblatex` and activating its `subentry` option, it is even possible to refer to set members. See 表 7 for some examples. Restating the original definition of the set is redundant, but permissible. In contrast to `mciteplus`, however, restating a part of the original definition is invalid. Use the entry key of the set instead.

### 3.8 本地化命令 Localization Commands

The `Biblatex` package provides translations for key terms such as ‘edition’ or ‘volume’ as well as definitions for language specific features such as the date format and ordinals. These definitions, which are loaded automatically, may be modified or extended in the document preamble or the configuration file with the commands introduced in this section.

Input	Output	Comment
<code>\mcite{set1,*glashow,*salam,*weinberg}</code>	[1]	Defining and citing the set
<code>\mcite{set1}</code>	[1]	Subsequent citation of the set
<code>\cite{set1}</code>	[1]	Regular <code>\cite</code> works as usual
<code>\mcite{set1,*glashow,*salam,*weinberg}</code>	[1]	Redundant, but permissible
<code>\mcite{glashow}</code>	[1a]	Citing a set member
<code>\cite{weinberg}</code>	[1c]	Regular <code>\cite</code> works as well

**Table 7: `mcite`-like syntax (sample output with `style=numeric` and `subentry option`)**

`\DefineBibliographyStrings{⟨language⟩}{⟨definitions⟩}`

This command is used to define localization strings. The `⟨language⟩` must be a language name known to the `babel/polyglossia` packages, i. e., one of the identifiers listed in 表 2 on page 30. The `⟨definitions⟩` are `⟨key⟩=⟨value⟩` pairs which assign an expression to an identifier:

```
\DefineBibliographyStrings{american}{%
  bibliography = {Bibliography},
  shorthands   = {Abbreviations},
  editor       = {editor},
  editors      = {editors},
}
```

A complete list of all keys supported by default is given in § 4.9.2. Note that all expressions should be capitalized as they usually are when used in the middle of a sentence. The Biblatex package will automatically capitalize the first word when required at the beginning of a sentence. Expressions intended for use in headings should be capitalized in a way that is suitable for titling. In contrast to `\DeclareBibliographyStrings`, `\DefineBibliographyStrings` overrides both the full and the abbreviated version of the string. See § 4.9.1 for further details.

`\DefineBibliographyExtras{⟨language⟩}{⟨code⟩}`

This command is used to adapt language specific features such as the date format and ordinals. The `⟨language⟩` must be a language name known to the `babel/polyglossia` packages. The `⟨code⟩`, which may be arbitrary LaTeX code, will usually consist of redefinitions of the formatting commands from § 3.9.2.

`\UndefineBibliographyExtras{⟨language⟩}{⟨code⟩}`

This command is used to restore the original definition of any commands modified with `\DefineBibliographyExtras`. If a redefined command is included in § 3.9.2, there is no need to restore its previous definition since these commands are adapted by all language modules anyway.

`\DefineHyphenationExceptions{⟨language⟩}{⟨text⟩}`

This is a LaTeX frontend to TeX's `\hyphenation` command which defines hyphenation exceptions. The `⟨language⟩` must be a language name known to the `babel/polyglossia` packages. The `⟨text⟩` is a whitespace-separated list of words. Hyphenation points are marked with a dash:

```
\DefineHyphenationExceptions{american}{%
  hy-phen-ation ex-cep-tion
}
```

`\NewBibliographyString{⟨key⟩}`

This command declares new localization strings, i. e., it initializes a new `⟨key⟩` to be used in the `⟨definitions⟩` of `\DefineBibliographyStrings`. The `⟨key⟩` argument may also be a comma-separated list of key names. The keys listed in § 4.9.2 are defined by default.

### 3.9 格式命令 Formatting Commands

The commands and facilities presented in this section may be used to adapt the format of citations and the bibliography.

#### 3.9.1 一般命令和钩子 Generic Commands and Hooks

The commands in this section may be redefined with `\renewcommand` in the document preamble. Note that all commands starting with `\mk...` take one argument. All of these commands are defined in `biblatex.def`.

- `\bibsetup` Arbitrary code to be executed at the beginning of the bibliography, intended for commands which affect the layout of the bibliography.
- `\bibfont` Arbitrary code setting the font used in the bibliography. This is very similar to `\bibsetup` but intended for switching fonts.
- `\citesetup` Arbitrary code to be executed at the beginning of each citation command.
- `\newblockpunct` The separator inserted between ‘blocks’ in the sense explained in § 4.7.1. The default definition is controlled by the package option `block` (see § 3.1.2.1).
- `\newunitpunct` The separator inserted between ‘units’ in the sense explained in § 4.7.1. This will usually be a period or a comma plus an interword space. The default definition is a period and a space.
- `\finentrypunct` The punctuation printed at the very end of every bibliography entry, usually a period. The default definition is a period.

<code>\entrysetpunct</code>	The punctuation printed between bibliography subentries of an entry set. The default definition is a semicolon and a space.	Biber only
<code>\bibnamedelima</code>	This delimiter controls the spacing between the elements which make up a name part. It is inserted automatically after the first name element if the element is less than three characters long and before the last element. The default definition is an interword space penalized by the value of the <code>highnamepenalty</code> counter (§ 3.9.3). Please refer to § 3.12.4 for further details.	Biber only
<code>\bibnamedelimb</code>	This delimiter is inserted between the elements which make up a name part where <code>\bibnamedelima</code> does not apply. The default definition is an interword space penalized by the value of the <code>lownamepenalty</code> counter (§ 3.9.3). Please refer to § 3.12.4 for further details.	Biber only
<code>\bibnamedelimc</code>	This delimiter controls the spacing between name parts. It is inserted between the name prefix and the last name if <code>useprefix=true</code> . The default definition is an interword space penalized by the value of the <code>highnamepenalty</code> counter (§ 3.9.3). Please refer to § 3.12.4 for further details.	
<code>\bibnamedelimd</code>	This delimiter is inserted between all name parts where <code>\bibnamedelimc</code> does not apply. The default definition is an interword space penalized by the value of the <code>lownamepenalty</code> counter (§ 3.9.3). Please refer to § 3.12.4 for further details.	
<code>\bibnamedelimi</code>	This delimiter replaces <code>\bibnamedelima/b</code> after initials. Note that this only applies to initials given as such in the <code>bib</code> file, not to the initials automatically generated by BibLaTeX which use their own set of delimiters.	Biber only
<code>\bibinitperiod</code>	The punctuation inserted after initials unless <code>\bibinithyphendelim</code> applies. The default definition is a period ( <code>\adddot</code> ). Please refer to § 3.12.4 for further details.	Biber only
<code>\bibinitdelim</code>	The spacing inserted between multiple initials unless <code>\bibinithyphendelim</code> applies. The default definition is an unbreakable interword space. Please refer to § 3.12.4 for further details.	Biber only
<code>\bibinithyphendelim</code>	The punctuation inserted between the initials of hyphenated name parts, replacing <code>\bibinitperiod</code> and <code>\bibinitdelim</code> . The default definition is a period followed by an unbreakable hyphen. Please refer to § 3.12.4 for further details.	Biber only
<code>\bibindexnamedelima</code>	Replaces <code>\bibnamedelima</code> in the index.	
<code>\bibindexnamedelimb</code>	Replaces <code>\bibnamedelimb</code> in the index.	
<code>\bibindexnamedelimc</code>	Replaces <code>\bibnamedelimc</code> in the index.	
<code>\bibindexnamedelimd</code>	Replaces <code>\bibnamedelimd</code> in the index.	
<code>\bibindexnamedelimi</code>	Replaces <code>\bibnamedelimi</code> in the index.	
<code>\bibindexinitperiod</code>	Replaces <code>\bibinitperiod</code> in the index.	



`\bibindexinitdelim` Replaces `\bibinitdelim` in the index.

`\bibindexinithyphendelim` Replaces `\bibinithyphendelim` in the index.

`\revsdnamepunct` The punctuation to be printed between the first and last name parts when a name is reversed. Here is an example showing a name with the default comma as `\revsdnamedelim`:

Jones, Edward
---------------

This command should be used with `\bibnamedelimd` as a reversed-name separator in formatting directives for name lists. Please refer to § 3.12.4 for further details.

`\bibnamedash` The dash to be used as a replacement for recurrent authors or editors in the bibliography. The default is an ‘em’ or an ‘en’ dash, depending on the indentation of the list of references.

`\labelnamepunct` The separator printed after the name used for alphabetizing in the bibliography (author or editor, if the author field is undefined). With the default styles, this separator replaces `\newunitpunct` at this location. The default definition is `\newunitpunct`, i. e., it is not handled differently from regular unit punctuation.

`\subtitlepunct` The separator printed between the fields `title` and `subtitle`, `booktitle` and `booksubtitle`, as well as `maintitle` and `mainsubtitle`. With the default styles, this separator replaces `\newunitpunct` at this location. The default definition is `\newunitpunct`, i. e., it is not handled differently from regular unit punctuation.

`\intitlepunct` The separator between the word “in” and the following title in entry types such as `@article`, `@inbook`, `@incollection`, etc. The default definition is a colon plus an interword space (e. g., “Article, in: *Journal*” or “Title, in: *Book*”). Note that this is the separator string, not only the punctuation mark. If you don’t want a colon after “in”, `\intitlepunct` should still insert a space.

`\bibpagespunct` The separator printed before the `pages` field. The default is a comma plus an interword space.

`\bibpagerefspunct` The separator printed before the `pageref` field. The default is an interword space.

`\multinamedelim` The delimiter printed between multiple items in a name list like `author` or `editor` if there are more than two names in the list. The default is a comma plus an interword space. See `\finalnamedelim` for an example.<sup>30</sup>

---

<sup>30</sup>Note that `\multinamedelim` is not used at all if there are only two names in the list. In this case, the default styles use the `\finalnamedelim`.

`\finalnamedelim` The delimiter printed instead of `\multinamedelim` before the final name in a name list. The default is the localized term ‘and’, separated by interword spaces. Here is an example:

Michel Goossens, Frank Mittelbach and Alexander Samarin Edward Jones and Joe Williams
--

The comma in the first example is the `\multinamedelim` whereas the string ‘and’ in both examples is the `\finalnamedelim`. See also `\finalandcomma` in § 3.9.2.

`\revsdnamedelim` An extra delimiter printed after the first name in a name list if the first name is reversed. The default is an empty string, i.e., no extra delimiter will be printed. Here is an example showing a name list with a comma as `\revsdnamedelim`:

Jones, Edward, and Joe Williams
---------------------------------

In this example, the comma after ‘Edward’ is the `\revsdnamedelim` whereas the string ‘and’ is the `\finalnamedelim`, printed in addition to the former.

`\andothersdelim` The delimiter printed before the localization string ‘andothers’ if a name list like author or editor is truncated. The default is an interword space.

`\multilistdelim` The delimiter printed between multiple items in a literal list like publisher or location if there are more than two items in the list. The default is a comma plus an interword space. See `\multinamedelim` for further explanation.

`\finallistdelim` The delimiter printed instead of `\multilistdelim` before the final item in a literal list. The default is the localized term ‘and’, separated by interword spaces. See `\finalnamedelim` for further explanation.

`\andmoredelim` The delimiter printed before the localization string ‘andmore’ if a literal list like publisher or location is truncated. The default is an interword space.

`\multicitedelim` The delimiter printed between citations if multiple entry keys are passed to a single citation command. The default is a semicolon plus an interword space.

`\supercitedelim` Similar to `\multicitedelim`, but used by the `\supercite` command only. The default is a comma.

`\compcitedelim` Similar to `\multicitedelim`, but used by certain citation styles when ‘compressing’ multiple citations. The default definition is a comma plus an interword space.

`\textcitedelim` Similar to `\multicitedelim`, but used by `\textcite` and related commands (§ 3.7.2). The default is a comma plus an interword space. The standard styles modify this provisional definition to ensure that the delimiter before the final citation is the localized term ‘and’, separated by interword spaces. See also `\finalandcomma` and `\finalandsemicolon` in § 3.9.2.

- `\nametitledelim` The delimiter printed between the author/editor and the title by author-title and some verbose citation styles. The default definition is a comma plus an interword space.
- `\nameyear delim` The delimiter printed between the author/editor and the year by author-year citation styles. The default definition is an interword space.
- `\labelalphaothers` A string to be appended to the non-numeric portion of the `labelalpha` field (i. e., the field holding the citation label used by alphabetic citation styles) if the number of authors/editors exceeds the `maxalphanames` threshold or the author/editor list was truncated in the bib file with the keyword ‘and others’. This will typically be a single character such as a plus sign or an asterisk. The default is a plus sign. This command may also be redefined to an empty string to disable this feature. In any case, it must be redefined in the preamble.
- `\sortalphaothers` Similar to `\labelalphaothers` but used in the sorting process. Setting it to a different value is advisable if the latter contains formatting commands, for example: Biber only
- ```
\renewcommand*{\labelalphaothers}{\textbf{+}}
\renewcommand*{\sortalphaothers}{+}
```
- If `\sortalphaothers` is not redefined, it defaults to `\labelalphaothers`.
- `\prenotedelim` The delimiter printed after the `⟨prenote⟩` argument of a citation command. See § 3.7 for details. The default is an interword space.
- `\postnotedelim` The delimiter printed before the `⟨postnote⟩` argument of a citation command. See § 3.7 for details. The default is a comma plus an interword space.
- `\mkbibnamelast{⟨text⟩}` This command, which takes one argument, is used to format the last name of all authors, editors, translators, etc.
- `\mkbibnamefirst{⟨text⟩}` Similar to `\mkbibnamelast`, but intended for the first name.
- `\mkbibnameprefix{⟨text⟩}` Similar to `\mkbibnamelast`, but intended for the name prefix.
- `\mkbibnameaffix{⟨text⟩}` Similar to `\mkbibnamelast`, but intended for the name affix.
- `\relatedpunct` The separator between the `relatedtype` bibliography localization string and the data from the first related entry. Here is an example with `\relatedpunct` set to a dash:

A. Smith. Title. 2000, (Orig. pub. as-Origtitle)

`\relateddelim` The separator between the data of multiple related entries. The default definition is an optional dot plus linebreak. Here is an example where volumes A-E are related entries of the 5 volume main work:

```
Donald E. Knuth. Computers & Typesetting. 5 vols. Reading, Mass.: Addison
  ↳ -
Wesley, 1984-1986.
Vol. A: The TEXbook. 1984.
Vol. B: TEX: The Program. 1986.
Vol. C: The METAFONTbook. By. 1986.
Vol. D: METAFONT: The Program. 1986.
Vol. E: Computer Modern Typefaces. 1986.
```

### 3.9.2 语言相关命令 Language-specific Commands

The commands in this section are language specific. When redefining them, you need to wrap the new definition in a `\DeclareBibliographyExtras` command (in an `.ltx` file) or a `\DefineBibliographyExtras` command (user documents), see § 3.8 for details. Note that all commands starting with `\mk...` take one or more arguments.

`\bibrangedash` The language specific dash to be used for ranges of numbers.

`\bibrangessep`

Biber only

The language specific separator to be used between multiple ranges.

`\bibdatedash` The language specific dash to be used for date ranges.

`\mkbibdatelong` Takes the names of three field as arguments which correspond to three date components (in the order year/month/day) and uses their values to print the date in the language specific long date format.

`\mkbibdateshort` Similar to `\mkbibdatelong` but using the language specific short date format.

`\finalandcomma` Prints the comma to be inserted before the final ‘and’ in a list, if applicable in the respective language. Here is an example:

```
Michel Goossens, Frank Mittelbach, and Alexander Samarin
```

`\finalandcomma` is the comma before the word ‘and’. See also `\multinamedelim`, `\finalnamedelim`, `\textcitedelim`, and `\revsdsnamedelim` in § 3.9.1.

`\finalandsemicolon` Prints the semicolon to be inserted before the final ‘and’ in a list of lists, if applicable in the respective language. Here is an example:

```
Goossens, Mittelbach, and Samarin; Bertram and Wenworth; and Knuth
```

`\finalandsemicolon` is the semicolon before the word ‘and’. See also `\textcitedelim` in § 3.9.1.

`\mkbibordinal{⟨integer⟩}`

This command, which takes an integer as its argument, prints an ordinal number.

`\mkbibmascord{⟨integer⟩}`

Similar to `\mkbibordinal`, but prints a masculine ordinal, if applicable in the respective language.

`\mkbibfemord{⟨integer⟩}`

Similar to `\mkbibordinal`, but prints a feminine ordinal, if applicable in the respective language.

`\mkbibneutord{⟨integer⟩}`

Similar to `\mkbibordinal`, but prints a neuter ordinal, if applicable in the respective language.

`\mkbibordedition{⟨integer⟩}`

Similar to `\mkbibordinal`, but intended for use with the term ‘edition’.

`\mkbibordseries{⟨integer⟩}`

Similar to `\mkbibordinal`, but intended for use with the term ‘series’.

### 3.9.3 尺寸和计数器 Lengths and Counters

The length registers and counters in this section may be changed in the document preamble with `\setlength` and `\setcounter`, respectively.

**`\bibhang`** The hanging indentation of the bibliography, if applicable. This length is initialized to `\parindent` at load-time.

**`\biblabelsep`** The horizontal space between entries and their corresponding labels in the bibliography. This only applies to bibliography styles which print labels, such as the numeric and alphabetic styles. This length is initialized to twice the value of `\labelsep` at load-time.

**`\bibitemsep`** The vertical space between the individual entries in the bibliography. This length is initialized to `\itemsep` at load-time. Note that `\bibitemsep`, `\bibnamesep`, and `\bibinitsep` obey the rules for `\addvspace`, that is, when vertical space introduced by any of these commands immediately follows on from space introduced by another of them, the resulting total space is equal to the largest of them.

- `\bibnamesep` Vertical space to be inserted between two entries in the bibliography whenever an entry starts with a name which is different from the initial name of the previous entry. The default value is zero. Setting this length to a positive value greater than `\bibitemsep` will group the bibliography by author/editor name. Note that `\bibitemsep`, `\bibnamesep`, and `\bibinitsep` obey the rules for `\addvspace`, that is, when vertical space introduced by any of these commands immediately follows on from space introduced by another of them, the resulting total space is equal to the largest of them.
- `\bibinitsep` Vertical space to be inserted between two entries in the bibliography whenever an entry starts with a letter which is different from the initial letter of the previous entry. The default value is zero. Setting this length to a positive value greater than `\bibitemsep` will group the bibliography alphabetically. Note that `\bibitemsep`, `\bibnamesep`, and `\bibinitsep` obey the rules for `\addvspace`, that is, when vertical space introduced by any of these commands immediately follows on from space introduced by another of them, the resulting total space is equal to the largest of them.
- `\bibparsep` The vertical space between paragraphs within an entry in the bibliography. The default value is zero.
- `abbrvpenalty` This counter, which is used by the localization modules, holds the penalty used in short or abbreviated localization strings. For example, a linebreak in expressions such as “et al.” or “ed. by” is unfortunate, but should still be possible to prevent overfull boxes. This counter is initialized to `\hyphenpenalty` at load-time. The idea is making TeX treat the whole expression as if it were a single, hyphenatable word as far as line-breaking is concerned. If you dislike such linebreaks, use a higher value. If you do not mind them at all, set this counter to zero. If you want to suppress them unconditionally, set it to ‘infinite’ (10 000 or higher).<sup>31</sup>
- `highnamepenalty` This counter holds a penalty affecting line-breaking in names. Please refer to §§ 3.12.4 and 3.9.1 for explanation. The counter is initialized to `\hyphenpenalty` at load-time. Use a higher value if you dislike the respective linebreaks. If you do not mind them at all, set this counter to zero. If you prefer the traditional BibTeX behavior (no linebreaks at `highnamepenalty` breakpoints), set it to ‘infinite’ (10 000 or higher).
- `lownamepenalty` Similar to `highnamepenalty`. Please refer to §§ 3.12.4 and 3.9.1 for explanation. The counter is initialized to half the `\hyphenpenalty` at load-time. Use a higher value if you dislike the respective linebreaks. If you do not mind them at all, set this counter to zero.

---

<sup>31</sup>The default values assigned to `abbrvpenalty`, `lownamepenalty`, and `highnamepenalty` are deliberately very low to prevent overfull boxes. This implies that you will hardly notice any effect on line-breaking if the text is set justified. If you set these counters to 10 000 to suppress the respective breakpoints, you will notice their effect but you may also be confronted with overfull boxes. Keep in mind that line-breaking in the bibliography is often more difficult than in the body text and that you can not resort to rephrasing a sentence. In some cases it may be preferable to set the entire bibliography `\raggedright` to prevent suboptimal linebreaks. In this case, even the fairly low default penalties will make a visible difference.

### 3.9.4 多用途命令 All-purpose Commands

The commands in this section are all-purpose text commands which are generally available, not only in citations and the bibliography.

`\bibellipsis` An ellipsis symbol with brackets: ‘[...]’.

`\noligature` Disables ligatures at this position and adds some space. Use this command to break up standard ligatures like ‘fi’ and ‘fl’. It is similar to the “| shorthand provided by some language modules of the babel/polyglossia packages.

`\hyphenate` A conditional hyphen. In contrast to the standard \- command, this one allows hyphenation in the rest of the word. It is similar to the “- shorthand provided by some language modules of the babel/polyglossia packages.

`\hyphen` An explicit, breakable hyphen intended for compound words. In contrast to a literal ‘-’, this command allows hyphenation in the rest of the word. It is similar to the “= shorthand provided by some language modules of the babel/polyglossia packages.

`\nbhyphen` An explicit, non-breakable hyphen intended for compound words. In contrast to a literal ‘-’, this command does not permit line breaks at the hyphen but still allows hyphenation in the rest of the word. It is similar to the “~ shorthand provided by some language modules of the babel/polyglossia packages.

`\nohyphenation` A generic switch which suppresses hyphenation locally. Its scope should normally be confined to a group.

`\textnohyphenation{⟨text⟩}`

Similar to `\nohyphenation` but restricted to the `⟨text⟩` argument.

`\mknumalph{⟨integer⟩}`

Takes an integer in the range 1–702 as its argument and converts it to a string as follows: 1=a, ..., 26=z, 27=aa, ..., 702=zz. This is intended for use in formatting directives for the `extrayear` and `extraalpha` fields.

`\mkbibacro{⟨text⟩}`

Generic command which typesets an acronym using the small caps variant of the current font, if available, and as-is otherwise. The acronym should be given in uppercase letters.

`\autocap{⟨character⟩}`

Automatically converts the `⟨character⟩` to its uppercase form if Biblatex’s punctuation tracker would capitalize a localization string at the current location. This command is robust. It is useful for conditional capitalization of certain strings in an entry. Note that the `⟨character⟩` argument is a single character given in lowercase. For example:

```
\autocap{s}pecial issue
```

will yield ‘Special issue’ or ‘special issue’, as appropriate. If the string to be capitalized starts with an inflected character given in Ascii notation, include the accent command in the *<character>* argument as follows:

```
\autocap{\`e}dition sp`eciale
```

This will yield ‘Édition spéciale’ or ‘édition spéciale’. If the string to be capitalized starts with a command which prints a character, such as `\ae` or `\oe`, simply put the command in the *<character>* argument:

```
\autocap{\oe}uvres
```

This will yield ‘Œuvres’ or ‘œuvres’.

### 3.10 语言相关注意点 Language-specific Notes

The facilities discussed in this section are specific to certain localization modules.

#### 3.10.1 美语 American

The American localization module uses `\uspunctuation` from § 4.7.5 to enable ‘American-style’ punctuation. If this feature is enabled, all trailing commas and periods after `\mkbibquote` will be moved inside the quotes. If you want to disable this feature, use `\stdpunctuation` as follows:

```
\DefineBibliographyExtras{american}{%  
  \stdpunctuation  
}
```

By default, the ‘American punctuation’ feature is enabled by the `american` localization module only. The above code is only required if you want American localization without American punctuation. Since standard punctuation is the package default, it would be redundant with any other language.

It is highly advisable to always specify `american`, `british`, `australian`, etc. rather than `english` when loading the `babel/polyglossia` packages to avoid any possible confusion. Older versions of the `babel` package used to treat `english` as an alias for `british`; more recent ones treat it as an alias for `american`. The `biblatex` package essentially treats `english` as an alias for `american`, except for the above feature which is only enabled if `american` is requested explicitly.



### 3.10.2 西班牙语 Spanish

Handling the word ‘and’ is more difficult in Spanish than in the other languages supported by this package because it may be ‘y’ or ‘e’, depending on the initial sound of the following word. Therefore, the Spanish localization module does not use the localization string ‘and’ but a special internal ‘smart and’ command. The behavior of this command is controlled by the `smartand` counter.

**smartand** This counter controls the behavior of the internal ‘smart and’ command. When set to 1, it prints ‘y’ or ‘e’, depending on the context. When set to 2, it always prints ‘y’. When set to 3, it always prints ‘e’. When set to 0, the ‘smart and’ feature is disabled. This counter is initialized to 1 at load-time and may be changed in the preamble. Note that setting this counter to a positive value implies that the Spanish localization module ignores `\finalnamedelim` and `\finallistdelim`.

**\forceE** Use this command in bib files if Biblatex gets the ‘and’ before a certain name wrong. As its name suggests, it will enforce ‘e’. This command must be used in a special way to prevent confusing BibTeX. Here is an example:

```
author = {Edward Jones and Eoin Maguire},  
author = {Edward Jones and {\forceE{E}}oin Maguire},
```

Note that the initial letter of the respective name component is given as an argument to `\forceE` and that the entire construct is wrapped in an additional pair of curly braces.

**\forceY** Similar to `\forceE` but enforces ‘y’.

### 3.10.3 希腊语 Greek

The Greek localization module requires UTF-8 support. It will not work with any other encoding. Generally speaking, the Biblatex package is compatible with the `inputenc` package and with XeLaTeX. The `ucs` package will not work. Since `inputenc`’s standard `utf8` module is missing glyph mappings for Greek, this leaves Greek users with XeLaTeX. Note that you may need to load additional packages which set up Greek fonts. As a rule of thumb, a setup which works for regular Greek documents should also work with Biblatex. However, there is one fundamental limitation. As of this writing, Biblatex has no support for switching scripts. Greek titles in the bibliography should work fine, provided that you use Biber as a backend, but English and other titles in the bibliography may be rendered in Greek letters. If you need multi-script bibliographies, using XeLaTeX is the only sensible choice.

### 3.10.4 俄语 Russian

Like the Greek localization module, the Russian module also requires UTF-8 support. It will not work with any other encoding.

### 3.11 用法注意点 Usage Notes

The following sections give a basic overview of the Biblatex package and discuss some typical usage scenarios.

#### 3.11.1 概述 Overview

Using the Biblatex package is slightly different from using traditional BibTeX styles and related packages. Before we get to specific usage scenarios, we will therefore have a look at the structure of a typical document first:

```
\documentclass{...}
\usepackage[...]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{bibfile.bib}
\begin{document}
\cite{...}
...
\printbibliography
\end{document}
```

With traditional BibTeX, the `\bibliography` command serves two purposes. It marks the location of the bibliography and it also specifies the bib file(s). The file extension is omitted. With Biblatex, resources are specified in the preamble with `\addbibresource` using the full name with `.bib` suffix. The bibliography is printed using the `\printbibliography` command which may be used multiple times (see § 3.6 for details). The document body may contain any number of citation commands (§ 3.7). Processing this example file requires that a certain procedure be followed. Suppose our example file is called `example.tex` and our bibliographic data is in `bibfile.bib`. The procedure, then, is as follows:

##### 3.11.1.1 Biber

1. Run `latex` on `example.tex`. If the file contains any citations, Biblatex will request the respective data from Biber by writing commands to the auxiliary file `example.bcf`.
2. Run `biber` on `example.bcf`. Biber will retrieve the data from `bibfile.bib` and write it to the auxiliary file `example.bbl` in a format which can be processed by Biblatex.
3. Run `latex` on `example.tex`. Biblatex will read the data from `example.bbl` and print all citations as well as the bibliography.

##### 3.11.1.2 BibTeX

1. Run `latex` on `example.tex`. If the file contains any citations, Biblatex will request the respective data from BibTeX by writing commands to the auxiliary file `example.aux`.
2. Run `bibtex` on `example.aux`. BibTeX will retrieve the data from `bibfile.bib` and write it to the auxiliary file `example.bbl` in a format which can be processed by Biblatex.
3. Run `latex` on `example.tex`. Biblatex will read the data from `example.bbl` and print all citations as well as the bibliography.

Whenever a reference to a work which has not been cited before is added, this procedure must be repeated. This is also the case if the last reference to a work which has been cited before is removed because some citation labels may change in this case. In contrast to traditional BibTeX, there is normally no need to run `latex` twice after running the backend as far as the handling of bibliographic data is concerned.<sup>32</sup>

Note that when using BibTeX as the backend this only applies to the most basic case. Using the `xref` field or the `entryset` field may require an additional LaTeX/BibTeX/LaTeX cycle. Some other facilities provided by Biblatex may also require an additional `latex` run to get certain references and the page tracking right. In this case, the usual warning messages such as “There were undefined references” and “Label(s) may have changed. Rerun to get cross-references right” will be printed.

BibTeX only

### 3.11.2 辅助文件 Auxiliary Files

**3.11.2.1 Biber** The Biblatex package uses one auxiliary `bcf` file only. Even if there are citation commands in a file included via `\include`, you only need to run Biber on the main `bcf` file. All information Biber needs is in the `bcf` file, including information about all refsections if using multiple refsection environments (see § 3.11.3).

**3.11.2.2 BibTeX** By default, the Biblatex package uses the main aux file only. Even if there are citation commands in a file included via `\include`, which has its own aux file, you only need to run BibTeX on the main aux file. If you are using refsection environments in a document (see § 3.11.3) Biblatex will create one additional aux file for every refsection environment. In this case, you also need to run `bibtex` on each additional aux file. The name of the additional aux files is the base name of the main input file with the string `-blx` and a running number appended at the end. The Biblatex package issues a warning listing the files which require an additional BibTeX run. With the basic example presented in § 3.11.1, it would issue the following warning:

```
Package biblatex Warning: Please (re)run BibTeX on the file(s):
(biblatex)                example.aux
(biblatex)                and rerun LaTeX afterwards.
```

<sup>32</sup>That is, unless the `defernumbers` package option is enabled. See § 4.1

If the input file contained three refsection environments, the warning would read as follows:

```
Package biblatex Warning: Please (re)run BibTeX on the file(s):
(biblatex)                example1-blx.aux
(biblatex)                example2-blx.aux
(biblatex)                example3-blx.aux
(biblatex)                and rerun LaTeX afterwards.
```

Apart from these aux files, Biblatex uses an additional bib file with the same suffix to pass certain control parameters to BibTeX. In the example above, this file would be named `example-blx.bib`. In the event of a file name conflict, you can change the suffix by redefining the macro `\blxauxsuffix` in the document preamble. When using Biber, Biblatex writes a control file named `example.bcf` and ignores `\blxauxsuffix`. There is also no auxiliary bib file in this case.

Note that Biblatex will not overwrite any files it did not create. All auxiliary files created automatically by this package start with a special signature line. Before overwriting a file (excluding the main aux file, which is managed by LaTeX), Biblatex inspects the first line of the file to make sure that there is no file name conflict. If the file in question is missing the signature line, Biblatex will immediately issue an error message and abort before opening the output stream. In this case you should delete any spurious files accidentally left in the working directory. If the error persists, there may be a file name conflict with a file found in one of the TeX installation trees. Since the installation trees usually do not contain any aux files and the string `-blx` is fairly exotic in the name of a bib file, this is rather unlikely but theoretically possible. If you find out that this is indeed the case, you should redefine `\blxauxsuffix` permanently in the Biblatex configuration file, `biblatex.cfg`.

### 3.11.3 多个参考文献表 Multiple Bibliographies

In a collection of articles by different authors, such as a conference proceedings volume for example, it is very common to have one bibliography for each article rather than a global one for the entire book. In the example below, each article would be presented as a separate `\chapter` with its own bibliography.

Note that with the BibTeX backend, Biblatex creates one additional aux file for every refsection environment. These files have to be processed by BibTeX as well, see § 3.11.2 for details.

BibTeX only

```
\documentclass{...}
\usepackage{biblatex}
\addbibresource{...}
\begin{document}
\chapter{...}
\begin{refsection}
```

```

...
\printbibliography[heading=subbibliography]
\end{refsection}
\chapter{...}
\begin{refsection}
...
\printbibliography[heading=subbibliography]
\end{refsection}
\end{document}

```

If `\printbibliography` is used inside a `refsection` environment, it automatically restricts the scope of the list of references to the enclosing `refsection` environment. For a cumulative bibliography which is subdivided by chapter but printed at the end of the book, use the `section` option of `\printbibliography` to select a reference section, as shown in the next example.

```

\documentclass{...}
\usepackage{biblatex}
\defbibheading{subbibliography}{%
  \section*{References for Chapter \ref{refsection:\therefsection}}}
\addbibresource{...}
\begin{document}
\chapter{...}
\begin{refsection}
...
\end{refsection}
\chapter{...}
\begin{refsection}
...
\end{refsection}
\printbibheading
\printbibliography[section=1,heading=subbibliography]
\printbibliography[section=2,heading=subbibliography]
\end{document}

```

Note the definition of the bibliography heading in the above example. This is the definition taking care of the subheadings in the bibliography. The main heading is generated with a plain `\chapter` command in this case. The Biblatex package automatically sets a label at the beginning of every `refsection` environment, using the standard `\label` command. The identifier used is the string `refsection:` followed by the number of the respective `refsection` environment. The number of the current section is accessible via the `refsection` counter. When using the `section` option of `\printbibliography`, this counter is also set locally. This means that you may use the counter in heading

definitions to print subheadings like “References for Chapter 3”, as shown above. You could also use the title of the respective chapter as a subheading by loading the `nameref` package and using `\nameref` instead of `\ref`:

```
\usepackage{nameref}
\defbibheading{subbibliography}{%
  \section*{\nameref{refsection:\therefsection}}}
```

Since giving one `\printbibliography` command for each part of a subdivided bibliography is tedious, Bibl<sub>at</sub>ex provides a shorthand. The `\bibbysection` command automatically loops over all reference sections. This is equivalent to giving one `\printbibliography` command for every section but has the additional benefit of automatically skipping sections without references. In the example above, the bibliography would then be generated as follows:

```
\printbibheading
\bibbysection[heading=subbibliography]
```

When using a format with one cumulative bibliography subdivided by chapter (or any other document division) it may be more appropriate to use `refsegment` rather than `refsection` environments. The difference is that the `refsection` environment generates labels local to the environment while `refsegment` does not affect the generation of labels, hence they will be unique across the entire document. Note that when using Bib<sub>T</sub>EX as the backend, `refsegment` environments do not require additional aux files. The next example could also be given in § 3.11.4 because, visually, it creates one global bibliography subdivided into multiple segments.

```
\documentclass{...}
\usepackage{biblatex}
\defbibheading{subbibliography}{%
  \section*{References for Chapter \ref{refsegment:
    ↔ \therefsection\therefsegment}}}%
\addbibresource{...}
\begin{document}
\chapter{...}
\begin{refsegment}
...
\end{refsegment}
\chapter{...}
\begin{refsegment}
...
\end{refsegment}
\printbibheading
```

```

\printbibliography[segment=1,heading=subbibliography]
\printbibliography[segment=2,heading=subbibliography]
\end{document}

```

The use of `refsegment` is similar to `refsection` and there is also a corresponding `segment` option for `\printbibliography`. The Biblatex package automatically sets a label at the beginning of every `refsegment` environment using the string `refsegment:` followed by the number of the respective `refsegment` environment as an identifier. There is a matching `refsegment` counter which may be used in heading definitions, as shown above. As with reference sections, there is also a shorthand command which automatically loops over all reference segments:

```

\printbibheading
\bibbysegment[heading=subbibliography]

```

This is equivalent to giving one `\printbibliography` command for every segment in the current `refsection`.

### 3.11.4 子参考文献表 Subdivided Bibliographies

It is very common to subdivide a bibliography by certain criteria. For example, you may want to list printed and online resources separately or divide a bibliography into primary and secondary sources. The former case is straightforward because you can use the entry type as a criterion for the `type` and `nottypes` filters of `\printbibliography`. The next example also demonstrates how to generate matching subheadings for the two parts of the bibliography.

```

\documentclass{...}
\usepackage{biblatex}
\addbibresource{...}
\begin{document}
...
\printbibheading
\printbibliography[nottypes=online,heading=subbibliography,
                  title={Printed Sources}]
\printbibliography[type=online,heading=subbibliography,
                  title={Online Sources}]

\end{document}

```

You may also use more than two subdivisions:

```

\printbibliography[type=article,...]
\printbibliography[type=book,...]
\printbibliography[nottypes=article,nottypes=book,...]

```

It is even possible to give a chain of different types of filters:

```
\printbibliography[section=2,type=book,keyword=abc,notkeyword=xyz]
```

This would print all works cited in reference section 2 whose entry type is @book and whose keywords field includes the keyword ‘abc’ but not ‘xyz’. When using bibliography filters in conjunction with a numeric style, see § 3.12.5. If you need complex filters with conditional expressions, use the filter option in conjunction with a custom filter defined with \defbibfilter. See § 3.6.10 for details on custom filters.

```
\documentclass{...}
\usepackage{biblatex}
\addbibresource{...}
\begin{document}
...
\printbibheading
\printbibliography[keyword=primary,heading=subbibliography,%
                   title={Primary Sources}]
\printbibliography[keyword=secondary,heading=subbibliography,%
                   title={Secondary Sources}]
\end{document}
```

Dividing a bibliography into primary and secondary sources is possible with a keyword filter, as shown in the above example. In this case, with only two subdivisions, it would be sufficient to use one keyword as filter criterion:

```
\printbibliography[keyword=primary,...]
\printbibliography[notkeyword=primary,...]
```

Since Biblatex has no way of knowing if an item in the bibliography is considered to be primary or secondary literature, we need to supply the bibliography filter with the required data by adding a keywords field to each entry in the bib file. These keywords may then be used as targets for the keyword and notkeyword filters, as shown above. It may be a good idea to add such keywords right away while building a bib file.

```
@Book{key,
  keywords = {primary,some,other,keywords},
  ...
}
```

An alternative way of subdividing the list of references are bibliography categories. They differ from the keywords-based approach shown in the example above in that they work on the document level and do not require any changes to the bib file.

```
\documentclass{...}
```



```

\usepackage{biblatex}
\DeclareBibliographyCategory{primary}
\DeclareBibliographyCategory{secondary}
\addtocategory{primary}{key1,key3,key6}
\addtocategory{secondary}{key2,key4,key5}
\addbibresource{...}
\begin{document}
...
\printbibheading
\printbibliography[category=primary,heading=subbibliography,%
                    title={Primary Sources}]
\printbibliography[category=secondary,heading=subbibliography,%
                    title={Secondary Sources}]
\end{document}

```

In this case it would also be sufficient to use one category only:

```

\printbibliography[category=primary,...]
\printbibliography[notcategory=primary,...]

```

It is still a good idea to declare all categories used in the bibliography explicitly because there is a `\bibbycategory` command which automatically loops over all categories. This is equivalent to giving one `\printbibliography` command for every category, in the order in which they were declared.

```

\documentclass{...}
\usepackage{biblatex}
\DeclareBibliographyCategory{primary}
\DeclareBibliographyCategory{secondary}
\addtocategory{primary}{key1,key3,key6}
\addtocategory{secondary}{key2,key4,key5}
\defbibheading{primary}{\section*{Primary Sources}}
\defbibheading{secondary}{\section*{Secondary Sources}}
\addbibresource{...}
\begin{document}
...
\printbibheading
\bibbycategory
\end{document}

```

The handling of the headings is different from `\bibbysection` and `\bibbysegment` in this case. `\bibbycategory` uses the name of the current category as a heading name. This is equivalent to passing `heading=⟨category⟩` to `\printbibliography` and implies that you need to provide a matching heading for every category.

### 3.11.5 条目集 Entry Sets

An entry set is a group of entries which are cited as a single reference and listed as a single item in the bibliography. The individual entries in the set are separated by `\entrysetpunct` (§ 4.10.1). The Biblatex package supports two types of entry sets. Static entry sets are defined in the bib file like any other entry. Dynamic entry sets are defined with `\defbibentryset` (§ 3.6.12) on a per-document/per-refsection basis in the document preamble or the document body. This section deals with the definition of entry sets; style authors should also see § 4.11.1 for further information.

**3.11.5.1 Static entry sets** Static entry sets are defined in the bib file like any other entry. When using Biber as the backend, defining an entry set is as simple as adding an entry of type `@set`. The entry has an `entryset` field defining the members of the set as a separated list of entry keys: Biber only

```
@Set{set1,  
  entryset = {key1,key2,key3},  
}
```

Entries may be part of a set in one document/refsection and stand-alone references in another one, depending on the presence of the `@set` entry. If the `@set` entry is cited, the set members are grouped automatically. If not, they will work like any regular entry.

When using BibTeX as the backend, which has no native support for entry sets, setting up entry sets involves more work. BibTeX requires `entryset` and `crossref` fields to be used in a special way. The members of the set are given in the `entryset` field of the `@set` entry. The `@set` entry also requires a `crossref` field which points to the first key in the `entryset` field. In addition to that, all members of the set require `entryset` fields which are reverse pointers to the entry key of the `@set` head entry:

```
@Set{set1,  
  entryset = {key1,key2,key3},  
  crossref = {key1},  
}  
@Article{key1,  
  entryset = {set1},  
  author   = {...},  
  title    = {...},  
  ...  
}  
@InCollection{key2,  
  entryset = {set1},  
  author   = {...},  
  title    = {...},  
  ...  
}
```

```

}
@Article{key3,
  entryset = {set1},
  author   = {...},
  title    = {...},
  ...
}

```

Note that citing any set member will automatically load the entire set with BibTeX. If you want to refer to an item as part of a set in one document/refsection and as a stand-alone reference in another one, you need two distinct entries with BibTeX.

**3.11.5.2 Dynamic entry sets** Dynamic entry sets are set up and work much like static ones. The main difference is that they are defined in the document preamble or on the fly in the document body using the `\defbibentryset` command from § 3.6.12:

Biber only

```
\defbibentryset{set1}{key1,key2,key3}
```

Dynamic entry sets in the document body are local to the enclosing refsection environment, if any. Otherwise, they are assigned to reference section 0. Those defined in the preamble are assigned to reference section 0. Note that dynamic entry sets require Biber. They will not work with any other backend.

### 3.11.6 数据容器 Data Containers

Biber only

The `@xdata` entry type serves as a data container holding one or more fields. These fields may be inherited by other entries using the `xdata` field. `@xdata` entries may not be cited or added to the bibliography, they only serve as a data source for other entries. This data inheritance mechanism is useful for fixed field combinations such as publisher/location and for other frequently used data:

```

@XData{hup,
  publisher = {Harvard University Press},
  location  = {Cambridge, Mass.},
}
@Book{...,
  author    = {...},
  title     = {...},
  date      = {...},
  xdata     = {hup},
}

```

Using a separated list of keys in its `xdata` field, an entry may inherit data from several `@xdata` entries. Cascading `@xdata` entries are supported as well, i. e., an `@xdata` entry may reference one or more other `@xdata` entries:

```

@XData{macmillan:name,
  publisher = {Macmillan},
}
@XData{macmillan:place,
  location  = {New York and London},
}
@XData{macmillan,
  xdata     = {macmillan:name,macmillan:place},
}
@Book{...,
  author    = {...},
  title     = {...},
  date      = {...},
  xdata     = {macmillan},
}

```

See also §§ 2.1.1 和 2.2.3.

### 3.11.7 电子出版信息 Electronic Publishing Information

The Biblatex package provides three fields for electronic publishing information: `eprint`, `eprinttype`, and `eprintclass`. The `eprint` field is a verbatim field similar to `doi` which holds the identifier of the item. The `eprinttype` field holds the resource name, i.e., the name of the site or electronic archive. The optional `eprintclass` field is intended for additional information specific to the resource indicated by the `eprinttype` field. This could be a section, a path, classification information, etc. If the `eprinttype` field is available, the standard styles will use it as a literal label. In the following example, they would print “Resource: identifier” rather than the generic “eprint: identifier”:

```

eprint      = {identifier},
eprinttype  = {Resource},

```

The standard styles feature dedicated support for a few online archives. For arXiv references, put the identifier in the `eprint` field and the string `arxiv` in the `eprinttype` field:

```

eprint      = {math/0307200v3},
eprinttype  = {arxiv},

```

For papers which use the new identifier scheme (April 2007 and later) add the primary classification in the `eprintclass` field:

```

eprint      = {1008.2849v1},
eprinttype  = {arxiv},
eprintclass = {cs.DS},

```

There are two aliases which ease the integration of arXiv entries. `archiveprefix` is treated as an alias for `eprinttype`; `primaryclass` is an alias for `eprintclass`. If hyperlinks are enabled, the `eprint` identifier will be transformed into a link to `arxiv.org`. See the package option `arxiv` in § 3.1.2.1 for further details.

For JSTOR references, put the stable JSTOR number in the `eprint` field and the string `jstor` in the `eprinttype` field:

```
eprint      = {number},  
eprinttype = {jstor},
```

When using JSTOR's export feature to export citations in BibTeX format, JSTOR uses the `url` field by default (where the `<number>` is a unique and stable identifier):

```
url = {http://www.jstor.org/stable/number},
```

While this will work as expected, full URLs tend to clutter the bibliography. With the `eprint` fields, the standard styles will use the more readable "JSTOR: `<number>`" format which also supports hyperlinks. The `<number>` becomes a clickable link if `hyperref` support is enabled.

For PubMed references, put the stable PubMed identifier in the `eprint` field and the string `pubmed` in the `eprinttype` field. This means that:

```
url = {http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/pmid},
```

becomes:

```
eprint      = {pmid},  
eprinttype = {pubmed},
```

and the standard styles will print "PMID: `<pmid>`" instead of the lengthy URL. If `hyperref` support is enabled, the `<pmid>` will be a clickable link to PubMed.

For handles (HDLs), put the handle in the `eprint` field and the string `hdl` in the `eprinttype` field:

```
eprint      = {handle},  
eprinttype = {hdl},
```

For Google Books references, put Google's identifier in the `eprint` field and the string `googlebooks` in the `eprinttype` field. This means that, for example:

```
url = {http://books.google.com/books?id=XXu4AkRVBBoC},
```

would become:

```
eprint      = {XXu4AkRVBBoC},  
eprinttype = {googlebooks},
```

and the standard styles would print “Google Books: XXu4AkRVBBoC” instead of the full URL. If hyperref support is enabled, the identifier will be a clickable link to Google Books.<sup>33</sup>

Note that `eprint` is a verbatim field. Always give the identifier in its unmodified form. For example, there is no need to replace `_` with `\_`. Also see § 4.11.2 on how to add dedicated support for other eprint resources.

### 3.11.8 额外的摘要和注释 External Abstracts and Annotations

Styles which print the fields `abstract` and/or `annotation` may support an alternative way of adding abstracts or annotations to the bibliography. Instead of including the text in the `bib` file, it may also be stored in an external LaTeX file. For example, instead of saying

```
@Article{key1,
...
abstract      = {This is an abstract of entry 'key1'.}
}
```

in the `bib` file, you may create a file named `bibabstract-key1.tex` and put the abstract in this file:

```
This is an abstract of entry 'key1'.
\endinput
```

The name of the external file must be the entry key prefixed with `bibabstract-` or `bibannotation-`, respectively. You can change these prefixes by redefining `\bibabstractprefix` and `\bibannotationprefix`. Note that this feature needs to be enabled explicitly by setting the package option `loadfiles` from § 3.1.2.1. The option is disabled by default for performance reasons. Also note that any `abstract` and `annotation` fields in the `bib` file take precedence over the external files. Using external files is strongly recommended if you have long abstracts or a lot of annotations since this may increase memory requirements significantly. It is also more convenient to edit the text in a dedicated LaTeX file. Style authors should see § 4.11.3 for further information.

## 3.12 提示与警告 Hints and Caveats

This section provides additional usage hints and addresses some common problems and potential misconceptions.

---

<sup>33</sup>Note that the Google Books ID seems to be a bit of an ‘internal’ value. As of this writing, there does not seem to be any way to search for an ID on Google Books. You may prefer to use the URL in this case.

### 3.12.1 与KOMA-Script 类共用的方法 Usage with KOMA-Script Classes

When using Biblatex in conjunction with one of the `scrbook`, `scrreprt`, or `scrartcl` classes, the headings `bibliography` and `biblist` from § 3.6.8 are responsive to the bibliography-related options of these classes.<sup>34</sup> You can override the default headings by using the heading option of `\printbibliography`, `\printbibheading` and `\printbiblist`. See §§ 3.6.2、3.6.4、3.6.8 for details. All default headings are adapted at load-time such that they blend with the behavior of these classes. If one of the above classes is detected, Biblatex will also provide the following additional tests which may be useful in custom heading definitions:

`\ifkomabibtotoc{<true>}{<false>}`

Expands to `<true>` if the class would add the bibliography to the table of contents, and to `<false>` otherwise.

`\ifkomabibtotocnumbered{<true>}{<false>}`

Expands to `<true>` if the class would add the bibliography to the table of contents as a numbered section, and to `<false>` otherwise. If this test yields `<true>`, `\ifkomabibtotoc` will always yield `<true>` as well, but not vice versa.

### 3.12.2 与 Memoir 类共用的方法 Usage with the Memoir Class

When using Biblatex with the `memoir` class, most class facilities for adapting the bibliography have no effect. Use the corresponding facilities of this package instead (§§ 3.6.2、3.6.8、3.6.9). Instead of redefining `memoir`'s `\bibsection`, use the heading option of `\printbibliography` and `\defbibheading` (§§ 3.6.2 和 3.6.8). Instead of `\prebibhook` and `\postbibhook`, use the `prenote` and `postnote` options of `\printbibliography` and `\defbibnote` (§§ 3.6.2 和 3.6.9). All default headings are adapted at load-time such that they blend well with the default layout of this class. The default headings `bibliography` and `biblist` (§ 3.6.8) are also responsive to `memoir`'s `\bibintoc` and `\nobibintoc` switches. The length register `\bibitemsep` is used by Biblatex in a way similar to `memoir` (§ 3.9.3). This section also introduces some additional length registers which correspond to `memoir`'s `\biblistextra`. Lastly, `\setbiblabel` does not map to a single facility of the Biblatex package since the style of all labels in the bibliography is controlled by the bibliography style. See § 4.2.2 in the author section of this manual for details. If the `memoir` class is detected, Biblatex will also provide the following additional test which may be useful in custom heading definitions:

---

<sup>34</sup>This applies to the traditional syntax of these options (`bibtotoc` and `bibtotocnumbered`) as well as to the `<key>=<value>` syntax introduced in KOMA-Script 3.x, i.e., to `bibliography=nottotoc`, `bibliography=totoc`, and `bibliography=totocnumbered`. The global `toc=bibliography` and `toc=bibliographynumbered` options as well as their aliases are detected as well. In any case, the options must be set globally in the optional argument to `\documentclass`.

`\ifmemoirbibintoc{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

Expands to `⟨true⟩` or `⟨false⟩`, depending on memoir’s `\bibintoc` and `\nobibintoc` switches. This is a LaTeX frontend to memoir’s `\ifnobibintoc` test. Note that the logic of the test is reversed.

### 3.12.3 标注中的页码 Page Numbers in Citations

If the `⟨postnote⟩` argument to a citation command is a page number or page range, Biblatex will automatically prefix it with ‘p.’ or ‘pp.’ by default. This works reliably in typical cases, but sometimes manual intervention may be required. In this case, it is important to understand how this argument is handled in detail. First, Biblatex checks if the postnote is an Arabic or Roman numeral (case insensitive). If this test succeeds, the postnote is considered as a single page or other number which will be prefixed with ‘p.’ or some other string which depends on the pagination field (see § 2.3.10). If it fails, a second test is performed to find out if the postnote is a range or a list of Arabic or Roman numerals. If this test succeeds, the postnote will be prefixed with ‘pp.’ or some other string in the plural form. If it fails as well, the postnote is printed as is. Note that both tests expand the `⟨postnote⟩`. All commands used in this argument must therefore be robust or prefixed with `\protect`. Here are a few examples of `⟨postnote⟩` arguments which will be correctly recognized as a single number, a range of numbers, or a list of numbers, respectively:

```
\cite[25]{key}
\cite[vii]{key}
\cite[XIV]{key}
\cite[34--38]{key}
\cite[iv--x]{key}
\cite[185/86]{key}
\cite[XI \& XV]{key}
\cite[3, 5, 7]{key}
\cite[vii--x; 5, 7]{key}
```

In some other cases, however, the tests may get it wrong and you need to resort to the auxiliary commands `\pno`, `\ppno`, and `\nopp` from § 3.7.8. For example, suppose a work is cited by a special pagination scheme consisting of numbers and letters. In this scheme, the string ‘27a’ would mean ‘page 27, part a’. Since this string does not look like a number or a range to Biblatex, you need to force the prefix for a single number manually:

```
\cite[\pno~27a]{key}
```

There is also a `\ppno` command which forces a range prefix as well as a `\nopp` command which suppresses all prefixes:



```
\cite[\ppno~27a--28c]{key}  
\cite[\nopp 25]{key}
```

These commands may be used anywhere in the *⟨postnote⟩* argument. They may also be used multiple times. For example, when citing by volume and page number, you may want to suppress the prefix at the beginning of the postnote and add it in the middle of the string:

```
\cite[VII, \pno~5]{key}  
\cite[VII, \pno~3, \ppno~40--45]{key}  
\cite[see][\ppno~37--46, in particular \pno~40]{key}
```

There are also two auxiliary command for suffixes like ‘the following page(s)’. Instead of inserting such suffixes literally (which would require `\ppno` to force a prefix):

```
\cite[\ppno~27~sq.]{key}  
\cite[\ppno~55~sqq.]{key}
```

use the auxiliary commands `\psq` and `\psqq`. Note that there is no space between the number and the command. This space will be inserted automatically and may be modified by redefining the macro `\sqspace`.

```
\cite[27\psq]{key}  
\cite[55\psqq]{key}
```

Since the postnote is printed without any prefix if it includes any character which is not an Arabic or Roman numeral, you may also type the prefix manually:

```
\cite[p.~5]{key}
```

It is possible to suppress the prefix on a per-entry basis by setting the pagination field of an entry to ‘none’, see § 2.3.10 for details. If you do not want any prefixes at all or prefer to type them manually, you can also disable the entire mechanism in the document preamble or the configuration file as follows:

```
\DeclareFieldFormat{postnote}{#1}
```

The *⟨postnote⟩* argument is handled as a field and the formatting of this field is controlled by a field formatting directive which may be freely redefined. The above definition will simply print the postnote as is. See §§ 4.3.2 和 4.4.2 in the author guide for further details.

### 3.12.4 姓名组成部分及其间距 Name Parts and Name Spacing

The Biblatex package gives users and style authors very fine-grained control of name spacing and the line-breaking behavior of names, especially when they are using Biber as the backend. The commands discussed in the following are documented in §§ 3.9.1 和 4.10.1. This section is meant to give an overview of how they are put together. A note on terminology: a name *part* is a basic part of the name, for example the first or the last name. Each part of a name may be a single name or it may be composed of multiple names. For example, the name part ‘first name’ may be composed of a first and a middle name. The latter are referred to as name *elements* in this section. Let’s consider a simple name first: “John Edward Doe”. This name is composed of the following parts:

First     John Edward  
Prefix    —  
Last      Doe  
Suffix    —

The spacing, punctuation and line-breaking behavior of names is controlled by six macros:

|                                |                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>a=\bibnamedelima</code>  | Inserted by the backend after the first element of every name part if that element is less than three characters long and before the last element of every name part.                        |
| <code>b=\bibnamedelimb</code>  | Inserted by the backend between all elements of a name part where <code>\bibnamedelima</code> does not apply.                                                                                |
| <code>c=\bibnamedelimc</code>  | Inserted by a formatting directive between the name prefix and the last name if <code>useprefix=true</code> . If <code>useprefix=false</code> , <code>\bibnamedelimd</code> is used instead. |
| <code>d=\bibnamedelimd</code>  | Inserted by a formatting directive between name parts where <code>\bibnamedelimc</code> does not apply.                                                                                      |
| <code>i=\bibnamedelimi</code>  | Replaces <code>\bibnamedelima/b</code> after initials                                                                                                                                        |
| <code>p=\revsdnamepunct</code> | Inserted by a formatting directive after the last name when the name parts are reversed.                                                                                                     |

This is how the delimiters are employed:

John<sub>a</sub> Edward<sub>d</sub> Doe  
Doe<sub>p</sub><sub>d</sub> John<sub>a</sub> Edward

Initials in the bib file get a special delimiter:

J.<sub>i</sub> Edward<sub>d</sub> Doe

Let’s consider a more complex name: “Charles-Jean Étienne Gustave Nicolas de La Vallée Poussin”. This name is composed of the following parts:

First Charles-Jean Étienne Gustave Nicolas  
 Prefix de  
 Last La Vallée Poussin  
 Suffix —

The delimiters:

Charles-Jean<sub>b</sub> Étienne<sub>b</sub> Gustave<sub>a</sub> Nicolas<sub>d</sub> de<sub>c</sub> La<sub>a</sub> Vallée<sub>a</sub> Poussin

Note that `\bibnamedelima/b/i` are inserted by the backend. The backend processes the name parts and takes care of the delimiters between the elements that make up a name part, processing each part individually. In contrast to that, the delimiters between the parts of the complete name (`\bibnamedelimc/d`) are added by name formatting directives at a later point in the processing chain. The spacing and punctuation of initials is also handled by the backend and may be customized by redefining the following three macros:

|                                   |                                                                                                                                               |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>a=\bibinitperiod</code>     | Inserted by the backend after initials.                                                                                                       |
| <code>b=\bibinitdelim</code>      | Inserted by the backend between multiple initials.                                                                                            |
| <code>c=\bibinithyphenelim</code> | Inserted by the backend between the initials of hyphenated name parts, replacing <code>\bibinitperiod</code> and <code>\bibinitdelim</code> . |

This is how they are employed:

J<sub>a</sub>. E<sub>b</sub> Doe

K<sub>c</sub>. -H<sub>a</sub> Mustermann

### 3.12.5 参考文献筛选器和标注标签 Bibliography Filters and Citation Labels

The citation labels generated by this package are assigned to the full list of references before it is split up by any bibliography filters. They are guaranteed to be unique across the entire document (or a refsection environment), no matter how many bibliography filters you are using. When using a numeric citation scheme, however, this will most likely lead to discontinuous numbering in split bibliographies. Use the `defernumbers` package option to avoid this problem. If this option is enabled, numeric labels are assigned the first time an entry is printed in any bibliography.

### 3.12.6 参考文献标题中的活动字符 Active Characters in Bibliography Headings

Packages using active characters, such as `babel`, `polyglossia`, `csquotes`, or `underscore`, usually do not make them active until the beginning of the document body to avoid interference with other packages. A typical example of such an active character is the Ascii quote `"`, which is used by various language modules of the `babel/polyglossia` packages. If shorthands such as `"<` and `"a` are used in the argument

to `\defbibheading` and the headings are defined in the document preamble, the non-active form of the characters is saved in the heading definition. When the heading is typeset, they do not function as a command but are simply printed literally. The most straightforward solution consists in moving `\defbibheading` after `\begin{document}`. Alternatively, you may use babel's `\shorthandon` and `\shorthandoff` commands to temporarily make the shorthands active in the preamble. The above also applies to bibliography notes and the `\defbibnote` command.

### 3.12.7 在参考文献分节和分部中的编组 **Grouping in Reference Sections and Segments**

All LaTeX environments enclosed in `\begin` and `\end` form a group. This may have undesirable side effects if the environment contains anything that does not expect to be used within a group. This issue is not specific to `refsection` and `refsegment` environments, but it obviously applies to them as well. Since these environments will usually enclose much larger portions of the document than a typical `itemize` or similar environment, they are simply more likely to trigger problems related to grouping. If you observe any malfunctions after adding `refsection` environments to a document (for example, if anything seems to be ‘trapped’ inside the environment), try the following syntax instead:

```
\chapter{...}  
\refsection  
...  
\endrefsection
```

This will not form a group, but otherwise works as usual. As far as Biblatex is concerned, it does not matter which syntax you use. The alternative syntax is also supported by the `refsegment` environment. Note that the commands `\newrefsection` and `\newrefsegment` do not form a group. See §§ 3.6.5 和 3.6.6 for details.

## 4 样式作者指南

This part of the manual documents the author interface of the Biblatex package. The author guide covers everything you need to know in order to write new citation and bibliography styles or localisation modules. You should read the user guide first before continuing with this part of the manual.

本节内容是样式作者指南，主要介绍 Biblatex 包的接口。该指南囊括了设计参考文献著录和标注样式或者本地化模型所需知晓的所有内容。在阅读本部分内容前最好先阅读上一节的用户手册。

### 4.1 概述

在讨论 Biblatex 提供的命令和工具之前，我们首先介绍一些基本概念。Biblatex 包以一种特殊的方式使用辅助文件。最值得注意的是当使用 BibTeX 后端程序时，

bbl文件的使用方式存在差别，即只有一个bst文件可用来实现结构化的数据接口，该文件并非用来输出可打印数据。

使用 LaTeX 的标准参考文献工具，一个文档通常包含任意数量的文献引用命令，以及常放在文档最后的\bibliographystyle和\bibliography命令。文献引用命令在文档中的位置是任意的，而\bibliographystyle和\bibliography命令则标记了打印参考文献表的位置，比如：

```
\documentclass{...}
\begin{document}
\cite{...}
...
\bibliographystyle{...}
\bibliography{...}
\end{document}
```

Processing this files requires that a certain procedure be followed. This procedure is as follows:

处理这些文件存在一定的流程，其过程如下：

1. 运行 latex: 第一次运行 latex, 在 fileaux 文件中写入 \bibstyle 和 \bibdata 命令，以及所有标注的 \citation 命令。这时，各引文标注<sup>35</sup>是未定义的，因为 LaTeX 等待 BibTeX 提供需要的数据，当然参考文献表也没生成。
2. 运行 bibtex: BibTeX 在 bbl 文件中写入一个 thebibliography 环境，用以提供 aux 文件中 \citation 命令所需求的所有条目，这些条目的数据来自 bib 文件。
3. 运行 latex, 第二次运行 latex, thebibliography 环境中的 \bibitem 命令在 aux 文件中为各参考文献条目写入 \bibcite 命令。这些 \bibcite 命令定义的标签将用于 \cite 命令。然而，各引文标注仍然未定义，因为这些标签在最后一次运行 latex 前仍未知。
4. 运行 latex: 第三次运行，随着导言区最后读入了 aux 文件，引文标注的标签定义完成。这样所有的标注可以正确打印。

注意到所有的参考文献数据都以最终格式 (指最后打印出的格式) 写入 bbl 文件。该文件的读取和处理如同任何文档中的可打印章节。例如，考虑在一个 bib 文件中有如下条目：

```
@Book{companion,
  author    = {Michel Goossens and Frank Mittelbach and Alexander Samarin
    ↪ },
  title     = {The LaTeX Companion},
  publisher = {Addison-Wesley},
```

<sup>35</sup>这里的 references 译为引文标注，指在引用命令导致在正文中出现的标注，这个标注由标签 label 构成。

```

address = {Reading, Mass.},
year    = {1994},
}

```

根据plain.bst 样式, BibTeX 在bbl文件中输出该条目如下:

```

\bibitem{companion}
Michel Goossens, Frank Mittelbach, and Alexander Samarin.
\newblock {\em The LaTeX Companion}.
\newblock Addison-Wesley, Reading, Mass., 1994.

```

默认情况下, LaTeX 生成顺序编码制标注标签, 因此\bibitem命令在aux文件中写入的行如下所示:

```
\bibcite{companion}{1}
```

要实现一个不同的标注标签样式, 意味着需要通过aux文件传递更多的数据。比如, 当使用natbib包时, aux文件包含的标注 (或引用) 信息行, 如下:

```
\bibcite{companion}{1}{1994}{Goossens et-al.}{Goossens, Mittelbach,
and Samarin}}
```

Biblatex 包支持任何格式的标注标签, 因此标注命令需要访问所有的参考文献数据。看一看同样需要在标注中提供所有参考文献数据的jurabib包的输出, 我们将更清楚地理解这对上述处理过程的意义。

```

\bibcite{companion}{Goossens\jbbfsasep Mittelbach\jbbstasep Samarin}%
  {{{0}}{book}{1994}}{ }{{Reading, Mass.\bpubaddr}{Addison-Wesley%
\bibbdsep{ } 1994}}{The LaTeX Companion}}{2}}{ }{{ }}{\bibnf
{Goossens}{Michel}{M.}}{\Bibbfsasep\bibnf{Mittelbach}{Frank}{F.}%
 }{\Bibbstasep\bibnf{Samarin}{Alexander}{A.}}{\bibtfont{The
LaTeX Companion}.\ \apyformat{Reading, Mass.\bpubaddr}{
Addison-Wesley\bibbdsep{ } 1994}}}

```

在这种情况下, 整个thebibliography环境的内容能通过aux文件有效传递。数据首先从bbl文件中读取出来, 写入到aux中, 然后再从aux读出保存到内存中。只有读入bbl文件, 参考文献表才能生成。而 Biblatex 包将被迫通过aux文件回收所有的数据。这意味着处理过度且多余, 因为不管怎么样数据都必须保存在内存中。

这种传统的处理过程都基于一个假设, 即条目的完整数据只是参考文献表需要而所有的标注都使用短标签。这对于有内存限制的情况是非常有效的, 但也意味着很难扩展。这就是 Biblatex 采取另一种方式的原因。首先, 文档结构略有变化。取消在文档内使用\bibliography命令, 数据库文件由导言区的\addbibresource命令指定, 完全忽略\bibliographystyle命令 (所有的功能都将由包选项控制), 参考文献表使用\printbibliography命令打印:

```

\documentclass{...}
\usepackage[...]{biblatex}
\addbibresource{...}
\begin{document}
\cite{...}
...
\printbibliography
\end{document}

```

为了简化整个流程，Biblatex 基本上以应用aux文件的方式应用bbl文件，并舍弃了\cibcite命令。于是，我们得到如下流程：

1. 运行`latex`: 第一步类似于上述的传统方式:\bibstyle 和 \bibdata以及所有引用的\citation命令写入到aux文件中 (以 BibTeX 为后端程序) 或者写到bcf文件中 (以 Biber 为后端程序)。然后等待后端程序提供需要的数据。当以 BibTeX 为后端程序时，Biblatex 使用一个特殊 bst的文件，该文件用于实现 BibTeX 后端程序的数据接口，因此\bibstyle命令则必须是\bibstyle{biblatex}。
2. 运行`biber` 或 `bibtex`: 后端程序提供了辅助文件中所有\citation命令所需的条目，这些条目的数据来自bib文件。然而，它并不在bbl文件中写出一个可打印的参考文献表，而是一个参考文献的结构化表达数据。类似于aux文件，读入该bbl文件时不打印任何东西，仅是将数据存入内存中。
3. 运行`latex`: 第二次运行，bbl文件在文档正文开始的时候处理，类似于aux文件。从这开始，所有参考文献数据都已在内存中，所以所有的引用都可以正确打印。<sup>36</sup> 引用命令不仅可以访问预定义的标签，还可以访问完整的参考文献数据。参考文献表由内存中的相同数据生成，可以根据需要进行筛选和划分。

我们再次考虑上面给出的条目样例：

```

@Book{companion,
  author    = {Michel Goossens and Frank Mittelbach and Alexander Samarin
    ↪ },
  title     = {The LaTeX Companion},
  publisher = {Addison-Wesley},
  address   = {Reading, Mass.},
  year      = {1994},
}

```

使用 Biblatex 及 Biber 后端程序，这一条目实际上以如下格式输出：

<sup>36</sup>如果`defernumbers`包选项打开，Biblatex 以类似于传统过程的一种算法来生成顺序制标签。这种情况下，这些数字在参考文献表打印的时候指定且需从后端程序辅助文件中回收。因此需要额外运行一次 LaTeX 以在标注中获得它们。

```

\entry{companion}{book}{}
  \labelname{author}{3}{}{%
    {{uniquename=0,hash=...}{Goossens}{G.}{Michel}{M.}{}{}{}{}}%
    {{uniquename=0,hash=...}{Mittelbach}{M.}{Frank}{F.}{}{}{}{}}%
    {{uniquename=0,hash=...}{Samarin}{S.}{Alexander}{A.}{}{}{}{}}%
  }
  \name{author}{3}{}{%
    {{uniquename=0,hash=...}{Goossens}{G.}{Michel}{M.}{}{}{}{}}%
    {{uniquename=0,hash=...}{Mittelbach}{M.}{Frank}{F.}{}{}{}{}}%
    {{uniquename=0,hash=...}{Samarin}{S.}{Alexander}{A.}{}{}{}{}}%
  }
  \list{publisher}{1}{}%
    {Addison-Wesley}%
  }
  \list{location}{1}{}%
    {Reading, Mass.}%
  }
  \field{title}{The LaTeX Companion}
  \field{year}{1994}
\endentry

```

由这一例子可见，某种程度上说结构化的数据构成了bbl文件内容<sup>37</sup>。从这点上说，没有任何关于参考文献条目最终格式的决定。而参考文献表和引用标注的格式化由 LaTeX 宏控制，这些宏定义在参考文献和引用样式文件中。

## 4.2 参考文献样式

一个参考文献样式是用于控制打印参考文献表中条目的宏的集合，定义在扩展名为bbx的文件中。Biblatex 包在其结尾加载所选择的参考文献样式文件。需要注意：一些由多个标准样式文件共享的常用宏定义在biblatex.def 文件中。该文件同样在包结尾加载，但先于参考文献样式文件。

### 4.2.1 参考文献样式文件 Bibliography Style Files

在我们讨论参考文献样式的各部分之前，考虑一个典型的bbx文件总体结构，如下：

```

\ProvidesFile{example.bbx}[2006/03/15 v1.0 biblatex bibliography style]

\defbibenvironment{bibliography}
  {...}
  {...}

```

<sup>37</sup>这里应该是 bbl 文件而不是原文的 bib 文件



```

    {...}
\defbibenvironment{shorthand}
    {...}
    {...}
    {...}
\InitializeBibliographyStyle{...}
\DeclareBibliographyDriver{article}{...}
\DeclareBibliographyDriver{book}{...}
\DeclareBibliographyDriver{inbook}{...}
...
\DeclareBibliographyDriver{shorthand}{...}
\endinput

```

参考文献样式文件的主要结构包含如下命令:

`\RequireBibliographyStyle{⟨style⟩}`

该命令是可选的, 用于指定一些建立在更一般的参考文献样式上的特殊样式。该命令加载样式文件 `style.bbx`。

`\InitializeBibliographyStyle{⟨code⟩}`

该命令在参考文献表开始之前插入任意给定的 `⟨code⟩`, 但在参考文献表所形成的组内。该命令是可选的。它对于不同的参考文献驱动共享一些定义是有用的, 但不能用于参考文献组外。记住, 文档中可以有多个参考文献表, 如果参考文献驱动进行了任何全局设置, 应在下一个参考文献开始前重设<sup>38</sup>。

`\DeclareBibliographyDriver{⟨entrytype⟩}{⟨code⟩}`

定义一个参考文献驱动。一个驱动 ‘driver’ 是一个宏用于控制某一具体的参考文献条目 (当打印参考文献表的时候) 或者某一具体命名了的参考文献表 (当打印多个参考文献表的时候)。 `⟨entrytype⟩` 与 `bib` 文件中使用的条目类型对应, 以小写字母给出 (见 § 2.1)。 `⟨entrytype⟩` 变量可以是一个星号。这种情况下, 该驱动退化为没有具体驱动的条目类型。 `⟨code⟩` 是任意代码用于打印各自 `⟨entrytype⟩` 的参考文献条目。该命令是必须的。每个参考文献样式都应提供所用到的每类条目的驱动。

`\DeclareBibliographyAlias{⟨alias⟩}{⟨entrytype⟩}`

如果一个参考文献驱动用于处理多个参考文献条目类型, 该命令可以用来定义某类已经定义驱动的 `⟨entrytype⟩` 别名。 `⟨alias⟩` 选项可以是一个星号, 这种情况下, 该驱动用于那些没有指定驱动的参考文献条目。 If a bibliography driver covers more than one entry type, this command may be used to define an alias where `⟨entrytype⟩` is the name of a defined driver. This command is optional. The `⟨alias⟩` argument may also be an asterisk. In this case, the `⟨entrytype⟩` driver serves as a fallback which is used if no specific driver for an entry has been defined.

---

<sup>38</sup>这里不是很理解

`\DeclareBibliographyOption[⟨datatype⟩]{⟨key⟩}[⟨value⟩]{⟨code⟩}`

This command defines additional preamble options in  $\langle key \rangle = \langle value \rangle$  format. The  $\langle key \rangle$  is the option key. The  $\langle code \rangle$  is arbitrary TeX code to be executed whenever the option is used. The value passed to the option is passed on to the  $\langle code \rangle$  as #1. The optional  $\langle value \rangle$  is a default value to be used if the bare key is given without any value. This is useful for boolean switches. The  $\langle datatype \rangle$  is the datatype for the option. If omitted, it defaults to ‘boolean’. For example, with a definition like the following:

```
\DeclareBibliographyOption[boolean]{somekey}[true]{...}
```

giving ‘somekey’ without a value is equivalent to ‘somekey=true’. Valid  $\langle datatype \rangle$  values are defined in the default Biber Datamodel as:

```
\DeclareDatamodelConstant[type=list]{optiondatatypes}{boolean,integer,  
↪ string,xml}
```

`\DeclareEntryOption[⟨datatype⟩]{⟨key⟩}[⟨value⟩]{⟨code⟩}`

Similar to `\DeclareBibliographyOption` but defines options which are settable on a per-entry basis in the options field from § 2.2.3. The  $\langle code \rangle$  is executed whenever Biblatex prepares the data of the entry for use by a citation command or a bibliography driver.

#### 4.2.2 参考文献环境 Bibliography Environments

除了定义参考文献驱动，参考文献样式也要定义参考文献环境用于控制参考文献表的输出。这些环境由命令`\defbibenvironment`名义。默认情况下，`\printbibliography`使用`bibliography`环境。下面是一个适用于不打印标签的参考文献样式的环境定义：Apart from defining bibliography drivers, the bibliography style is also responsible for the environments which control the layout of the bibliography and bibliography lists. These environments are defined with `\defbibenvironment`. By default, `\printbibliography` uses the environment `bibliography`. Here is a definition suitable for a bibliography style which does not print any labels in the bibliography:

```
\defbibenvironment{bibliography}  
{\list  
  {}  
  {\setlength{\leftmargin}{\bibhang}%  
   \setlength{\itemindent}{-\leftmargin}%  
   \setlength{\itemsep}{\bibitemsep}%  
   \setlength{\parsep}{\bibparsep}}}  
\endlist}  
\item}
```

该定义使用 Biblatex 提供的 `\bibhang` 尺寸, 应用了一个带悬挂缩进的 `list` 环境。它允许使用 `\bibitemsep` 和 `\bibparsep` 来实现一定程度的布局调整, Biblatex 提供的这两个尺寸就是为了该目的 (见 § 4.10.3)。作者年制 (authoryear) 和作者题名制 (authortitle) 的参考文献样式使用类似于该例的定义。This definition employs a `list` environment with hanging indentation, using the `\bibhang` length register provided by Biblatex. It allows for a certain degree of configurability by using `\bibitemsep` and `\bibparsep`, two length registers provided by Biblatex for this very purpose (see § 4.10.3). The authoryear and authortitle bibliography styles use a definition similar to this example.

```
\defbibenvironment{bibliography}
{
  \list
    {\printfield[labelnumberwidth]{labelnumber}}
    {\setlength{\labelwidth}{\labelnumberwidth}%
     \setlength{\leftmargin}{\labelwidth}%
     \setlength{\labelsep}{\biblabelsep}%
     \addtolength{\leftmargin}{\labelsep}%
     \setlength{\itemsep}{\bibitemsep}%
     \setlength{\parsep}{\bibparsep}}%
    {\renewcommand*{\makelabel}[1]{\hss##1}}
  \endlist
}{\item}
```

一些参考文献样式在参考文献列表中打印标签。比如, 设计一个顺序引用格式的参考文献样式需要在参考文献表的每个条目前面打印顺序数字, 这样参考文献看起来就像一个顺序列表。在第一个例子中, `\list` 命令的第一个参数是空的。在这个例子中, 我们需要在其中插入数字, 这些数字由 Biblatex 的 `labelnumber` 域中的数字提供。我们也应用 Biblatex 提供的几个尺寸和工具, 详见 §§ 4.10.4 和 4.10.5。顺序制 (numeric) 参考文献样式使用如上的定义。除 `labelnumber` 由 `labelalpha` 代替和 `labelnumberwidth` 由 `labelalphawidth` 代替外, 顺序字母制 (alphabetic) 的样式也是类似的。Some bibliography styles print labels in the bibliography. For example, a bibliography style designed for a numeric citation scheme will print the number of every entry such that the bibliography looks like a numbered list. In the first example, the first argument to `\list` was empty. In this example, we need it to insert the number, which is provided by Biblatex in the `labelnumber` field. We also employ several length registers and other facilities provided by Biblatex, see §§ 4.10.4 和 4.10.5 for details. The numeric bibliography style uses the definition given above. The alphabetic style is similar, except that `labelnumber` is replaced by `labelalpha` and `labelnumberwidth` by `labelalphawidth`.

各参考文献表以类似方式处理。`\printbiblist` 命令默认使用以 `bibliography list` 命名的环境 (当使用 BibTeX 时, `\printshorthands` 总是使用 `shorthand` 环境)。一个典型的例子如下, 其中的尺寸和工具定义详见第 §§ 4.10.4 和 4.10.5 节。Bibliography lists are handled in a similar way. `\printbiblist` uses the environment named

after the bibliography list by default. A typical example is given below. See §§ 4.10.4 and 4.10.5 for details on the length registers and facilities used in this example.

```
\defbibenvironment{shorthand}
{
  \list
    {
      \printfield{shorthandwidth}{shorthand}}
    {
      \setlength{\labelwidth}{\shorthandwidth}%
      \setlength{\leftmargin}{\labelwidth}%
      \setlength{\labelsep}{\biblabelsep}%
      \addtolength{\leftmargin}{\labelsep}%
      \setlength{\itemsep}{\bibitemsep}%
      \setlength{\parsep}{\bibparsep}%
      \renewcommand*{\makelabel}[1]{##1\hss}}
  \endlist
}
{\item}
```

### 4.2.3 参考文献驱动 Bibliography Drivers

在我们讨论 Biblatex 包的数据接口命令前，了解一下参考文献驱动的结构是有益的。注意，虽然下面给出的例子是大大简化的，但仍具有说明意义。为可读性考虑，我们忽略了一些可能是@book条目的域，并且简化处理没有忽略的域。主要是为了说明驱动的结构。关于 BibTeX 文件的格式域与 Biblatex 包的数据类型的映射信息，见 § 2.2。Before we go over the commands which form the data interface of the Biblatex package, it may be instructive to have a look at the structure of a bibliography driver. Note that the example given below is greatly simplified, but still functional. For the sake of readability, we omit several fields which may be part of a @book entry and also simplify the handling of those which are considered. The main point is to give you an idea of how a driver is structured. For information about the mapping of the BibTeX file format fields to Biblatex's data types, see § 2.2.

```
\DeclareBibliographyDriver{book}{%
  \printnames{author}%
  \newunit\newblock
  \printfield{title}%
  \newunit\newblock
  \printlist{publisher}%
  \newunit
  \printlist{location}%
  \newunit
  \printfield{year}%
  \finentry}
```

标准的参考文献样式应用两个参考文献宏 `begentry` 和 `finentry`。The standard bibliography styles employ two bibliography macros `begentry` and `finentry`:

```
\DeclareBibliographyDriver{entrytype}{%  
  \usebibmacro{begentry}  
  ...  
  \usebibmacro{finentry}}
```

作为默认的定义。with the default definitions

```
\newbibmacro*{begentry}{}  
\newbibmacro*{finentry}{\finentry}
```

推荐使用这两个宏，因为方便在驱动开始或结束时使用钩子。Use of these macros is recommended for easy hooks into the beginning and end of the driver.

回到上述给出 `book` 条目类型的驱动，我们发现有一些缺省：即 `\printnames`, `\printlist`, 和 `\printfield` 命令所使用的格式命令。为了说明一个格式话指令是什么，这里给出上述驱动举例中所使用虚构指令。域的格式是直接的，域的值直接作为参数传递给格式命令，并根据需要格式化。下面的指令简单地将输入参数用一个 `\emph` 命令包裹：Returning to the driver for the `book` entrytype above, there is still one piece missing: the formatting directives used by `\printnames`, `\printlist`, and `\printfield`. To give you an idea of what a formatting directive looks like, here are some fictional ones used by our sample driver. Field formats are straightforward, the value of the field is passed to the formatting directive as an argument which may be formatted as desired. The following directive will simply wrap its argument in an `\emph` command:

```
\DeclareFieldFormat{title}{\emph{#1}}
```

列表格式则要复杂一些。在将列表划分为独立的项后，Biblatex 将对列表中的每一项执行格式化命令。各项作为参数传递给格式化命令。列表中各项间的分隔符由相应的命令控制，因此我们必须在插入分隔符前要检查是否在列表中或者是列表末尾。List formats are slightly more complex. After splitting up the list into individual items, Biblatex will execute the formatting directive once for every item in the list. The item is passed to the directive as an argument. The separator to be inserted between the individual items in the list is also handled by the corresponding directive, hence we have to check whether we are in the middle of the list or at the end when inserting it.

```
\DeclareListFormat{location}{%  
  #1%  
  \ifthenelse{\value{listcount}<\value{liststop}}  
    {\addcomma\space}  
  {}}
```

姓名 (name) 的格式化命令类似于这种抄录列表，但列表中的单个项是姓名，因此需要自动的解析为姓名的不同组成部分。列表格式化命令对列表中每个姓名都执行一次，信吗的各个部分以分开的参数传递给该命令。比如，`#1` 是姓 (last name) 和 `#3` 是名 (first name)。下面给出一个简化的格式化命令例子：上述各格式化命令调换了第一个作者的姓名前后顺序 (“Last, First”)，而其余姓名则是常规顺序 (“First Last”)。注意：必须要保证提供的姓名部分是姓 (last name)，因此我们必须检查实际数据中姓名的哪些部分是存在的。如果姓名的一些部分不存在，则相关的变量就为空。如同抄录列表的命令，在各独立项之间插入的分隔符也由格式化命令控制，因为我们也要检查是否处于列表中还是在其末尾，这也是第二个 `\ifthenelse` 命令做的事情。Formatting directives for names are similar to those for literal lists.

Names depend on the datamodel constant ‘nameparts’ which has the default definition:

```
\DeclareDatamodelConstant[type=list]{nameparts}
                                {prefix,family,suffix,given}
```

This can be customised to add more name parts to deal with things like patronymics (see the example file `93-nameparts.tex`). Naturally this needs an extended name format for data sources. `biblatexml` (§ ??) handles this natively and there is an extended name format which can handle custom nameparts available when using Biber (see Biber documentation).

Inside name formats, the nameparts constant declaration makes available two macros for each name part defined in the datamodel:

```
\namepart<namepart>
\namepart<namepart>i
```

The name formatting directive is executed once for each name in the name list. Here is an example:

```
\DeclareNameFormat{author}{%
  \ifthenelse{\value{listcount}=1}
    {\namepartfamily%
      \ifblank{\namepartgiven}{}{\addcomma\space\namepartgiven}}
    {\ifblank{\namepartgiven}{}{\namepartgiven\space}%
      \namepartfamily}%
  \ifthenelse{\value{listcount}<\value{liststop}}
    {\addcomma\space}
  {}}
```

The above directive reverses the name of the first author (“Last, First”) and prints the remaining names in their regular sequence (“First Last”). Note that the only component which is guaranteed to be available is the last name, hence we have to check which

parts of the name are actually present. If a certain name part is not available, the corresponding macro will be empty. As with directives for literal lists, the separator to be inserted between the individual items in the name list is also handled by the formatting directive, hence we have to check whether we are in the middle of the list or at the end when inserting it. This is what the second `\ifthenelse` test does.

#### 4.2.4 特殊域 Special Fields

下面的列表和域用于 Biblatex 传递数据给参考文献驱动和引用命令。它们由包自动定义，并不是用于 bib 文件。从参考文献和引用样式的角度，它们与 bib 中的域并没有什么不同。

The following lists and fields are used by Biblatex to pass data to bibliography drivers and citation commands. They are not used in bib files but defined automatically by the package. From the perspective of a bibliography or citation style, they are not different from the fields in a bib file.

##### 4.2.4.1 一般域 Generic Fields

`<datatype>dateunspecified` 域 (string)

If `<datatype>date` held an EDTF 5.2.2 ‘unspecified’, this field will be set to one of `yearindecade`, `yearincentury`, `monthinyear`, `dayinmonth` or `dayinyear` which specifies the granularity of the unspecified information. These strings can be tested for and along with the date ranges which are automatically created for such ‘unspecified’ dates, a style may choose to format the date in a special way. See § 2.3.8. For example, an entry with dates such as:

```
@book{key,
  date      = {19uu},
  origdate  = {199u}
}
```

would result in the same information in the .bbl as:

```
@book{key,
  date      = {1900/1999},
  origdate  = {1990/1999}
}
```

but would additionally have the field `dateunspecified` set to ‘yearincentury’ and `origdateunspecified` set to ‘yearindecade’. This information could be used to render the date as perhaps ‘20th century’ and `origdate` as ‘The 1990s’, information which cannot be derived from the date ranges alone. Since such auto-generated ranges have a known values, given the ‘unspecified’ meta-information, it is relatively easy to use the range values to format special cases. While the standard styles not do this, examples are given in the file `96-dates.tex`.

`entrykey` 域 (string)

`bib`文件中某一项的 `entry key`。这是一个字符串，用于 Biblatex 及其后端程序确定文件中的一个条目。The entry key of an item in the bib file. This is the string used by Biblatex and the backend to identify an entry in the bib file.

`childentrykey` 域 (string)

当引用一个条目集的子条目时，Biblatex 给引用数据提供了父`@set`条目的数据。这意味着`entrykey`表示的是父条目的关键词。而子条目的关键词在`childentrykey`域中提供。该域仅在引用一个条目集的某一子条目时使用。When citing a subentry of an entry set, Biblatex provides the data of the parent `@set` entry to citation commands. This implies that the `entrykey` field holds the entry key of the parent. The entry key of the child entry being cited is provided in the `childentrykey` field. This field is only available when citing a subentry of an entry set.

`labelnamesource` 域 (literal)

Holds the name of the field used to populate `labelname`, determined by `\DeclareLabelname`.

`labeltitlesource` 域 (literal)

Holds the name of the field used to populate `labeltitle`, determined by `\DeclareLabeltitle`.

`labeldatesource` 域 (literal)

Holds one of:

- The prefix coming before ‘date’ of the date field name chosen by `\DeclareLabeldate`
- The name of a field
- A literal or localisation string

Normally holds the prefix coming before ‘date’ of the date field name chosen by `\DeclareLabeldate`. For example, if the `labeldate` field is `eventdate`, then `labeldatesource` will be ‘event’. In case `\DeclareLabeldate` selects the date field, then `labeldatesource` will be defined but will be an empty string as the prefix coming before ‘date’ in the date label name is empty. This is so that the contents of `labeldatesource` can be used in constructing references to the field which `\DeclareLabeldate` chooses. Since `\DeclareLabeldate` can also select literal strings for fallbacks, `labeldatesource` may not refer to a field or may be undefined. Bear in mind that `\DeclareLabeldate` can also be used to select non-date fields as a fallback and so `labeldatesource` might contain a field name. So, in summary, the rules are

```
\iffieldundef{labeldatesource}
```



```

{}% \DeclareLabeldate package option is not set
{\iffieldundef{\thefield{labeldatesource}year}
  % \DeclareLabeldate resolved to either a literal/localisation
  % string or a non-date field since
  % if a date is defined by a date field, there is
  % at least a year
  {\iffieldundef{\thefield{labeldatesource}}
    {}% \DeclareLabeldate resolved to a literal/localisation string
    {}% \DeclareLabeldate resolved to a non-date field
  }
  {} % \DeclareLabeldate resolved a date field name prefix like "" or
  ↪ "orig"
}

```

**entrytype** 域 (string)

条目类型 (@book, @inbook, 等), 以小写字母给出。The entry type (@book, @inbook, etc.), given in lowercase letters.

**childentrytype** 域 (string)

当引用一个条目集的子条目时, Biblatex 给引用命令提供父集条目的数据。这意味着entrytype保存父条目的类型。子条目的类型则由childentrytype域提供。该域仅在引用一个条目集的子条目时使用。When citing a subentry of an entry set, Biblatex provides the data of the parent @set entry to citation commands. This implies that the entrytype field holds the entry type of the parent. The entry type of the child entry being cited is provided in the childentrytype field. This field is only available when citing a subentry of an entry set.

**entrysetcount** 域 (integer)

该域保存的整数用于指明一个集中某个集成员的位置 (起始值是 1)。该域仅对一个条目集的子条目有用。This field holds an integer indicating the position of a set member in the entry set (starting at 1). This field is only available in the subentries of an entry set.

**hash** 域 (string)

该域非常特殊, 仅在姓名格式化命令中使用。它保存一个 hash 字符串, 用于唯一的确定姓名列表中的单个姓名。该信息对于姓名列表中的所有姓名都有提供。另外参见namehash和fullhash。This field is special in that it is only available locally in name formatting directives. It holds a hash string which uniquely identifies individual names in a name list. This information is available for all names in all name lists. See also namehash and fullhash.

**namehash** 域 (string)

一个 hash 字符串用于唯一确定labelname列表。这对再现检查很有用。比如，一个将再次出现的作者和编者用一个类似‘idem’ 的字符串代替的引用样式，可以用\savefield命令保存namehash域，并将其用于后面\iffieldequals(见 §§ 4.6.1 和 4.6.2) 命令的比较中。namehash域通过labelname列表的截短得到，即它的结果与maxnames和minnames选项相关。另外参见hash和fullhash。A hash string which uniquely identifies the labelname list. This is useful for recurrence checks. For example, a citation style which replaces recurrent authors or editors with a string like ‘idem’ could save the namehash field with \savefield and use it in a comparison with \iffieldequals later (see §§ 4.6.1 和 4.6.2). The namehash is derived from the truncated labelname list, i. e., it is responsive to maxnames and minnames. See also hash and fullhash.

<namelist>namehash 域 (string)

As namehash for the name list called ‘namelist’.

**fullhash** 域 (string)

一个 hash 字符串用于唯一确定labelname列表。该域域namehash有两点不同:1. 产生 hash 时忽略shortauthor和shorteditor列表。2. 该 hash 指的是完整的列表，忽略maxnames和minnames选项。另外见hash和namehash。A hash string which uniquely identifies the labelname list. This fields differs from namehash in two details: 1) The shortauthor and shorteditor lists are ignored when generating the hash. 2) The hash always refers to the full list, ignoring maxnames and minnames. See also hash and namehash.

<namelist>fullhash 域 (string)

As fullhash for the name list called ‘namelist’.

**pageref** 列表 (literal)

如果backref包选项打开，该域保存各被引用条目所在页的页码。如果文档中有refsection环境，反向引用是针对当前参考文献节的。If the backref package option is enabled, this list holds the page numbers of the pages on which the respective bibliography entry is cited. If there are refsection environments in the document, the back references are local to the reference sections.

**sortinit** 域 (literal)

该域保存用于排序的信息首字符。使用 BibTeX 时，该域也用来代替sortinithash域。This field holds the initial character of the information used during sorting.

**sortinithash** 域 (string)

使用 Biber 时，该域保存排序字符串的第一个扩展字素集群(基本上是第一个字符)的 Unicode 排序规则算法主要权重的 hash 值。当按照字母表顺序划分参考文献列

表时很有用，该域有内部`\bibinitsep`所使用。(见 § 3.9.3) This field holds a hash of the (locale-specific) Unicode Collation Algorithm primary weight of the first extended grapheme cluster (essentially the first character) of the string used during sorting. This is useful when subdividing the bibliography alphabetically and is used internally by `\bibinitsep` (see § 3.9.3).

`clonesourcekey` 域 (string)

该域保存复制条目源条目的关键词。复制条目常用于处理相关条目和`related`域。This field holds the entry key of the entry from which an entry was cloned. Clones are created for entries which are mentioned in `related` fields as part of related entry processing, for example.

#### 4.2.4.2 引用标签中使用的域

`labelalpha` 域 (literal)

当使用 BibTeX 为后端程序时，生成一个类似于传统 BibTeX 的`alpha.bst`样式的标签。这一默认标签由抽取`labelname`列表的首字母加上出版年的最后两个数字构成。`label`域可用来重写它的非数值部分 (non-numeric portion)。如果定义了`label`域，Biblatex 将使用它的值加上出版年的后两个数字生成`labelalpha`。`shorthand`域也可用来重写整个标签。如果定义了该域，`labelalpha`就是`shorthand`域，而不是一个自动生成的标签。使用 Biber 时，用户可以定义用来构建字母顺序标签的模板 (见 § 4.5.5)，而默认的模板域上面 `bibtex` 后端程序使用的格式相同。一个完整的字母顺序 (‘alphabetic’) 标签由以下域构成: A label similar to the labels generated by the `alpha.bst` style of traditional BibTeX. This default label consists of initials drawn from the `labelname` list plus the last two digits of the publication year. The `label` field may be used to override its non-numeric portion. If the `label` field is defined, Biblatex will use its value and append the last two digits of the publication year when generating `labelalpha`. The `shorthand` field may be used to override the entire label. If defined, `labelalpha` is the shorthand rather than an automatically generated label. Users can specify a template used to construct the alphabetic label (see § 4.5.5) and the default template mirrors the format mentioned for `bibtex` above. A complete ‘alphabetic’ label consists of the fields `labelalpha` plus `extraalpha`. Note that the `labelalpha` and `extraalpha` fields need to be requested with the package option `labelalpha` (§ 3.1.2.3). See also `extraalpha` as well as `\labelalphaothers` in § 3.9.1.

Biber only

`extraalpha` 域 (integer)

当参考文献中包含同一作者同一年出版的多个引文时，‘alphabetic’ 引用格式常需要一个额外的字母加入标签来区分。这种情况下`extraalpha`域保存一个整数可用命令 `\mknumalph` 转换成字母或以其他方式格式化。该域类似于在作者年 (author-year) 格式中`extrayear`的作用。完整的 ‘alphabetic’ 的标签由`labelalpha` 加 `extraalpha`构成。注意`labelalpha`和 `extraalpha`域需要打开包选项 `labelalpha`(详见 § 3.1.2.3)。另外参见 `labelalpha`和 § 3.9.1的`\labelalphaothers`。表5总结了不同

的extra\*非歧义计数器和他们追踪的信息。The ‘alphabetic’ citation scheme usually requires a letter to be appended to the label if the bibliography contains two or more works by the same author which were all published in the same year. In this case, the `extraalpha` field holds an integer which may be converted to a letter with `\mknumalph` or formatted in some other way. This field is similar to the role of `extrayear` in the author-year scheme. A complete ‘alphabetic’ label consists of the fields `labelalpha` plus `extraalpha`. Note that the `labelalpha` and `extraalpha` fields need to be requested with the package option `labelalpha`, see § 3.1.2.3 for details. See also `labelalpha` as well as `\labelalphaothers` in § 3.9.1. Table 5 summarises the various extra\* disambiguation counters and what they track.

`labelname` 列表 (name)

引用中打印的姓名。该列表可以是`shortauthor`, `author`, `shorteditor`, `editor`, 或`translator`域的复制值, 正常情况以该顺序检测。如果没有作者 (authors) 和编者 (authors), 该列表时未定义的。注意该列表也与`use<name>`相关, 见 § 3.1.3。引用样式打印引用中的姓名时使用这一列表。提供该列表仅为方便起见, 没有附加的意义。使用 Biber 时, 该域可以定制, 详见 § 4.5.10。The name to be printed in citations. This list is a copy of either the `shortauthor`, the `author`, the `shorteditor`, the `editor`, or the `translator` list, which are normally checked for in this order. If no authors and editors are available, this list is undefined. Note that this list is also responsive to the `use<name>`, options, see § 3.1.3. Citation styles should use this list when printing the name in a citation. This list is provided for convenience only and does not carry any additional meaning. This field may be customized. See § 4.5.10 for details.

Biber only

`labelnumber` 域 (literal)

参考文献条目的序号, 用于顺序编码类的样式。如果定义了`shorthand`域, Biblatex 不再给各条目赋予一个数值。这种情况下, `labelnumber`就是 `shorthand` 而不是一个数字。顺序编码类的样式必须使用该域的值而不是一个计数器值。注意: 该域需要打开包选项`labelnumber`, 详见 § 3.1.2.3。另可参见 § 3.1.2.1节的`defernumbers`选项。The number of the bibliography entry, as required by numeric citation schemes. If the `shorthand` field is defined, Biblatex does not assign a number to the respective entry. In this case `labelnumber` is the shorthand rather than a number. Numeric styles must use the value of this field instead of a counter. Note that this field needs to be requested with the package option `labelnumber`, see § 3.1.2.3 for details. Also see the package option `defernumbers` in § 3.1.2.1.

`labelprefix` 域 (literal)

If the `labelprefix` option of `\newrefcontext` has been set in order to prefix all entries in a subbibliography with a fixed string, this string is available in the `labelprefix` field of all affected entries. If no prefix has been set, the `labelprefix` field of the respective entry is undefined. See the `labelprefix` option of `\newrefcontext` in § 3.6.11 for details. If the `shorthand` field is defined, Biblatex does not assign the prefix to the `labelprefix` field of the respective entry. In this case, the `labelprefix` field is undefined.

`labeltitle` 域 (literal)

The printable title of a work. In some circumstances, a style might need to choose a title from a list of a possible title fields. For example, citation styles printing short titles may want to print the `shorttitle` field if it exists but otherwise print the `title` field. The list of fields to be considered when constructing `labeltitle` may be customized. See § 4.5.10 for details. Note that the `extratitle` field needs to be requested with the package option `labeltitle`, see § 3.1.2.3 for details. See also `extratitle`. Note also that the `extratitleyear` field needs to be requested with the package option `labeltitleyear`. See also `extratitleyear`.

`extratitle` 域 (integer)

It is sometimes useful, for example in author-title citation schemes, to be able to disambiguate works with the same title. For works by the same `labelname` with the same `labeltitle`, the `extratitle` field holds an integer which may be converted to a letter with `\mknumalph` or formatted in some other way (or it can be merely used as a flag to say that some other field such as a date should be used in conjunction with the `labeltitle` field). This field is undefined if there is only one work with the same `labeltitle` by the same `labelname` in the bibliography. Note that the `extratitle` field needs to be requested with the package option `labeltitle`, see § 3.1.2.3 for details. See also `labeltitle`. Table 5 summarises the various `extra*` disambiguation counters and what they track.

`extratitleyear` 域 (integer)

It is sometimes useful, for example in author-title citation schemes, to be able to disambiguate works with the same title in the same year but with no author. For works with the same `labeltitle` and with the same `labelyear`, the `extratitleyear` field holds an integer which may be converted to a letter with `\mknumalph` or formatted in some other way (or it can be merely used as a flag to say that some other field such as a publisher should be used in conjunction with the `labelyear` field). This field is undefined if there is only one work with the same `labeltitle` and `labelyear` in the bibliography. Note that the `extratitleyear` field needs to be requested with the package option `labeltitleyear`, see § 3.1.2.3 for details. See also `labeltitleyear`. Table 5 summarises the various `extra*` disambiguation counters and what they track.

`labelyear` 域 (literal)

The year of the date field selected by `\DeclareLabeldate` (§ 4.5.10) or the `year` field, for use in author-year labels. A complete author-year label consists of the fields `labelyear` plus `extrayear`. Note that the `labelyear` and `extrayear` fields need to be requested with the package option `labeldateparts`, see § 3.1.2.3 for details. See also `extrayear`.

`labelendyear` 域 (literal)

The end year of the date field selected by `\DeclareLabeldate` (§ 4.5.10) if the selected date is a range.

`labelmonth` 域 (datepart)

The month of the date field selected by `\DeclareLabeldate` (§ 4.5.10), or the month field for use in author-year labels. Note that the `labelmonth` field needs to be requested with the package option `labeldateparts`, see § 3.1.2.3 for details.

`labelendmonth` 域 (datepart)

The end month of the date field selected by `\DeclareLabeldate` (§ 4.5.10) if the selected date is a range.

`labelday` 域 (datepart)

The month of the date field selected by `\DeclareLabeldate` (§ 4.5.10) for use in author-year labels. Note that the `labelday` field needs to be requested with the package option `labeldateparts`, see § 3.1.2.3 for details.

`labelendday` 域 (datepart)

The end day of the date field selected by `\DeclareLabeldate` (§ 4.5.10) if the selected date is a range.

`extrayear` 域 (integer)

The author-year citation scheme usually requires a letter to be appended to the year if the bibliography contains two or more works by the same author which were all published in the same year. In this case, the `extrayear` field holds an integer which may be converted to a letter with `\mknumalph` or formatted in some other way. This field is undefined if there is only one work by the author in the bibliography or if all works by the author have different publication years. A complete author-year label consists of the fields `labelyear` plus `extrayear`. Note that the `labelyear` and `extrayear` fields need to be requested with the package option `labeldateparts`, see § 3.1.2.3 for details. See also `labelyear`. Table 5 summarises the various `extra*` disambiguation counters and what they track.

**4.2.4.3 date 的组成域** Note that it is possible to define new date fields in the data-model which behave exactly like the default data model date fields described in this section.

See 表 8 for an overview of how the date fields in `bib` files are related to the date fields provided by the style interface. When testing for a field like `origdate` in a style, use code like:

```
\iffieldundef{origyear}{...}{...}
```

This will tell you if the corresponding date is defined at all. This test:

```
\iffieldundef{origendyear}{...}{...}
```

will tell you if the corresponding date is defined and a (fully specified) range. This test:

```
\iffieldequalstr{origendyear}{}{...}{...}
```

will tell you if the corresponding date is defined and an open-ended range. Open-ended ranges are indicated by an empty endyear component (as opposed to an undefined endyear component). See § 2.3.8 and 表 3 on page 42 for further examples.

| bib File |                 | Data Interface |                 |
|----------|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| Field    | Value (Example) | Field          | Value (Example) |
| date     | 1988            | day            | undefined       |
|          |                 | month          | undefined       |
|          |                 | year           | 1988            |
|          |                 | season         | undefined       |
|          |                 | endday         | undefined       |
|          |                 | endmonth       | undefined       |
|          |                 | endyear        | undefined       |
|          |                 | endseason      | undefined       |
|          |                 | hour           | undefined       |
|          |                 | minute         | undefined       |
|          |                 | second         | undefined       |
|          |                 | timezone       | undefined       |
|          |                 | endhour        | undefined       |
|          |                 | endminute      | undefined       |
|          |                 | endsecond      | undefined       |
| date     | 1997/           | endtimezone    | undefined       |
|          |                 | day            | undefined       |
|          |                 | month          | undefined       |
|          |                 | year           | 1997            |
|          |                 | season         | undefined       |
|          |                 | endday         | undefined       |
|          |                 | endmonth       | undefined       |
|          |                 | endyear        | empty           |
|          |                 | endseason      | undefined       |
|          |                 | hour           | undefined       |
|          |                 | minute         | undefined       |
|          |                 | second         | undefined       |
|          |                 | timezone       | undefined       |
|          |                 | endhour        | undefined       |
|          |                 | endminute      | undefined       |
| urldate  | 2009-01-31      | endsecond      | undefined       |
|          |                 | endtimezone    | undefined       |
|          |                 | urlday         | 31              |
|          |                 | urlmonth       | 01              |
|          |                 | urlyear        | 2009            |
|          |                 | urlseason      | undefined       |
|          |                 | urlendday      | undefined       |
|          |                 | urlendmonth    | undefined       |
|          |                 | urlendyear     | undefined       |
|          |                 | urlendseason   | undefined       |
|          |                 | urlhour        | undefined       |
|          |                 | urlminute      | undefined       |
|          |                 | urlsecond      | undefined       |
|          |                 | urltimezone    | undefined       |
|          |                 | urlendhour     | undefined       |
|          |                 | urlendminute   | undefined       |
|          |                 | urlendsecond   | undefined       |

|          |                                             |                |           |
|----------|---------------------------------------------|----------------|-----------|
| urldate  | 2009-01-31T15:34:04Z                        | urlendtimezone | undefined |
|          |                                             | urlday         | 31        |
|          |                                             | urlmonth       | 01        |
|          |                                             | urlyear        | 2009      |
|          |                                             | urlseason      | undefined |
|          |                                             | urlendday      | undefined |
|          |                                             | urlendmonth    | undefined |
|          |                                             | urlendyear     | undefined |
|          |                                             | urlendseason   | undefined |
|          |                                             | urlhour        | 15        |
|          |                                             | urlminute      | 34        |
|          |                                             | urlsecond      | 04        |
|          |                                             | urltimezone    | Z         |
|          |                                             | urlendhour     | undefined |
| urldate  | 2009-01-31T15:34:04+05:00                   | urlendminute   | undefined |
|          |                                             | urlendsecond   | undefined |
|          |                                             | urlendtimezone | undefined |
|          |                                             | urlday         | 31        |
|          |                                             | urlmonth       | 01        |
|          |                                             | urlyear        | 2009      |
|          |                                             | urlseason      | undefined |
|          |                                             | urlendday      | undefined |
|          |                                             | urlendmonth    | undefined |
|          |                                             | urlendyear     | undefined |
|          |                                             | urlendseason   | undefined |
|          |                                             | urlhour        | 15        |
|          |                                             | urlminute      | 34        |
|          |                                             | urlsecond      | 04        |
| urldate  | 2009-01-31T15:34:04/<br>2009-01-31T16:04:34 | urltimezone    | +0500     |
|          |                                             | urlendhour     | undefined |
|          |                                             | urlendminute   | undefined |
|          |                                             | urlendsecond   | undefined |
|          |                                             | urlendtimezone | undefined |
|          |                                             | urlday         | 31        |
|          |                                             | urlmonth       | 1         |
|          |                                             | urlyear        | 2009      |
|          |                                             | urlseason      | undefined |
|          |                                             | urlendday      | 31        |
|          |                                             | urlendmonth    | 1         |
|          |                                             | urlendyear     | 2009      |
|          |                                             | urlendseason   | undefined |
|          |                                             | urlhour        | 15        |
| origdate | 2002-21/2002-23                             | urlminute      | 34        |
|          |                                             | urlsecond      | 4         |
|          |                                             | urltimezone    | floating  |
|          |                                             | urlendhour     | 16        |
|          |                                             | urlendminute   | 4         |
|          |                                             | urlendsecond   | 34        |
|          |                                             | urlendtimezone | floating  |
|          |                                             | origday        | undefined |
|          |                                             | origmonth      | 01        |
|          |                                             | origyear       | 2002      |
|          |                                             | origseason     | spring    |
|          |                                             | origendday     | undefined |
|          |                                             | origendmonth   | 02        |
|          |                                             | origendyear    | 2002      |
|          |                                             | origendseason  | autumn    |
|          |                                             | orighour       | undefined |



|           |                       |                  |           |
|-----------|-----------------------|------------------|-----------|
|           |                       | origminute       | undefined |
|           |                       | origsecond       | undefined |
|           |                       | origtimezone     | undefined |
|           |                       | origendhour      | undefined |
|           |                       | origendminute    | undefined |
|           |                       | origendsecond    | undefined |
|           |                       | origendtimezone  | undefined |
| eventdate | 1995-01-31/1995-02-05 | eventday         | 31        |
|           |                       | eventmonth       | 01        |
|           |                       | eventyear        | 1995      |
|           |                       | eventseason      | undefined |
|           |                       | eventendday      | 05        |
|           |                       | eventendmonth    | 02        |
|           |                       | eventendyear     | 1995      |
|           |                       | eventendseason   | undefined |
|           |                       | eventhour        | undefined |
|           |                       | eventminute      | undefined |
|           |                       | eventsecond      | undefined |
|           |                       | eventtimezone    | undefined |
|           |                       | eventendhour     | undefined |
|           |                       | eventendminute   | undefined |
|           |                       | eventendsecond   | undefined |
|           |                       | eventendtimezone | undefined |

**Table 8: Date Interface**

|                  |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|------------------|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>hour</b>      | 域 (datepart) | This field holds the hour component of the <code>date</code> field. If the date is a range, it holds the hour component of the start date.                                                                                                 |
| <b>minute</b>    | 域 (datepart) | This field holds the minute component of the <code>date</code> field. If the date is a range, it holds the minute component of the start date.                                                                                             |
| <b>second</b>    | 域 (datepart) | This field holds the second component of the <code>date</code> field. If the date is a range, it holds the second component of the start date.                                                                                             |
| <b>timezone</b>  | 域 (datepart) | This field holds the timezone component of the <code>date</code> field. If the date is a range, it holds the timezone component of the start date.                                                                                         |
| <b>day</b>       | 域 (datepart) | This field holds the day component of the <code>date</code> field. If the date is a range, it holds the day component of the start date.                                                                                                   |
| <b>month</b>     | 域 (datepart) | This field is the month as given in the database file or it holds the month component of the <code>date</code> field. If the date is a range, it holds the month component of the start date.                                              |
| <b>year</b>      | 域 (datepart) | This field is the year as given in the database file or it holds the year component of the <code>date</code> field. If the date is a range, it holds the year component of the start date.                                                 |
| <b>season</b>    | 域 (datepart) | This field holds the season component of the <code>date</code> field as specified by EDTF 5.2.5 (§ 2.3.8). It contains a season localisation string (§ 4.9.2.21). If the date is a range, it holds the season component of the start date. |
| <b>endhour</b>   | 域 (datepart) | If the date specification in the <code>date</code> field is a range, this field holds the hour component of the end date.                                                                                                                  |
| <b>endminute</b> | 域 (datepart) | If the date specification in the <code>date</code> field is a range, this field holds the minute component of the end date.                                                                                                                |

|                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>endsecond</b>       | 域 (datepart)<br><br>If the date specification in the <code>date</code> field is a range, this field holds the second component of the end date.                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>endtimezone</b>     | 域 (datepart)<br><br>If the date specification in the <code>date</code> field is a range, this field holds the timezone component of the end date.                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>endday</b>          | 域 (datepart)<br><br>If the date specification in the <code>date</code> field is a range, this field holds the day component of the end date.                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>endmonth</b>        | 域 (datepart)<br><br>If the date specification in the <code>date</code> field is a range, this field holds the month component of the end date.                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>endyear</b>         | 域 (datepart)<br><br>If the date specification in the <code>date</code> field is a range, this field holds the year component of the end date. A blank (but defined) <code>endyear</code> component indicates an open ended <code>date</code> range.                                                                                                 |
| <b>endseason</b>       | 域 (datepart)<br><br>If the date specification in the <code>date</code> field is a range, this field holds the season component of the end date as specified by EDTF 5.2.5 (§ 2.3.8). It contains a season localisation string (§ 4.9.2.21). A blank (but defined) <code>endseason</code> component indicates an open ended <code>date</code> range. |
| <b>orighour</b>        | 域 (datepart)<br><br>This field holds the hour component of the <code>origdate</code> field. If the date is a range, it holds the hour component of the start date.                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>origminute</b>      | 域 (datepart)<br><br>This field holds the minute component of the <code>origdate</code> field. If the date is a range, it holds the minute component of the start date.                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>origsecond</b>      | 域 (datepart)<br><br>This field holds the second component of the <code>origdate</code> field. If the date is a range, it holds the second component of the start date.                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>origtimezone</b>    | 域 (datepart)<br><br>This field holds the timezone component of the <code>origdate</code> field. If the date is a range, it holds the timezone component of the start date.                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>origday</b>         | 域 (datepart)<br><br>This field holds the day component of the <code>origdate</code> field. If the date is a range, it holds the day component of the start date.                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>origmonth</b>       | 域 (datepart)<br><br>This field holds the month component of the <code>origdate</code> field. If the date is a range, it holds the month component of the start date.                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>origyear</b>        | 域 (datepart)<br><br>This field holds the year component of the <code>origdate</code> field. If the date is a range, it holds the year component of the start date.                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>origseason</b>      | 域 (datepart)<br><br>This field holds the season component of the <code>origdate</code> field as specified by EDTF 5.2.5 (§ 2.3.8). It contains a season localisation string (§ 4.9.2.21). If the date is a range, it holds the season component of the start date.                                                                                  |
| <b>origendhour</b>     | 域 (datepart)<br><br>If the date specification in the <code>origdate</code> field is a range, this field holds the hour component of the end date.                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>origendminute</b>   | 域 (datepart)<br><br>If the date specification in the <code>origdate</code> field is a range, this field holds the minute component of the end date.                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>origendsecond</b>   | 域 (datepart)<br><br>If the date specification in the <code>origdate</code> field is a range, this field holds the second component of the end date.                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>origendtimezone</b> | 域 (datepart)<br><br>If the date specification in the <code>origdate</code> field is a range, this field holds the timezone component of the end date.                                                                                                                                                                                               |

|                         |              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-------------------------|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>origendday</b>       | 域 (datepart) | If the date specification in the <b>origdate</b> field is a range, this field holds the day component of the end date.                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>origendmonth</b>     | 域 (datepart) | If the date specification in the <b>origdate</b> field is a range, this field holds the month component of the end date.                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>origendyear</b>      | 域 (datepart) | If the date specification in the <b>origdate</b> field is a range, this field holds the year component of the end date. A blank (but defined) <b>origendyear</b> component indicates an open ended <b>origdate</b> range.                                                                                                 |
| <b>origendseason</b>    | 域 (datepart) | If the date specification in the <b>origdate</b> field is a range, this field holds the season component of the end date as specified by EDTF 5.2.5 (§ 2.3.8). It contains a season localisation string (§ 4.9.2.21). A blank (but defined) <b>origendseason</b> component indicates an open ended <b>origdate</b> range. |
| <b>eventhour</b>        | 域 (datepart) | This field holds the hour component of the <b>eventdate</b> field. If the date is a range, it holds the hour component of the start date.                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>eventminute</b>      | 域 (datepart) | This field holds the minute component of the <b>eventdate</b> field. If the date is a range, it holds the minute component of the start date.                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>eventsecond</b>      | 域 (datepart) | This field holds the second component of the <b>eventdate</b> field. If the date is a range, it holds the second component of the start date.                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>eventtimezone</b>    | 域 (datepart) | This field holds the timezone component of the <b>eventdate</b> field. If the date is a range, it holds the timezone component of the start date.                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>eventday</b>         | 域 (datepart) | This field holds the day component of the <b>eventdate</b> field. If the date is a range, it holds the day component of the start date.                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>eventmonth</b>       | 域 (datepart) | This field holds the month component of the <b>eventdate</b> field. If the date is a range, it holds the month component of the start date.                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>eventyear</b>        | 域 (datepart) | This field holds the year component of the <b>eventdate</b> field. If the date is a range, it holds the year component of the start date.                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>eventseason</b>      | 域 (datepart) | This field holds the season component of the <b>eventdate</b> field as specified by EDTF 5.2.5 (§ 2.3.8). It contains a season localisation string (§ 4.9.2.21). If the date is a range, it holds the season component of the start date.                                                                                 |
| <b>eventendhour</b>     | 域 (datepart) | If the date specification in the <b>eventdate</b> field is a range, this field holds the hour component of the end date.                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>eventendminute</b>   | 域 (datepart) | If the date specification in the <b>eventdate</b> field is a range, this field holds the minute component of the end date.                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>eventendsecond</b>   | 域 (datepart) | If the date specification in the <b>eventdate</b> field is a range, this field holds the second component of the end date.                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>eventendtimezone</b> | 域 (datepart) | If the date specification in the <b>eventdate</b> field is a range, this field holds the timezone component of the end date.                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>eventendday</b>      | 域 (datepart) | If the date specification in the <b>eventdate</b> field is a range, this field holds the day component of the end date.                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>eventendmonth</b>    | 域 (datepart) | If the date specification in the <b>eventdate</b> field is a range, this field holds the month component of the end date.                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

|                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>eventendyear</b>   | 域 (datepart)<br><br>If the date specification in the <code>eventdate</code> field is a range, this field holds the year component of the end date. A blank (but defined) <code>eventendyear</code> component indicates an open ended <code>eventdate</code> range.                                                                                                 |
| <b>eventendseason</b> | 域 (datepart)<br><br>If the date specification in the <code>eventdate</code> field is a range, this field holds the season component of the end date as specified by EDTF 5.2.5 (§ 2.3.8). It contains a season localisation string (§ 4.9.2.21). A blank (but defined) <code>eventendseason</code> component indicates an open ended <code>eventdate</code> range. |
| <b>urlhour</b>        | 域 (datepart)<br><br>This field holds the hour component of the <code>urldate</code> field. If the date is a range, it holds the hour component of the start date.                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>urlminute</b>      | 域 (datepart)<br><br>This field holds the minute component of the <code>urldate</code> field. If the date is a range, it holds the minute component of the start date.                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>urlsecond</b>      | 域 (datepart)<br><br>This field holds the second component of the <code>urldate</code> field. If the date is a range, it holds the second component of the start date.                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>timezone</b>       | 域 (urldatepart)<br><br>This field holds the timezone component of the <code>urldate</code> field. If the date is a range, it holds the timezone component of the start date.                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>urlday</b>         | 域 (datepart)<br><br>This field holds the day component of the <code>urldate</code> field.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>urlmonth</b>       | 域 (datepart)<br><br>This field holds the month component of the <code>urldate</code> field.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>urlyear</b>        | 域 (datepart)<br><br>This field holds the year component of the <code>urldate</code> field.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>urlseason</b>      | 域 (datepart)<br><br>This field holds the season component of the <code>urldate</code> field as specified by EDTF 5.2.5 (§ 2.3.8). It contains a season localisation string (§ 4.9.2.21). If the date is a range, it holds the season component of the start date.                                                                                                  |
| <b>urlendhour</b>     | 域 (datepart)<br><br>If the date specification in the <code>urldate</code> field is a range, this field holds the hour component of the end date.                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>urlendminute</b>   | 域 (datepart)<br><br>If the date specification in the <code>urldate</code> field is a range, this field holds the minute component of the end date.                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>urlendsecond</b>   | 域 (datepart)<br><br>If the date specification in the <code>urldate</code> field is a range, this field holds the second component of the end date.                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>urlendtimezone</b> | 域 (datepart)<br><br>If the date specification in the <code>urldate</code> field is a range, this field holds the timezone component of the end date.                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>urlendday</b>      | 域 (datepart)<br><br>If the date specification in the <code>urldate</code> field is a range, this field holds the day component of the end date.                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>urlendmonth</b>    | 域 (datepart)<br><br>If the date specification in the <code>urldate</code> field is a range, this field holds the month component of the end date.                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>urlendyear</b>     | 域 (datepart)<br><br>If the date specification in the <code>urldate</code> field is a range, this field holds the year component of the end date. A blank (but defined) <code>urlendyear</code> component indicates an open ended <code>urldate</code> range.                                                                                                       |
| <b>urlendseason</b>   | 域 (datepart)<br><br>If the date specification in the <code>urldate</code> field is a range, this field holds the season component of the end date as specified by EDTF 5.2.5 (§ 2.3.8). It contains a season localisation string (§ 4.9.2.21). A blank (but defined) <code>urlendseason</code> component indicates an open ended <code>urldate</code> range.       |

## 4.3 标注样式 Citation Styles

标注样式是诸如`\cite`等用于打印不同类型标注的命令集。这些样式定义在后缀为`cbx`的文件中。Biblatex 在包末尾加载它们。注意：一些标准标注样式所共享的常用的宏集在`biblatex.def`文件中。这一文件也再包末尾加载，先于选择的标注样式。它也包含来自 § 3.7.5 节的命令的定义。A citation style is a set of commands such as `\cite` which print different types of citations. Such styles are defined in files with the suffix `cbx`. The Biblatex package loads the selected citation style file at the end of the package. Note that a small repertory of frequently used macros shared by several of the standard citation styles is also included in `biblatex.def`. This file is loaded at the end of the package as well, prior to the selected citation style. It also contains the definitions of the commands from § 3.7.5.

### 4.3.1 标注样式文件 Citation Style Files

在讨论标注样式文件提供的各个命令前，考虑如下一个典型的`cbx`文件的整体结构：Before we go over the individual commands available in citation style files, consider this example of the overall structure of a typical `cbx` file:

```
\ProvidesFile{example.cbx}[2006/03/15 v1.0 biblatex citation style]

\DeclareCiteCommand{\cite}{...}{...}{...}{...}
\DeclareCiteCommand{\parencite}{\mkbibparens}{...}{...}{...}{...}
\DeclareCiteCommand{\footcite}{\mkbibfootnote}{...}{...}{...}{...}
\DeclareCiteCommand{\textcite}{...}{...}{...}{...}
\endinput
```

`\RequireCitationStyle{<style>}`

这个命令是可选的，用于在一些更一般的样式基础上构建特殊的标注样式。它加载标注样式`style.cbx`。This command is optional and intended for specialized citation styles built on top of a more generic style. It loads the citation style `style.cbx`.

`\InitializeCitationStyle{<code>}`

指定初始化或重设标注样式需要的任意`<code>`。这个钩子将在包加载的时候执行一次，并且每次都使用 § 3.7.8 节的`\citereset`命令。`\citereset`命令也重设本宏包的内部标注追踪器。它会影响 § 4.6.2 节中列出的 `\cmdifciteseen`, `\ifentryseen`, `\ifciteibid`, 和 `\ifciteidem` 等判断。当使用`refsection`环境时，标注追踪器重设当前的`refsection`局部环境。Specifies arbitrary `<code>` required to initialize or reset the citation style. This hook will be executed once at package load-time and every time the `\citereset` command from § 3.7.8 is used. The `\citereset` command also resets the internal citation trackers of this package. The reset will affect the `\ifciteseen`, `\ifentryseen`, `\ifciteibid`, and `\ifciteidem` tests discussed in § 4.6.2. When used in a `refsection` environment, the reset of the citation tracker is local to the current `refsection` environment.

`\OnManualCitation{<code>}`指定标注样式部分重设需要的任意`<code>`。这一钩子将在 § 3.7.8 中的`\mancite`命令使用时调用。它有时特别有用，可以代替像 ‘ibidem’ 或 ‘op. cit.’ 等缩写表示的重复标注，因为当自动生成和人工产生的标注混合使用的时候这些缩写可能会有歧义。`\mancite`命令也会重设宏包的内部 ‘ibidem’ 和 ‘idem’ 追踪器，进而影响 § 4.6.2 讨论的 `\ifciteibid` 和 `\ifciteidem` 判断。Specifies arbitrary `<code>` required for a partial reset of the citation style. This hook will be executed every time the `\mancite` command from § 3.7.8 is used. It is particularly useful in citation styles which replace repeated citations by abbreviations like ‘ibidem’ or ‘op. cit.’ which may get ambiguous if automatically generated and manual citations are mixed. The `\mancite` command also resets the internal ‘ibidem’ and ‘idem’ trackers of this package. The reset will affect the `\ifciteibid` and `\ifciteidem` tests discussed in § 4.6.2.

`\DeclareCiteCommand{<command>}[<wrapper>]{<precode>}{<loopcode>}{<sepcode>}{<postcode>}`

`\DeclareCiteCommand*{<command>}[<wrapper>]{<precode>}{<loopcode>}{<sepcode>}{<postcode>}`

This is the core command used to define all citation commands. It takes one optional and five mandatory arguments. The `<command>` is the command to be defined, for example `\cite`. If the optional `<wrapper>` argument is given, the entire citation will be passed to the `<wrapper>` as an argument, i. e., the wrapper command must take one mandatory argument.<sup>39</sup> The `<precode>` is arbitrary code to be executed at the beginning of the citation. It will typically handle the `<prenote>` argument which is available in the `prenote` field. It may also be used to initialize macros required by the `<loopcode>`. The `<loopcode>` is arbitrary code to be executed for each entry key passed to the `<command>`. This is the core code which prints the citation labels or any other data. The `<sepcode>` is arbitrary code to be executed after each iteration of the `<loopcode>`. It will only be executed if a list of entry keys is passed to the `<command>`. The `<sepcode>` will usually insert some kind of separator, such as a comma or a semicolon. The `<postcode>` is arbitrary code to be executed at the end of the citation. The

<sup>39</sup>Typical examples of wrapper commands are `\mkbibparens` and `\mkbibfootnote`.

$\langle postcode \rangle$  will typically handle the  $\langle postnote \rangle$  argument which is available in the postnote field.<sup>40</sup> The starred variant of `\DeclareCiteCommand` defines a starred  $\langle command \rangle$ . For example, `\DeclareCiteCommand*{cite}` would define `\cite*`.<sup>41</sup>

`\DeclareMultiCiteCommand{ $\langle command \rangle$ }[ $\langle wrapper \rangle$ ]{ $\langle cite \rangle$ }{ $\langle delimiter \rangle$ }`

This command defines ‘multicite’ commands (§ 3.7.3). The  $\langle command \rangle$  is the multicite command to be defined, for example `\cites`. It is automatically made robust. Multicite commands are built on top of backend commands defined with `\DeclareCiteCommand` and the  $\langle cite \rangle$  argument specifies the name of the backend command to be used. Note that the wrapper of the backend command (i. e., the  $\langle wrapper \rangle$  argument passed to `\DeclareCiteCommand`) is ignored. Use the optional  $\langle wrapper \rangle$  argument to specify an alternative wrapper. The  $\langle delimiter \rangle$  is the string to be printed as a separator between the individual citations in the list. This will typically be `\multicitedelim`. The following examples are real definitions taken from `biblatex.def`:

```
\DeclareMultiCiteCommand{\cites}%
  {\cite}{\multicitedelim}
\DeclareMultiCiteCommand{\parencites}{\mkbibparens}%
  {\parencite}{\multicitedelim}
\DeclareMultiCiteCommand{\footcites}{\mkbibfootnote}%
  {\footcite}{\multicitedelim}
```

`\DeclareAutoCiteCommand{ $\langle name \rangle$ }[ $\langle position \rangle$ ]{ $\langle cite \rangle$ }{ $\langle multicite \rangle$ }`

This command provides definitions for the `\autocite` and `\autocites` commands from § 3.7.4. The definitions are enabled with the autocite package option from § 3.1.2.1. The  $\langle name \rangle$  is an identifier which serves as the value passed to the package option. The autocite commands are built on top of backend commands like `\parencite` and `\parencites`. The arguments  $\langle cite \rangle$  and  $\langle multicite \rangle$  specify the backend commands to use. The  $\langle cite \rangle$  argument refers to `\autocite` and  $\langle multicite \rangle$  refers to `\autocites`. The  $\langle position \rangle$  argument controls the handling of any punctuation marks after the citation. Possible values are `l`, `r`, `f`. `r` means that the punctuation is placed to the right of the citation, i. e., it will not be moved around. `l` means that any punctuation after the citation is moved to the left of the citation. `f` is like `r` in a footnote and like `l` otherwise. This argument is optional and defaults to `r`. See also `\DeclareAutoPunctuation` in § 4.7.5 and the `autopunct` package option in § 3.1.2.1. The following examples are real definitions taken from `biblatex.def`:

```
\DeclareAutoCiteCommand{plain}{\cite}{\cites}
\DeclareAutoCiteCommand{inline}{\parencite}{\parencites}
\DeclareAutoCiteCommand{footnote}[l]{\footcite}{\footcites}
\DeclareAutoCiteCommand{footnote}[f]{\smartcite}{\smartcites}
```

A definition provided in the document preamble can be subsequently adopted with the following: (see § 3.2.2).

```
\ExecuteBibliographyOptions{autocite=name}
```

### 4.3.2 特殊域 Special Fields

The following fields are used by Biblatex to pass data to citation commands. They are not used in bib files but defined automatically by the package. From the perspective of a citation style, they are not different from the fields in a bib file. See also § 4.2.4.

**prenote** 域 (literal)

The  $\langle prenote \rangle$  argument passed to a citation command. This field is specific to citations and not available in the bibliography. If the  $\langle prenote \rangle$  argument is missing or empty, this field is undefined.

<sup>40</sup>The bibliographic data available to the  $\langle loopcode \rangle$  is the data of the entry currently being processed. In addition to that, the data of the first entry is available to the  $\langle precode \rangle$  and the data of the last one is available to the  $\langle postcode \rangle$ . ‘First’ and ‘last’ refer to the order in which the citations are printed. If the `sortcites` package option is active, this is the order of the list after sorting. Note that no bibliographic data is available to the  $\langle sepcode \rangle$ .

<sup>41</sup>Note that the regular variant of `\DeclareCiteCommand` defines a starred version of the  $\langle command \rangle$  implicitly, unless the starred version has been defined before. This is intended as a fallback. The implicit definition is an alias for the regular variant.

**postnote** 域 (literal)

The  $\langle postnote \rangle$  argument passed to a citation command. This field is specific to citations and not available in the bibliography. If the  $\langle postnote \rangle$  argument is missing or empty, this field is undefined.

**multiprenote** 域 (literal)

The  $\langle multiprenote \rangle$  argument passed to a multicite command. This field is specific to citations and not available in the bibliography. If the  $\langle multiprenote \rangle$  argument is missing or empty, this field is undefined.

**multipostnote** 域 (literal)

The  $\langle multipostnote \rangle$  argument passed to a multicite command. This field is specific to citations and not available in the bibliography. If the  $\langle multipostnote \rangle$  argument is missing or empty, this field is undefined.

**postpunct** 域 (punctuation command)

The trailing punctuation argument implicitly passed to a citation command. This field is specific to citations and not available in the bibliography. If the character following a given citation command is not specified in `\DeclareAutoPunctuation` (§ 4.7.5), this field is undefined.

## 4.4 数据接口 Data Interface

The data interface are the facilities used to format and print all bibliographic data. These facilities are available in both bibliography and citation styles.

### 4.4.1 数据命令 Data Commands

This section introduces the main data interface of the Biblatex package. These are the commands doing most of the work, i. e., they actually print the data provided in lists and fields.

```
\DeprecateField{<field>}{<message>}
```

```
\DeprecateList{<list>}{<message>}
```

```
\DeprecateName{<name>}{<message>}
```

When an attempt is made to print  $\langle field \rangle$ ,  $\langle list \rangle$ ,  $\langle name \rangle$ , a deprecation warning issued with the additional  $\langle message \rangle$ . This aids style authors who are changing field names in their style. Note that the deprecated item must no longer be defined in the datamodel for this work;  $\langle field \rangle$ ,  $\langle list \rangle$  or  $\langle name \rangle$  cannot be listed anywhere as an argument to `\DeclareDatamodelFields`.

```
\printfield[<format>]{<field>}
```

This command prints a  $\langle field \rangle$  using the formatting directive  $\langle format \rangle$ , as defined with `\DeclareFieldFormat`. If a type-specific  $\langle format \rangle$  has been declared, the type-specific formatting directive takes precedence over the generic one. If the  $\langle field \rangle$  is undefined, nothing is printed. If the  $\langle format \rangle$  is omitted, `\printfield` tries using the name of the field as a format name. For example, if the title field is to be printed and the  $\langle format \rangle$  is not specified, it will try to use the field format title.<sup>42</sup> In this case, any type-specific formatting directive will also take precedence over the generic one. If all of these formats are undefined, it falls back to `default` as a last resort. Note that `\printfield` provides the name of the field currently being processed in `\currentfield` for use in field formatting directives.

```
\printlist[<format>][<start>-<stop>]{<literal list>}
```

This command loops over all items in a  $\langle literal list \rangle$ , starting at item number  $\langle start \rangle$  and stopping at item number  $\langle stop \rangle$ , including  $\langle start \rangle$  and  $\langle stop \rangle$  (all lists are numbered starting at 1). Each item is printed using the formatting directive  $\langle format \rangle$ , as defined with `\DeclareListFormat`. If a type-specific  $\langle format \rangle$  has been declared, the type-specific formatting directive takes precedence over the generic one. If the  $\langle literal list \rangle$  is undefined, nothing is printed. If the  $\langle format \rangle$  is omitted, `\printlist` tries using the name of the list as a format name. In this case, any type-specific formatting directive will also take precedence over the generic one. If all of these formats are undefined, it falls back to `default` as a last resort. The  $\langle start \rangle$  argument defaults to 1;  $\langle stop \rangle$  defaults to the total number of items in the list. If the total number is greater than  $\langle maxitems \rangle$ ,  $\langle stop \rangle$  defaults to  $\langle minitems \rangle$  (see § 3.1.2.1). See `\printnames` for further details. Note that `\printlist` provides the name of the literal list currently being processed in `\currentlist` for use in list formatting directives.

---

<sup>42</sup>In other words, `\printfield{title}` is equivalent to `\printfield[title]{title}`.

`\printnames[⟨format⟩][⟨start⟩–⟨stop⟩]{⟨name list⟩}`

This command loops over all items in a *⟨name list⟩*, starting at item number *⟨start⟩* and stopping at item number *⟨stop⟩*, including *⟨start⟩* and *⟨stop⟩* (all lists are numbered starting at 1). Each item is printed using the formatting directive *⟨format⟩*, as defined with `\DeclareNameFormat`. If a type-specific *⟨format⟩* has been declared, the type-specific formatting directive takes precedence over the generic one. If the *⟨name list⟩* is undefined, nothing is printed. If the *⟨format⟩* is omitted, `\printnames` tries using the name of the list as a format name. In this case, any type-specific formatting directive will also take precedence over the generic one. If all of these formats are undefined, it falls back to default as a last resort. The *⟨start⟩* argument defaults to 1; *⟨stop⟩* defaults to the total number of items in the list. If the total number is greater than *⟨maxnames⟩*, *⟨stop⟩* defaults to *⟨minnames⟩* (see § 3.1.2.1). If you want to select a range but use the default list format, the first optional argument must still be given, but is left empty:

```
\printnames[][1-3]{...}
```

One of *⟨start⟩* and *⟨stop⟩* may be omitted, hence the following arguments are all valid:

```
\printnames[...][-1]{...}
\printnames[...][2-]{...}
\printnames[...][1-3]{...}
```

If you want to override *⟨maxnames⟩* and *⟨minnames⟩* and force printing of the entire list, you may refer to the `listtotal` counter in the second optional argument:

```
\printnames[...][-value{listtotal}]{...}
```

Whenever `\printnames` and `\printlist` process a list, information concerning the current state is accessible by way of four counters: the `listtotal` counter holds the total number of items in the current list, `listcount` holds the number of the item currently being processed, `liststart` is the *⟨start⟩* argument passed to `\printnames` or `\printlist`, `liststop` is the *⟨stop⟩* argument. These counters are intended for use in list formatting directives. `listtotal` may also be used in the second optional argument to `\printnames` and `\printlist`. Note that these counters are local to list formatting directives and do not hold meaningful values when used anywhere else. For every list, there is also a counter by the same name which holds the total number of items in the corresponding list. For example, the `author` counter holds the total number of items in the author list. These counters are similar to `listtotal` except that they may also be used independently of list formatting directives. There are also `maxnames` and `minnames` as well as `maxitems` and `minitems` counters which hold the values of the corresponding package options. See § 4.10.5 for a complete list of such internal counters. Note that `\printnames` provides the name of the name list currently being processed in `\currentname` for use in name formatting directives.

`\printtext[⟨format⟩]{⟨text⟩}` 该命令用于打印 *⟨text⟩*，可以是可打印的文本或者任意产生可打印文本的代码。它清除插入 *⟨text⟩* 之前的标点缓存并且通知 Biblatex 打印文本已经插入。这保证了所有之前和之后的 `\newblock` 和 `\newunit` 命令能产生期望的作用。`\printfield`、`\printnames`、`\bibstring` 及其相关命令都这般自动处理 (见 § 4.8)。如果一个参考文献样式需要如实插入文本 (包括来自 §§ 4.7.3 和 4.7.4 的命令)，需要使用该命令来确保 `block` 和 `unit` 标点在 § 4.7.1 节中所述正常功能。可选参数 *⟨format⟩* 指定一个域格式指令用于格式化 *⟨text⟩*。当需要把若干个域打印为某一格式的集合块，这就会很有用，比如把集合块用括号或引号包起来。如果声明了 type-specific 的格式指令，则覆盖设置的一般格式指令。如果 *⟨format⟩* 缺省，那么 *⟨text⟩* 如实输出 (原样打印)。更多实用细节见第 § 4.11.7 节。

This command prints *⟨text⟩*, which may be printable text or arbitrary code generating printable text. It clears the punctuation buffer before inserting *⟨text⟩* and informs Biblatex that printable text has been inserted. This ensures that all preceding and following `\newblock` and `\newunit` commands have the desired effect. `\printfield` and `\printnames` as well as `\bibstring` and its companion commands (see § 4.8) do that automatically. Using this command is required if a bibliography styles inserts literal text (including the commands from §§ 4.7.3 和 4.7.4) to ensure that block and unit punctuation works as advertised in § 4.7.1. The optional *⟨format⟩* argument specifies a field formatting directive to be used to format *⟨text⟩*. This may also be useful when several fields are to be printed as one chunk, for example, by enclosing the entire chunk in parentheses or quotation marks. If a type-specific *⟨format⟩* has been declared, the type-specific formatting directive takes precedence over the generic one. If the *⟨format⟩* is omitted, the *⟨text⟩* is printed as is. See also § 4.11.7 for some practical hints.



`\printfile[format]{file}`

This command is similar to `\printtext` except that the second argument is a file name rather than literal text. The *file* argument must be the name of a valid LaTeX file found in TeX's search path. `\printfile` will use `\input` to load this *file*. If there is no such file, `\printfile` does nothing. The optional *format* argument specifies a field formatting directive to be applied to the *file*. If a type-specific *format* has been declared, the type-specific formatting directive takes precedence over the generic one. If the *format* is omitted, the *file* is printed as is. Note that this feature needs to be enabled explicitly by setting the package option `loadfiles` from § 3.1.2.1. By default, `\printfile` will not input any files.

`\printdate` This command prints the date of the entry, as specified in the fields `date` or `month/year`. The date format is controlled by the package option `date` from § 3.1.2.1. Additional formatting (fonts etc.) may be applied by adjusting the field format `date` (§ 4.10.4). Note that this command interfaces with the punctuation tracker. There is no need to wrap it in a `\printtext` command.

`\printdateextra` Similar to `\printdate` but incorporates the `extrayear` field in the date specification. This is useful for bibliography styles designed for author-year citations.

`\printlabeldate` Similar to `\printdate` but prints the date field determined by `\DeclareLabeldate`. The date format is controlled by the package option `labeldate` from § 3.1.2.1. Additional formatting may be applied by adjusting the field format `labeldate` (§ 4.10.4).

`\printlabeldateextra` Similar to `\printlabeldate` but incorporates the `extrayear` field in the date specification. This is useful for bibliography styles designed for author-year citations.

`\print<datatype>date` As `\printdate` but prints the `<datatype>date` of the entry. The date format is controlled by the package option `<datatype>date` from § 3.1.2.1. Additional formatting may be applied by adjusting the field format `<datatype>date` (§ 4.10.4). The `<datatype>s` in the default data model are '' (for the main date field), 'orig', 'event' and 'url'.

`\printtime` This command prints the time range of the entry, as specified in the `date` field (see § 2.3.8). The time format is controlled by the package option `time` from § 3.1.2.1. Additional formatting (fonts etc.) may be applied by adjusting the field format `time` (§ 4.10.4). Relevant to time formatting are the `timezeros` option and the `\bibtimesep` and `\bibtimezonesep` macros (§ 3.9.2). Note that this command interfaces with the punctuation tracker. There is no need to wrap it in a `\printtext` command. Note that this command prints a stand-alone time range apart from the date elements. With the `<datepart>dateusetime` option, you can have the printed along with a date when printing a date range instead of printing the time range completely separately, which is what this command allows for.

`\print<datatype>time` As `\printtime` but prints the `<datatype>time` of the entry. The time format is controlled by the package option `<datatype>time` from § 3.1.2.1. Additional formatting may be applied by adjusting the field format `<datatype>time` (§ 4.10.4). The `<datatype>s` in the default data model are '' (for the main date field), 'orig', 'event' and 'url'.

`\indexfield[format]{field}`

This command is similar to `\printfield` except that the *field* is not printed but added to the index using the formatting directive *format*, as defined with `\DeclareIndexFieldFormat`. If a type-specific *format* has been declared, it takes precedence over the generic one. If the *field* is undefined, this command does nothing. If the *format* is omitted, `\indexfield` tries using the name of the field as a format name. In this case, any type-specific formatting directive will also take precedence over the generic one. If all of these formats are undefined, it falls back to `default` as a last resort.

`\indexlist[format][start–stop]{literal list}`

This command is similar to `\printlist` except that the items in the list are not printed but added to the index using the formatting directive *format*, as defined with `\DeclareIndexListFormat`. If a type-specific *format* has been declared, the type-specific formatting directive takes precedence over the generic one. If the *literal list* is undefined, this command does nothing. If the *format* is omitted, `\indexlist` tries using the name of the list as a format name. In this case, any type-specific formatting directive will also take precedence over the generic one. If all of these formats are undefined, it falls back to `default` as a last resort.

`\indexnames[format][start–stop]{name list}`

This command is similar to `\printnames` except that the items in the list are not printed but added to the index using the formatting directive *format*, as defined with `\DeclareIndexNameFormat`. If a type-specific *format* has been declared, the type-specific formatting directive takes precedence over the generic one. If the *name list* is undefined, this command does nothing. If the *format* is omitted, `\indexnames` tries using the name of the list as a format name. In this case, any type-specific formatting directive will also take precedence over the generic one. If all of these formats are undefined, it falls back to `default` as a last resort.

```
\entrydata{⟨key⟩}{⟨code⟩}
\entrydata*{⟨key⟩}{⟨code⟩}
```

Data commands like `\printfield` normally use the data of the entry currently being processed. You may use `\entrydata` to switch contexts locally. The `⟨key⟩` is the entry key of the entry to use locally. The `⟨code⟩` is arbitrary code to be executed in this context. This code will be executed in a group. See § 4.11.6 for an example. Note that this command will automatically switch languages if the `autolang` package option is enabled. The starred version `\entrydata*` will clone all fields of the enclosing entry, using `field`, `counter`, and other resource names prefixed with the string ‘`saved`’. This is useful when comparing two data sets. For example, inside the `⟨code⟩` argument, the `author` field holds the author of entry `⟨key⟩` and the author of the enclosing entry is available as `savedauthor`. The `author` counter holds the number of names in the `author` field of `⟨key⟩`; the `savedauthor` counter refers to the author count of the enclosing entry.

```
\entryset{⟨precode⟩}{⟨postcode⟩}
```

This command is intended for use in bibliography drivers handling `@set` entries. It will loop over all members of the set, as indicated by the `entryset` field, and execute the appropriate driver for the respective set member. This is similar to executing the `\usedriver` command from § 4.6.4 for each set member. The `⟨precode⟩` is arbitrary code to be executed prior to processing each item in the set. The `⟨postcode⟩` is arbitrary code to be executed immediately after processing each item. Both arguments are mandatory in terms of the syntax but may be left empty. See § 4.11.1 for usage examples.

```
\DeclareFieldInputHandler{⟨field⟩}{⟨code⟩}
```

This command can be used to define a data input handler for `⟨field⟩` when it is read from the `.bbl`. Within the `⟨code⟩`, the macro `\NewValue` contains the value of the field. For example, to ignore the `volumes` field when it appears, you could do

```
\DeclareFieldInputHandler{volumes}{\def\NewValue{}}
```

Generally, you would want to use `\DeclareSourceMap` (see § 4.5.3) to remove and modify fields but this alternative method may be useful in some circumstances when the emphasis is on appearance rather than data since the `⟨code⟩` can be arbitrary TeX.

```
\DeclareListInputHandler{⟨list⟩}{⟨code⟩}
```

As `\DeclareFieldInputHandler` but for lists. Within the `⟨code⟩`, the macro `\NewValue` contains the value of the list and `\NewCount` contains the number of items in the list.

```
\DeclareNameInputHandler{⟨name⟩}{⟨code⟩}
```

As `\DeclareFieldInputHandler` but for names. Within the `⟨code⟩`, the macro `\NewValue` contains the value of the name, `\NewCount` contains the number of individual names in the name and `\NewOption` contains any per-name options passed in the `.bbl`.

## 4.4.2 格式化指令 Formatting Directives

This section introduces the commands used to define the formatting directives required by the data commands from § 4.4.1. Note that all standard formats are defined in `biblatex_.def`.

```
\DeclareFieldFormat[⟨entrytype, ...⟩]{⟨format⟩}{⟨code⟩}
\DeclareFieldFormat*{⟨format⟩}{⟨code⟩}
```

Defines the field format `⟨format⟩`. This formatting directive is arbitrary `⟨code⟩` to be executed by `\printfield`. The value of the field will be passed to the `⟨code⟩` as its first and only argument. The name of the field currently being processed is available to the `⟨code⟩` as `\currentfield`. If an `⟨entrytype⟩` is specified, the format is specific to that type. The `⟨entrytype⟩` argument may be a comma-separated list of values. The starred variant of this command is similar to the regular version, except that all type-specific formats are cleared.

```
\DeclareListFormat[⟨entrytype, ...⟩]{⟨format⟩}{⟨code⟩}
\DeclareListFormat*{⟨format⟩}{⟨code⟩}
```

Defines the literal list format `⟨format⟩`. This formatting directive is arbitrary `⟨code⟩` to be executed for every item in a list processed by `\printlist`. The current item will be passed to the `⟨code⟩` as its first and only argument. The name of the literal list currently being processed is available to the `⟨code⟩` as `\currentlist`. If an `⟨entrytype⟩` is specified, the format is specific to that type. The `⟨entrytype⟩` argument may be a comma-separated list of values. Note that the formatting directive also handles the punctuation to be inserted between the individual items in the list. You need to check whether you are in the middle of or at the end of the list, i.e., whether `listcount` is smaller than or equal to `liststop`. The starred variant of this command is similar to the regular version, except that all type-specific formats are cleared.

```
\DeclareNameFormat[⟨entrytype, ...⟩]{⟨format⟩}{⟨code⟩}
```

```
\DeclareNameFormat*{⟨format⟩}{⟨code⟩}
```

Defines the name list format *⟨format⟩*. This formatting directive is arbitrary *⟨code⟩* to be executed for every name in a list processed by `\printnames`. If an *⟨entrytype⟩* is specified, the format is specific to that type. The *⟨entrytype⟩* argument may be a comma-separated list of values. The individual parts of a name will be available in automatically created macros (see below). The default data mode defines four name parts which correspond to the standard BibTeX name parts arguments:

**family** The family name(s), known as ‘last’ in BibTeX. If a name consists of a single part only (for example, ‘Aristotle’), this part will be treated as the family name.

**given** The given name(s). Note that given names are referred to as the ‘first’ names in the BibTeX file format documentation.

**prefix** Any name prefixes, for example von, van, of, da, de, del, della, etc. Note that name prefixes are referred to as the ‘von’ part of the name in the BibTeX file format documentation.

**suffix** Any name suffixes, for example Jr, Sr. Note that name suffixes are referred to as the ‘Jr’ part of the name in the BibTeX file format documentation.

The value of the datamodel ‘nameparts’ constant (see § 4.2.3) creates two macros for each name part in the datamodel for the name. So, for example, in the default data model, name formats will have defined the following macros:

```
\namepartprefix
\namepartprefixi
\namepartfamily
\namepartfamilyi
\namepartsuffix
\namepartsuffixi
\namepartgiven
\namepartgiveni
```

If a certain part of a name is not available, the corresponding macro will be empty, hence you may use, for example, the `etoolbox` tests like `\ifdefvoid` to check for the individual parts of a name. The name of the name list currently being processed is available to the *⟨code⟩* as `\currentname`. Note that the formatting directive also handles the punctuation to be inserted between separate names and between the individual parts of a name. You need to check whether you are in the middle of or at the end of the list, i.e., whether `\listcount` is smaller than or equal to `\liststop`. See also § 3.12.4. The starred variant of this command is similar to the regular version, except that all type-specific formats are cleared.

```
\DeclareIndexFieldFormat[⟨entrytype, ...⟩]{⟨format⟩}{⟨code⟩}
```

```
\DeclareIndexFieldFormat*{⟨format⟩}{⟨code⟩}
```

Defines the field format *⟨format⟩*. This formatting directive is arbitrary *⟨code⟩* to be executed by `\indexfield`. The value of the field will be passed to the *⟨code⟩* as its first and only argument. The name of the field currently being processed is available to the *⟨code⟩* as `\currentfield`. If an *⟨entrytype⟩* is specified, the format is specific to that type. The *⟨entrytype⟩* argument may be a comma-separated list of values. This command is similar to `\DeclareFieldFormat` except that the data handled by the *⟨code⟩* is not intended to be printed but written to the index. Note that `\indexfield` will execute the *⟨code⟩* as is, i.e., the *⟨code⟩* must include `\index` or a similar command. The starred variant of this command is similar to the regular version, except that all type-specific formats are cleared.

```
\DeclareIndexListFormat[⟨entrytype, ...⟩]{⟨format⟩}{⟨code⟩}
```

```
\DeclareIndexListFormat*{⟨format⟩}{⟨code⟩}
```

Defines the literal list format *⟨format⟩*. This formatting directive is arbitrary *⟨code⟩* to be executed for every item in a list processed by `\indexlist`. The current item will be passed to the *⟨code⟩* as its only argument. The name of the literal list currently being processed is available to the *⟨code⟩* as `\currentlist`. If an *⟨entrytype⟩* is specified, the format is specific to that type. The *⟨entrytype⟩* argument may be a comma-separated list of values. This command is similar to `\DeclareListFormat` except that the data handled by the *⟨code⟩* is not intended to be printed but written to the index. Note that `\indexlist` will execute the *⟨code⟩* as is, i.e., the *⟨code⟩* must include `\index` or a similar command. The starred variant of this command is similar to the regular version, except that all type-specific formats are cleared.

```
\DeclareIndexNameFormat[⟨entrytype, ...⟩]{⟨format⟩}{⟨code⟩}
```

```
\DeclareIndexNameFormat*{⟨format⟩}{⟨code⟩}
```

Defines the name list format *⟨format⟩*. This formatting directive is arbitrary *⟨code⟩* to be executed for every name in a list processed by `\indexnames`. The name of the name list currently being processed is available to the *⟨code⟩* as `\currentname`. If an *⟨entrytype⟩* is specified, the format is specific to that type. The *⟨entrytype⟩* argument may be a comma-separated

list of values. The parts of the name will be passed to the `<code>` as separate arguments. This command is very similar to `\DeclareNameFormat` except that the data handled by the `<code>` is not intended to be printed but written to the index. Note that `\indexnames` will execute the `<code>` as is, i. e., the `<code>` must include `\index` or a similar command. The starred variant of this command is similar to the regular version, except that all type-specific formats are cleared.

`\DeclareFieldAlias`[`<entry type>`]{`<alias>`}[`<format entry type>`]{`<format>`}

Declares `<alias>` to be an alias for the field format `<format>`. If an `<entrytype>` is specified, the alias is specific to that type. The `<format entry type>` is the entry type of the backend format. This is only required when declaring an alias for a type-specific formatting directive.

`\DeclareListAlias`[`<entry type>`]{`<alias>`}[`<format entry type>`]{`<format>`}

Declares `<alias>` to be an alias for the literal list format `<format>`. If an `<entrytype>` is specified, the alias is specific to that type. The `<format entry type>` is the entry type of the backend format. This is only required when declaring an alias for a type-specific formatting directive.

`\DeclareNameAlias`[`<entry type>`]{`<alias>`}[`<format entry type>`]{`<format>`}

Declares `<alias>` to be an alias for the name list format `<format>`. If an `<entrytype>` is specified, the alias is specific to that type. The `<format entry type>` is the entry type of the backend format. This is only required when declaring an alias for a type-specific formatting directive.

`\DeclareIndexFieldAlias`[`<entry type>`]{`<alias>`}[`<format entry type>`]{`<format>`}

Declares `<alias>` to be an alias for the field format `<format>`. If an `<entrytype>` is specified, the alias is specific to that type. The `<format entry type>` is the entry type of the backend format. This is only required when declaring an alias for a type-specific formatting directive.

`\DeclareIndexListAlias`[`<entry type>`]{`<alias>`}[`<format entry type>`]{`<format>`}

Declares `<alias>` to be an alias for the literal list format `<format>`. If an `<entrytype>` is specified, the alias is specific to that type. The `<format entry type>` is the entry type of the backend format. This is only required when declaring an alias for a type-specific formatting directive.

`\DeclareIndexNameAlias`[`<entry type>`]{`<alias>`}[`<format entry type>`]{`<format>`}

Declares `<alias>` to be an alias for the name list format `<format>`. If an `<entrytype>` is specified, the alias is specific to that type. The `<format entry type>` is the entry type of the backend format. This is only required when declaring an alias for a type-specific formatting directive.

## 4.5 自定义 Customization

### 4.5.1 关联条目 Related Entries

The related entries feature comprises the following components: 关联条目功能由如下部分构成:<sup>43</sup>

- 可将条目中的特殊域用于建立和描述关系
- Special fields in an entry to set up and describe relationships
- 可把本地化字符串作为关联数据的前缀 (可选)
- Optionally, localisation strings to prefix the related data
- 提供用于抽取和打印关联数据的宏
- Macros to extract and print the related data
- 提供给本地化字符串和关联数据格式化的格式
- Formats to format the localisation string and related data

特殊域是 `related`, `relatedtype`, `relatedstring` 和 `relatedoptions`: The special fields are `related`, `relatedtype`, `relatedstring` and `relatedoptions`:

**related** 与当前文献某种程度关联的文献的关键词的分离列表<sup>44</sup>。注意: 关键词<sup>45</sup>的顺序很重要。来自多个关联文献的数据是按该域中关键词的顺序打印。

**related** A separated list of keys of entries which are related to this entry in some way. Note the the order of the keys is important. The data from multiple related entries is printed in the order of the keys listed in this field.

<sup>43</sup>这里 `related data` 用关联而不是相关, 其它地方用到相关的应一并改过来

<sup>44</sup>这里 `separated list` 用分离列表有没有更好的说法

<sup>45</sup>这里的 `key` 关键词应该是引用关键词, 即 `bibtex` 键

|                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>relatedtype</b>    | The type of relationship. This serves three purposes. If the value of this field resolves to a localisation string identifier, then the resulting localised string is printed before the data from the related entries. Secondly, if there is a macro called <code>related:&lt;relatedtype&gt;</code> , this is used to format the data from the related entries. If no such macro exists, then the macro <code>related:default</code> is used. Lastly, if there is a format named <code>related:&lt;relatedtype&gt;</code> , then it is used to format both the localised string and related entry data. If there is no related type specific format, the <code>related</code> format is used. |
| <b>relatedstring</b>  | If an entry contains this field, then if value of the field resolves to a localisation string identifier, the localisation key value specified is printed before data from the related entries. If the field does not specify a localisation key, its value is printed literally. If both <code>relatedtype</code> and <code>relatedstring</code> are present in an entry, <code>relatedstring</code> is used for the pre-data string (but <code>relatedtype</code> is still used to determine the macro and format to use when printing the data).                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>relatedoptions</b> | A list of per-entry options to set on the related entry (actually on the clone of the related entry which is used as a data source—the actual related entry is not modified because it might be cited directly itself).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

The related entry feature is enabled by default by the package option `related` from § 3.1.2.1. The related information entry data from the related entries is included via a `\usebibmacro{related}` call. Standard styles call this macro towards the end of each driver. Style authors should ensure the existence of (or take note of existing) localisation strings which are useful as values for the `relatedtype` field, such as `translationof` or perhaps `translatedas`. A plural variant can be identified with the localisation key `<relatedtype>s`. This key's corresponding string is printed whenever more than one entry is specified in `related`. Bibliography macros and formatting directives for printing entries related by `<relatedtype>` should be defined using the name `related:<relatedtype>`. The file `biblatex.def` contains macros and formats for some common relation types which can be used as templates. In particular, the `\entrydata*` command is essential in such macros in order to make the data of the related entries available. Examples of entries using this feature can be found in the Biblatex distribution examples file `biblatex-examples.bib`. There are some specific formatting macros for this feature which control delimiters and separators in related entry information, see § 4.10.1.

## 4.5.2 Datasource Sets

It is useful to be able to define named sets of datasource field names for use in loops etc. In addition, Biber can use such sets in order to apply options and perform operations on particular sets of datasource fields. The following macros allow the user to define arbitrary sets of datasource fields, exposed to Biblatex as `etoolbox` lists and to Biber in the `.bcf`.

`\DeclareDatafieldSet{<name>}{<specification>}`

Declare a set of datasource fields with name `<name>`.

`name=<set name>`

The name of the set.

The `<specification>` is one or more `\member` items:

`\member`

`fieldtype=<fieldtype>`

`datatype=<datatype>`

`field=<fieldname>`

A `\member` specification appends fields to the set. Fields can be specified by `datamodel <fieldtype>` and/or `<datatype>` (see § 4.5.4). Alternatively, fields can be explicitly added by name using the `<field>` option. Once defined, the set is available as an `etoolbox` list called `\datafieldset'setname'` and is also passed via the `.bcf` to Biber.

For example, here are the default sets defined by Biblatex for name fields and title fields:

```
\DeclareDatafieldSet{setnames}{
  \member[datatype=name, fieldtype=list]
}

\DeclareDatafieldSet{settitles}{
  \member[field=title]
  \member[field=booktitle]
  \member[field=eventtitle]
  \member[field=issuetitle]
  \member[field=journaltitle]
  \member[field=maintitle]
  \member[field=origtitle]
}
```

This defines the macros `\datafieldsetsetnames` and `\datafieldsetsettitles` as `etoolbox` lists containing the names of the member `datasource` fields specified.

### 4.5.3 数据动态修改 Dynamic Modification of Data

Bibliographic data sources which are automatically generated or which you have no control over can be a problem if you need to edit them in some way. For this reason, Biber has the ability to modify data as it is read so that you can apply modifications to the source data stream without actually changing it. The modification can be defined in Biber’s config file (see Biber docs), or via Biblatex macros in which case you can apply the modification only for specific documents, styles or globally.

Source mapping happens during data parsing and therefore before any other operation such as inheritance and sorting.

Source mappings can be defined at different “levels” which are applied in a defined order. See the Biblatex manual regarding these macros:

```
user-level maps defined with \DeclareSourcemap→
user-level maps defined in the Biber config file (see Biber docs)→
style-level maps defined with \DeclareStyleSourcemap→
driver-level maps defined with \DeclareDriverSourcemap
```

`\DeclareSourcemap{⟨specification⟩}`

Defines source data modification (mapping) rules which can be used to perform any combination of the following tasks:

- Map data source entrytypes to different entrytypes
- Map `datasource` fields to different fields
- Add new fields to an entry
- Remove fields from an entry
- Modify the contents of a field using standard Perl regular expression match and replace
- Restrict any of the above operations to entries coming from particular `datasources` which you defined in `\addresource` macros
- Restrict any of the above operations to entries only of a certain entrytype
- Restrict any of the above operations to entries in a particular reference section

The `⟨specification⟩` is an undelimited list of `\maps` directives which specify containers for mappings rules applying to a particular data source type (§ 3.6.1). Spaces, tabs, and line endings may be used freely to visually arrange the `⟨specification⟩`. Blank lines are not permissible. This command may only be used in the preamble and may only be used once—subsequent uses will overwrite earlier definitions.

`\maps[⟨options⟩]{⟨elements⟩}`

Contains an ordered set of `\map` elements each of which is a logically related set of mapping steps to apply to the data source. The `⟨options⟩` are:

`datatype=bibtex, biblatexml` default: `bibtex`

Data source type to which the contained `\map` directives apply (§ 3.6.1).

`overwrite=true, false` default: `false`

Specify whether a mapping rule is allowed to overwrite already existing data in an entry. If this option is not specified, the default is `false`. The short form `overwrite` is equivalent to `overwrite=true`.

`\map[⟨options⟩]{⟨restrictions,steps⟩}`

A container for an ordered set of `\steps`, optionally restricted to particular entrytypes or data sources. This is a grouping element to allow a set of mapping steps to apply only to specific entrytypes or data sources. Mapping steps must always be contained within a `\map` element. The `⟨options⟩` are:

`overwrite=true, false`

As the same option on the parent `\maps` element. This option allows an override on a per-map group basis. If this option is not specified, the default is the parent `\maps` element option value. The short form `overwrite` is equivalent to `overwrite=true`.

`foreach=<loopval>`

Loop over all \steps in this \map, setting the special variable \$MAPLOOP to each of the comma-separated values contained in <loopval>. <loopval> can either be the name of a datafield set defined with \DeclareDatafieldSet (see § 4.5.2), a datasource field which is fetched and parsed as a comma-separated values list or an explicit comma-separated values list. <loopval> is determined in this order. This allows the user to repeat a group of \steps for each value <loopval>. Using regexp maps, it is possible to create a CSV field for use with this functionality. The special variable \$MAPUNIQ may also be used the \steps to generate a random unique string. This can be useful when creating keys for new entries. An example:

```
\DeclareSourcemap{
  \maps[datatype=bibtex]{
    \map[overwrite, foreach={author, editor, translator}]{
      \step[fieldsource=regexp{$MAPLOOP}, match={Smith}, replace={Jones}]
    }
  }
}
```

`refsection=<integer>`

Only apply the contained \step commands to entries in the reference section with number <refsection>.

`\perdatasource{<datasource>}`

Restricts all \steps in this \map element to entries from the named <datasource>. The <datasource> name should be exactly as given in a \addresource macro defining a data source for the document. Multiple \perdatasource restrictions are allowed within a \map element.

`\pertype{<entrytype>}`

Restricts all \steps in this \map element to entries of the named <entrytype>. Multiple \pertype restrictions are allowed within a \map element.

`\pernottype{<entrytype>}`

Restricts all \steps in this \map element to entries not of the named <entrytype>. Multiple \pernottype restrictions are allowed within a \map element.

`\step[<options>]`

A mapping step. Each step is applied sequentially to every relevant entry where ‘relevant’ means those entries which correspond to the data source type, entrytype and data source name restrictions mentioned above. Each step is applied to the entry as it appears after the application of all previous steps. The mapping performed by the step is determined by the following <option>s:

`typesource=<entrytype>`

`typetarget=<entrytype>`

`fieldsource=<entryfield>`

`notfield=<entryfield>`

`fieldtarget=<entryfield>`

`match=<regexp>`

`notmatch=<regexp>`

`replace=<regexp>`

`fieldset=<entryfield>`

`fieldvalue=<string>`

`entryclone=<clonekey>`

`entrynew=<entrynewkey>`

`entrynewtype=<string>`

`entrytarget=<string>`

`entrynull=true, false`

default: false

`append=true, false`

default: false

`final=true, false`

default: false

`null=true, false`

default: false

`origfield=true, false`

default: false



`origfieldval=true, false` default: false

`origentrytype=true, false` default: false

For all boolean `\step` options, the short form option is equivalent to `option=true`. The following rules for a mapping step apply:

- If `entrynew` is set, a new entry is created with the entry key `entrynewkey` and the entry type given in the option `entrynewtype`. This entry is only in-scope during the processing of the current entry and can be referenced by `entrytarget`. In `entrynewkey`, you may use standard Perl regular expression backreferences to captures from a previous match step.
- When a `fieldset` step has `entrytarget` set to the entrykey of an entry created by `entrynew`, the target for the field set will be the `entrytarget` entry rather than the entry being currently processed. This allows users to create new entries and set fields in them.
- If `entrynull` is set, processing of the `\map` immediately terminates and the current entry is not created. It is as if it did not exist in the datasource. Obviously, you should select the entries which you want to apply this to using prior mapping steps.
- If `entryclone` is set, a clone of the entry is created with an entry key `clonekey`. Obviously this may cause labelling problems in author/year styles etc. and should be used with care. The cloned entry is in-scope during the processing of the current entry and can be modified by passing its key as the value to `entrytarget`. In `clonekey`, you may use standard Perl regular expression backreferences to captures from a previous match step.
- Change the `typesource`  $\langle entrytype \rangle$  to the `typetarget`  $\langle entrytype \rangle$ , if defined. If `final` is `true` then if the  $\langle entrytype \rangle$  of the entry is not `typesource`, processing of the parent `\map` immediately terminates.
- Change the `fieldsource`  $\langle entryfield \rangle$  to `fieldtarget`, if defined. If `final` is `true` then if there is no `fieldsource`  $\langle entryfield \rangle$  in the entry, processing of the parent `\map` immediately terminates.
- If `notfield` is used then only apply the step if the  $\langle entryfield \rangle$  does not exist.
- If `match` is defined but `replace` is not, only apply the step if the `fieldsource`  $\langle entryfield \rangle$  matches the `match` regular expression (logic is reversed if you use `notmatch` instead)<sup>46</sup>. You may use capture parenthesis as usual and refer to these  $(\$1..\$9)$  in later `fieldvalue` specifications. This allows you to pull out parts of some fields and put these parts in other fields.
- Perform a regular expression match and replace on the value of the `fieldsource`  $\langle entryfield \rangle$  if `match` and `replace` are defined.
- If `fieldset` is defined, then its value is  $\langle entryfield \rangle$  which will be set to a value specified by further options. If `overwrite` is `false` for this step and the field to set already exists then the map step is ignored. If `final` is also `true` for this step, then processing of the parent map stops at this point. If `append` is `true`, then the value to set is appended to the current value of  $\langle entryfield \rangle$ . The value to set is specified by a mandatory one and only one of the following options:
  - `fieldvalue` — The `fieldset`  $\langle entryfield \rangle$  is set to the `fieldvalue`  $\langle string \rangle$
  - `null` — The `fieldset`  $\langle entryfield \rangle$  is ignored, as if it did not exist in the datasource
  - `origentrytype` — The `fieldset`  $\langle entryfield \rangle$  is set to the most recently mentioned `typesource`  $\langle entrytype \rangle$  name
  - `origfield` — The `fieldset`  $\langle entryfield \rangle$  is set to the most recently mentioned `fieldsource`  $\langle entryfield \rangle$  name
  - `origfieldval` — The `fieldset`  $\langle entryfield \rangle$  is set to the most recently mentioned `fieldsource` value

With BibTeX datasources, you may specify the pseudo-field `entrykey` for `fieldsource` which is the citation key of the entry. With `biblatexml` the `entrykey` is a normal attribute and can be reference like any other attribute. Naturally, this 'field' cannot be changed (used as `fieldset`, `fieldtarget` or changed using `replace`).

`\DeclareStyleSourcemap`{ $\langle specification \rangle$ }

This command sets the source mappings used by a style. Such mappings are conceptually separate from user mappings defined with `\DeclareSourcemap` and are applied directly after user maps. The syntax is identical to `\DeclareSourcemap`. This command is provided for style authors so that any maps defined for the style do not interfere with user maps or the default driver maps defined with `\DeclareDriverSourcemap`. This command is for use in style files and can be used multiple times, the maps being run in order of definition.

`\DeclareDriverSourcemap`[ $\langle datatype=driver \rangle$ ]{ $\langle specification \rangle$ }

This command sets the driver default source mappings for the specified  $\langle driver \rangle$ . Such mappings are conceptually separate from user mappings defined with `\DeclareSourcemap` and style mapping defined with `\DeclareStyleSourcemap`. They

---

<sup>46</sup>Regular expressions are full Perl 5.16 regular expressions. This means you may need to deal with special characters, see examples.



consist of mappings which are part of the driver setup. Users should not normally need to change these. Driver default mappings are applied after user mappings (`\DeclareSourceMap`) and style mappings (`\DeclareStyleSourceMap`). These defaults are described in Appendix § A. The *specification* is identical to that for `\DeclareSourceMap` but without the `\maps` elements: the *specification* is just a list of `\map` elements since each `\DeclareDriverSourceMap` only applies to one datatype driver. See the default definitions in Appendix § A for examples.

Here are some data source mapping examples:

```
\DeclareSourceMap{
  \maps[datatype=bibtex]{
    \map{
      \perdatasource{example1.bib}
      \perdatasource{example2.bib}
      \step[fieldset=keywords, fieldvalue={keyw1, keyw2}]
      \step[fieldsource=entrykey]
      \step[fieldset=note, origfieldval]
    }
  }
}
```

This would add a `keywords` field with value ‘keyw1, keyw2’ and set the `note` field to the entry key to all entries which are found in either the `examples1.bib` or `examples2.bib` files.

```
\DeclareSourceMap{
  \maps[datatype=bibtex]{
    \map{
      \step[fieldsource=title]
      \step[fieldset=note, origfieldval]
    }
  }
}
```

Copy the `title` field to the `note` field unless the `note` field already exists.

```
\DeclareSourceMap{
  \maps[datatype=bibtex]{
    \map{
      \step[typesource=chat, typetarget=customa, final]
      \step[fieldset=type, origentrytype]
    }
  }
}
```

Any `chat` entrytypes would become `customa` entrytypes and would automatically have a `type` field set to ‘chat’ unless the `type` field already exists in the entry (because `overwrite` is false by default). This mapping applies only to entries of type `@chat` since the first step has `final` set and so if the `typesource` does not match the entry entrytype, processing of this `\map` immediately terminates.

```
\DeclareSourceMap{
  \maps[datatype=bibtex]{
    \map{
      \perdatasource{examples.bib}
      \pertype{article}
      \pertype{book}
      \step[fieldset=abstract, null]
      \step[fieldset=note, fieldvalue={Auto-created this field}]
    }
  }
}
```

```
}
}
```

Any entries of entrytype @article or @book from the examples.bib datasource would have their abstract fields removed and a note field added with value 'Auto-created this field'.

```
\DeclareSourceMap{
  \maps[datatype=bibtex]{
    \map{
      \step[fieldset=abstract, null]
      \step[fieldsource=conductor, fieldtarget=namea]
      \step[fieldsource=gps, fieldtarget=usera]
    }
  }
}
```

This removes abstract fields from any entry, changes conductor fields to namea fields and changes gps fields to usera fields.

```
\DeclareSourceMap{
  \maps[datatype=bibtex]{
    \map{
      \step[fieldsource=pubmedid, fieldtarget=eprint, final]
      \step[fieldset=eprinttype, origfield]
      \step[fieldset=userd, fieldvalue={Some string of things}]
    }
  }
}
```

Applies only to entries with pubmed fields and maps pubmedid fields to eprint fields, sets the eprinttype field to 'pubmedid' and also sets the userd field to the string 'Some string of things'.

```
\DeclareSourceMap{
  \maps[datatype=bibtex]{
    \map{
      \step[fieldsource=series,
        match=\regexp{\A\d*(.+)},
        replace=\regexp{\L$1}]
    }
  }
}
```

Here, the contents of the series field have leading numbers stripped and the remainder of the contents lowercased. Since regular expressions usually contain all sort of special characters, it is best to enclose them in the provided \regexp macro as shown—this will pass the expression through to Biber correctly.

```
\DeclareSourceMap{
  \maps[datatype=bibtex]{
    \map{
      \step[fieldsource=maintitle,
        match=\regexp{Collected\s+Works.+Freud},
        final]
      \step[fieldset=keywords, fieldvalue=freud]
    }
  }
}
```

Here, if for an entry, the maintitle field matches a particular regular expression, we set a special keyword so we can, for example, make a references section just for certain items.

```
\DeclareSourcemap{
  \maps[datatype=bibtex]{
    \map{
      \step[fieldsource=lista, match=\regexp{regexp}, final]
      \step[fieldset=lista, null]
    }
  }
}
```

If an entry has a lista field which matches regular expression 'regexp', then it is removed.

```
\DeclareSourcemap{
  \maps[datatype=bibtex]{
    \map[overwrite=false]{
      \step[fieldsource=author]
      \step[fieldset=editor, origfieldval, final]
      \step[fieldsource=editor, match=\regexp{A(?:)\s+and.*}, replace={$1}]
    }
  }
}
```

For any entry with an author field, try to set editor to the same as author. If this fails because editor already exists, stop, otherwise truncate editor to just the first name in the name list.

```
\DeclareSourcemap{
  \maps[datatype=bibtex]{
    \map{
      \step[fieldsource=author,
        match={Smith, Bill},
        replace={Smith, William}]
      \step[fieldsource=author,
        match={Jones, Baz},
        replace={Jones, Barry}]
    }
  }
}
```

Here, we use multiple match/replace for the same field to regularise some inconstant name variants. Bear in mind that \step processing within a map element is sequential and so the changes from a previous \steps are already committed. Note that we don't need the \regexp macro to protect the regular expressions in this example as they contain no characters which need special escaping. Please note that due to the difficulty of protecting regular expressions in  $\text{\LaTeX}$ , there should be no literal spaces in the argument to \regexp. Please use escape code equivalents if spaces are needed. For example, this example, if using \regexp, should be:

```
\DeclareSourcemap{
  \maps[datatype=bibtex]{
    \map{
      \step[fieldsource=author,
        match=\regexp{Smith,\s+Bill},
        replace=\regexp{Smith,\x20William}]
      \step[fieldsource=author,
        match=\regexp{Jones,\s+Baz},
        replace=\regexp{Jones,\x20Barry}]
    }
  }
}
```

```

    }
  }
}

```

Here, we have used the hexadecimal escape sequence ‘\x20’ in place of literal spaces in the replacement strings.

```

\DeclareSourceMap{
  \maps[datatype=bibtex]{
    \map[overwrite]{
      \step[fieldsource=author, match={Doe}, final]
      \step[fieldset=shortauthor, origfieldval]
      \step[fieldset=sortname, origfieldval]
      \step[fieldsource=shortauthor,
        match=\regexp{Doe,\s*(?:\.\ohn)(?:[-]*)?(?:P\.\Paul)*},
        replace={Doe, John Paul}]
      \step[fieldsource=sortname,
        match=\regexp{Doe,\s*(?:\.\ohn)(?:[-]*)?(?:P\.\Paul)*},
        replace={Doe, John Paul}]
    }
  }
}

```

Only applies to entries with an author field matching ‘Doe.’. First the author field is copied to both the shortauthor and sortname fields, overwriting them if they already exist. Then, these two new fields are modified to canonicalise a particular name, which presumably has some variants in the data source.

```

\DeclareSourceMap{
  \maps[datatype=bibtex]{
    \map[overwrite]{
      \step[fieldsource=verba, final]
      \step[fieldset=verbb, fieldvalue=/, append]
      \step[fieldset=verbb, origfieldval, append]
      \step[fieldsource=verbb, final]
      \step[fieldset=verbc, fieldvalue=/, append]
      \step[fieldset=verbc, origfieldval, append]
    }
  }
}

```

This example demonstrates the sequential nature of the step processing and the append option. If an entry has a verba field then first, a forward slash is appended to the verbb field. Then, the contents of verba are appended to the verbb field. A slash is then appended to the verbc field and the contents of verbb are appended to the verbc field.

```

\DeclareSourceMap{
  \maps[datatype=bibtex]{
    \map[overwrite]{
      \step[fieldset=autourl, fieldvalue={http://scholar.google.com/scholar?q=}]
      \step[fieldsource=title]
      \step[fieldset=autourl, origfieldval, append]
      \step[fieldset=autourl, fieldvalue={"author:}, append]
      \step[fieldsource=author, match=\regexp{A([^\s]+)\s*,}]
      \step[fieldset=autourl, fieldvalue={\$1}, append]
      \step[fieldset=autourl, fieldvalue={\&as_ylo=}, append]
      \step[fieldsource=year]
      \step[fieldset=autourl, origfieldval, append]
      \step[fieldset=autourl, fieldvalue={\&as_yhi=}, append]
      \step[fieldset=autourl, origfieldval, append]
    }
  }
}

```

```

    }
  }
}

```

This example assumes you have created a field called `autourl` using the `datamodel` macros from § 4.5.4 in order to hold, for example, a Google Scholar query URL auto-created from elements of the entry. The example progressively extracts information from the entry, constructing the URL as it goes. It demonstrates that it is possible to refer to parenthetical matches from the most recent match in any following `fieldvalue` which allows extracting the family name from the author, assuming a ‘family, given’ format. The resulting field could then be used as a hyperlink from, for example, the title of the work in the bibliography.

```

\DeclareSourcemap{
  \maps[datatype=bibtex]{
    \map{
      \step[fieldsource=title, match={A Title}, final]
      \step[entrynull]
    }
  }
}

```

Any entry with a `title` field matching ‘A Title’ will be completely ignored.

```

\DeclareSourcemap{
  \maps[datatype=bibtex]{
    \map{
      \pernottype{book}
      \pernottype{article}
      \step[entrynull]
    }
  }
}

```

Any entry which is not a `@book` or `@article` will be ignored.

```

\DeclareSourcemap{
  \maps[datatype=bibtex]{
    \map{
      \perdatasource{biblatex-examples.bib}
      \step[entryclone={rel-}]
    }
  }
}

```

Here, a clone of an entry from the specified data source will be created. The entry key of the clone will be the same as the original but prefixed by the value of the `entryclone` parameter. The cloned entry would still need to be cited in the document using its new entry key. This type of mapping step should be used with care as it may produce labelling problems in `authoryear` styles which use, for example, `extrayear`. One use case is for numeric styles which contain multiple bibliographies containing the same entry. In this case, you may need different bibliography number label for the same entry and this is very tricky when there is only one entry which needs different labels. Creating clones with different entry keys solves this problem.

`biblatexml` datasources are more structured than BibTeX since they are XML. Sourcemappping is possible with `biblatexml` too but the specifications of source and target fields etc. also support XPath 1.0 paths in order to be able to work with the structured data. Fields can be specified as per the BibTeX examples above and these are converted into XPath 1.0 queries internally as necessary. For example:

```

\DeclareSourcemap{

```

```

\maps[datatype=biblatexml]{
  \map{
    \step[fieldsource=\regex{./bltx:names[@type='author']/bltx:name[2]/bltx:namepart[@type='family
      ↪ ']}],
      match=\regex{\ASmith},
      replace={Jones}]
  }
  \map{
    \step[fieldsource=editor, fieldtarget=translator]
  }
  \map{
    \step[fieldsource=\regex{./bltx:names[@type='editor']},
      fieldtarget=\regex{./bltx:names[@type='translator']}]
  }
  \map{
    \step[fieldset=\regex{./bltx:names[@type='author']/bltx:name[2]/@useprefix},
      fieldvalue={false}]
  }
}
}

```

These maps, respectively,

- Replace the family name ‘Smith’ of the second author name with ‘Jones’
- Move the editor to translator
- Move the editor to translator but with explicit XPaths
- Set the per-namelist useprefix option on the author name list to ‘false’

#### 4.5.4 Data Model Specification

The data model which Biblatex uses consists of four main elements:

- Specification of constant strings and lists of strings
- Specification of valid Entrytypes
- Specification of valid Fields along with their type, datatype and any special flags
- Specification of which Fields are valid in which Entrytypes
- Specification of constraints which can be used to validate data against the data model

The default data model is defined in the core Biblatex file `blx-dm.def` using the macros described in this section. The default data model is described in detail in § 2. The data model is used internally by Biblatex and also by the backend. In practice, changing the data model means that you can define the entrytypes and fields for your datasources and validate your data against the data model. Naturally, this is not much use unless your style supports any new entrytypes or fields and it raises issues of portability between styles (although this can be mitigated by using the dynamic data modification functionality described in § 4.5.3).

Validation against the data model means that after mapping your data sources into the data model, Biber (using its `--validate_datamodel` option) can check:

- Whether all entrytypes are valid entrytypes
- Whether all fields are valid fields for their entrytype
- Whether the fields obey various constraints on their format which you specify

Redefining the data model can be done in several places. Style authors can create a `.dbx` file which contains the data model macros required and this will be loaded automatically when using the Biblatex package `style` option by looking for a file named after the style with a `.dbx` extension (just like the `.cbx` and `.bbx` files for a style). If the `style` option is not used but rather the `citestyle` and `bibstyle` options, then the package will try to load `.dbx` files called `<citestyle>.dbx` and `<bibstyle>.dbx`. Alternatively, the name of the data model file can be different from any of the style option names by specifying the name (without `.dbx` extension) to the package `datamodel` option. After loading the style data model file, Biblatex then loads, if present, a users `biblatex-dm.cfg` which should be put somewhere Biblatex can find it, just like the main configuration file `biblatex.cfg`. To summarise, the data model is determined by adding to the data model

from each of these locations, in order:

```
blx-dm.def→
  <datamodel option>.dbx →
  <style option>.dbx →
  <citestyle option>.dbx and <bibstyle option>.dbx →
  biblatex-dm.cfg
```

It is not possible to add to a loaded data model by using the macros below in your preamble as the preamble is read after Biblatex has defined critical internal macros based on the data model. If any data model macro is used in a document, it will be ignored and a warning will be generated. The data model is defined using the following macros:

`\DeclareDatamodelConstant`[*<options>*]{*<name>*}{*<constantdef>*}

Declares the *<name>* as a datamodel constant with definition *<constantdef>*. Such constants are typically used internally by Biber.

`type`=string, list default: string

A constant can be a simple string (default if the *<type>* option is omitted) or a comma-separated list of strings.

`\DeclareDatamodelEntrytypes`[*<options>*]{*<entrytypes>*}

Declares the comma-separated list of *<entrytypes>* to be valid entrytypes in the data model. As usual in TeX csv lists, make sure each element is immediately followed by a comma or the closing brace—no extraneous whitespace.

`skipout`=true, false default: false

This entrytype is not output to the .bbl. Typically used for special entrytypes which are processed and consumed by the backend such as @xdata.

`\DeclareDatamodelFields`[*<options>*]{*<fields>*}

Declares the comma-separated list of *<fields>* to be valid fields in the data model with associated comma-separated *<options>*. The *<type>* and *<datatype>* options are mandatory. All valid *<options>* are:

`type`=*<field type>*

Set the type of the field as described in § 2.2.1, typically ‘field’ or ‘list’.

`format`=*<field format>*

Any special format of the field. Normally unspecified but can take the value ‘xsv’ which tells Biber that this field has a separated values format. The exact separator can be controlled with the Biber option xsvsep and defaults to the expected comma surrounded by optional whitespace.

`datatype`=*<field datatype>*

Set the datatype of the field as described in § 2.2.1. For example, ‘name’ or ‘literal’.

`nullok`=true, false default: false

The field is allowed to be defined but empty.

`skipout`=true, false default: false

The field is not output to the .bbl and is therefore not present during Biblatex style processing. As usual in TeX csv lists, make sure each element is immediately followed by a comma or the closing brace—no extraneous whitespace.

`label`=true, false default: false

The field can be used as a label in a bibliography or bibliography list. Specifying this causes Biblatex to create several helper macros for the field so that there are some internal lengths and headings etc. defined.

`\DeclareDatamodelEntryfields`[*<entrytypes>*]{*<fields>*}

Declares that the comma-separated list of *<fields>* is valid for the comma-separated list of *<entrytypes>*. If *<entrytypes>* is not given, the fields are valid for all entrytypes. As usual in TeX csv lists, make sure each element is immediately followed by a comma or the closing brace—no extraneous whitespace.

`\DeclareDatamodelConstraints`[*<entrytypes>*]{*<specification>*}

If a comma-separated list of *<entrytypes>* is given, the constraints apply only to those entrytypes. The *<specification>* is an undelimited list of `\constraint` directives which specify a constraint. Spaces, tabs, and line endings may be used freely to visually arrange the *<specification>*. Blank lines are not permissible.

`\constraint[⟨type=constrainttype⟩]{⟨elements⟩}`

Specifies a constraint of type *⟨constrainttype⟩*. Valid constraint types are:

`type=data, mandatory, conditional`

Constraints of type ‘data’ put restrictions on the value of a field. Constraints of type ‘mandatory’ specify which fields or combinations of fields an entrytype should have. Constraints of type ‘conditional’ allow more sophisticated conditional and quantified field constraints.

`datatype=integer, isbn, issn, ismn, date, pattern`

For constraints of type *⟨data⟩*, constrain field values to be the given datatype.

`rangemin=⟨num⟩`

For constraints of *⟨type⟩* ‘data’ and *⟨datatype⟩* ‘integer’, constrain field values to be at least *⟨num⟩*.

`rangemax=⟨num⟩`

For constraints of *⟨type⟩* ‘data’ and *⟨datatype⟩* ‘integer’, constrain field values to be at most *⟨num⟩*.

`pattern=⟨patt⟩`

For constraints of *⟨type⟩* ‘data’ and *⟨datatype⟩* ‘pattern’, constrain field values to match regular expression pattern *⟨patt⟩*.

It is best to wrap any regular expression in the macro `\regexp`, see § 4.5.3.

A `\constraint` macro may contain any of the following:

`\constraintfieldsor{⟨fields⟩}`

For constraints of *⟨type⟩* ‘mandatory’, specifies that an entry must contain a boolean OR of the `\constraintfields`.

`\constraintfieldsxor{⟨fields⟩}`

For constraints of *⟨type⟩* ‘mandatory’, specifies that an entry must contain a boolean XOR of the `\constraintfields`.

`\antecedent[⟨quantifier=quantspec⟩]{⟨fields⟩}`

For constraints of *⟨type⟩* ‘conditional’, specifies a quantified set of `\constraintfields` which must be satisfied before the `\consequent` of the constraint is checked. *⟨quantspec⟩* should have one of the following values:

`quantifier=all, one, none`

Specifies how many of the `\constraintfield`’s inside the `\antecedent` have to be present to satisfy the antecedent of the conditional constraint.

`\consequent[⟨quantifier=quantspec⟩]{⟨fields⟩}`

For constraints of *⟨type⟩* ‘conditional’, specifies a quantified set of `\constraintfields` which must be satisfied if the preceding `\antecedent` of the constraint was satisfied. *⟨quantspec⟩* should have one of the following values:

`quantifier=all, one, none`

Specifies how many of the `\constraintfield`’s inside the `\consequent` have to be present to satisfy the consequent of the conditional constraint.

`\constraintfield{⟨field⟩}`

For constraints of *⟨type⟩* ‘data’, the constraint applies to this *⟨field⟩*. For constraints of *⟨type⟩* ‘mandatory’, the entry must contain this *⟨field⟩*.

The data model declaration macros may be used multiple times as they append to the previous definitions. In order to replace, change or remove existing definitions (such as the default model which is loaded with Biblatex), you should reset (clear) the current definition and then set what you want using the following macros. Typically, these macros will be the first things in any `biblatex-dm.cfg` file:

`\ResetDatamodelEntrytypes`

Clear all data model entrytype information.

`\ResetDatamodelFields`

Clear all data model field information.

`\ResetDatamodelEntryfields`

Clear all data model fields for entrytypes information.



## `\ResetDatamodelConstraints`

Clear all data model fields Constraints information.

Here is an example of a simple data model. Refer to the core Biblatex file `blx-dm.def` for the default data model specification.

```
\ResetDatamodelEntrytypes
\ResetDatamodelFields
\ResetDatamodelEntryfields
\ResetDatamodelConstraints

\DeclareDatamodelEntrytypes{entrytype1, entrytype2}

\DeclareDatamodelFields[type=field, datatype=literal]{field1,field2,field3,field4}

\DeclareDatamodelEntryfields{field1}
\DeclareDatamodelEntryfields[entrytype1]{field2,field3}
\DeclareDatamodelEntryfields[entrytype2]{field2,field3,field4}

\DeclareDatamodelConstraints[entrytype1]{
  \constraint[type=data, datatype=integer, rangemin=3, rangemax=10]{
    \constraintfield{field1}
  }
  \constraint[type=mandatory]{
    \constraintfield{field1}
    \constraintfieldsxor{
      \constraintfield{field2}
      \constraintfield{field3}
    }
  }
}
\DeclareDatamodelConstraints{
  \constraint[type=conditional]{
    \antecedent[quantifier=none]{
      \constraintfield{field2}
    }
    \consequent[quantifier=all]{
      \constraintfield{field3}
      \constraintfield{field4}
    }
  }
}
```

This model specifies:

- Clear the default data model completely
- Two valid entry types `@entrytype1` and `@entrytype2`
- Four valid literal field fields
- `field1` is valid for all entrytypes
- `field2` and `field3` are valid for `entrytype1`
- `field2`, `field3` and `field4` are valid for `@entrytype2`
- For `@entrytype1`:
  - `field1` must be an integer between 3 and 10
  - `field1` must be present
  - One and only one of `field2` or `field3` must be present
- For any entrytype, if `field2` is not present, `field3` and `field4` must be present

## 4.5.5 标签 Labels

字母顺序制样式使用一个标签来区分参考文献条目。这个标签由条目的内容使用一个描述怎么构建标签的模板构建。该模板可以全局自定义或者分条目类型定义。标签的自定义需要用 Biber 后端程序而不能使用其它后端程序。Alphabetic styles use a label to identify bibliography entries. This label is constructed from components of the entry using a template which describes how to build the label. The template can be customised on a global or per-type basis. A separate template is used to specify how to extract parts of name fields for labels, since names can be quite complex fields.

`\DeclareLabelAlphaTemplate[⟨entrytype, ...⟩]{⟨specification⟩}`

Defines the alphabetic label template for the given entrytypes. If no entrytypes are specified in the first argument, then the global label template is defined. The *⟨specification⟩* is an undelimited list of `\labelElement` directives which specify the elements used to build the label. Spaces, tabs, and line endings may be used freely to visually arrange the *⟨specification⟩*. Blank lines are not permissible. This command may only be used in the preamble.

`\labelElement{⟨elements⟩}`

Specifies the elements used to build the label. The *⟨elements⟩* are an undelimited list of `\field` or `\literal` commands which are evaluated in the order in which they are given. The first `\field` or `\literal` which expands to a non-empty string is used as the `\labelElement` expansion and the next `\labelElement`, if any, is then processed.

`\field[⟨options⟩]{⟨field⟩}`

If *⟨field⟩* is non-empty, use it as the current label `\labelElement`, subject to the options below. Useful values for *⟨field⟩* are typically the name list type fields, date fields, and title fields. You may also use the 'citekey' pseudo-field to specify the citation key as part of the label. Name list fields are treated specially and when a name list field is specified, the template defined with `\DeclareLabelAlphaNameTemplate` is used to extract parts from the name which then returns the string that the `\field` option uses.

`final=true, false` default: false

This option marks a `\field` directive as the final one in the *⟨specification⟩*. If the *⟨field⟩* is non-empty, then this field is used for the label and the remainder of the *⟨specification⟩* will be ignored. The short form `final` is equivalent to `final=true`.

`lowercase=true, false` default: false

Forces the label part derived from the field to lowercase. By default, the case is taken from the field source and not modified.

`strwidth=⟨integer⟩` default: 1

The number of characters of the *⟨field⟩* to use. This setting may be overridden by an individual name part when extracting characters from a name. See `\DeclareLabelAlphaNameTemplate` below.

`strside=left, right` default: left

The side of the string from which to take the `strwidth` number of characters. This setting may be overridden by an individual name part when extracting characters from a name. See `\DeclareLabelAlphaNameTemplate` below.

`padside=left, right` default: right

Side to pad the label part when using the `padchar` option. Only for use with fixed-width label strings (`strwidth`).

`padchar=⟨character⟩`

If present, pads the label part on the `padside` side with the specified character to the length of `strwidth`. Only for use with fixed-width label strings (`strwidth`).

`uppercase=true, false` default: false

Forces the label part derived from the field to uppercase. By default, the case is taken from the field source and not modified.

`varwidth=true, false` default: false

Use a variable width, left-side substring of characters from the string returned for *⟨field⟩*. The length of the string is determined by the minimum length needed to disambiguate the substring from all other *⟨field⟩* elements in the same position in the label. For name list fields, this means that each name substring is disambiguated from all other name substrings which occur in the same position in the name list (see examples below). This option overrides `strwidth` if both are used. The short form `varwidth` is equivalent to `varwidth=true`. For name list fields, the `\nameparts` with the `pre` option set are prepended to the string returned from this disambiguation.

`varwidthnorm=true, false` default: false

As `varwidth` but will force the disambiguated substrings for the *⟨field⟩* to be the same length as the longest disambiguated substring. This can be used to regularise the format of the labels if desired. This option overrides `strwidth` if both are used. The short form `varwidthnorm` is equivalent to `varwidthnorm=true`.

`varwidthlist=true, false` default: false

Alternative method of automatic label disambiguation where the field as a whole is disambiguated from all other fields in the same label position. For non-name list fields, this is equivalent to `varwidth`. For name list fields, names in a name list are not disambiguated from other names in the same position in their name lists but instead the entire name list is disambiguated as a whole from other name lists (see examples below). This option overrides `strwidth` if both are used. The short form `varwidthlist` is equivalent to `varwidthlist=true`. For name list fields, the `\nameparts` with the `pre` option set are prepended to the string returned from this disambiguation.

`strwidthmax=<integer>`

When using `varwidth`, this option sets a limit (in number of characters) on the length of variable width substrings. This option can be used to regularise the label.

`strfixedcount=<integer>` default: 1

When using `varwidthnorm`, there must be at least `strfixedcount` disambiguated substrings with the same, maximal length to trigger the forcing of all disambiguated substrings to this same maximal length.

`ifnames=<range>`

Only use this `\field` specification if it is a name list field with a number of names matching the `ifnames` range value. This allows a `\label element` to be conditionalised on name length (see below). The range can be specified as in the following examples:

```
ifnames=3      -> Only apply to name lists containing exactly 3 names
ifnames={2-4}  -> Only apply to name lists containing minimum 2 and maximum 4 names
ifnames={-3}   -> Only apply to name lists containing at most 3 names
ifnames={2-}   -> Only apply to name lists containing at least 2 names
```

`names=<range>`

By default, for name list fields, the names used range from the first name to the `maxalphanames/minalphanames` truncation. This option can be used to override this with an explicit range of names to consider. The plus '+' sign is a special end of range marker denoting the truncation point of `max/minalphanames`. The range separator can be any number of characters with the Unicode Dash property. For example:

```
name=3        -> Use first 3 names in the name list
name={2-3}     -> Use second and thirds names only
name={-3}      -> Same as 1-3
name={2-}      -> Use all names starting with the second name (ignoring max/minalphanames truncation)
name={2-+}     -> Use all names starting with the second name (respecting max/minalphanames truncation)
```

`namessep=<string>` default: empty

An arbitrary string separator to put between names in a namelist.

`noalphaothers=true, false` default: false

By default, `\labelalphaothers` is appended to label parts derived from name lists if there are more names in the list than are shown in the label part. This option can be used to disable the default behaviour.

`\literal{<characters>}`

Insert the literal `<characters>` into the label at this point.

When a name list `\field` is specified, the method of extracting the string is specified by a separate template specified by the following command:

`\DeclareLabelAlphaNameTemplate[<entrytype, ...>]{<specification>}`

Specifies the template to use to extract a label string from a name list when a `\field` specification in `\DeclareLabelAlphaTemplate` contains a name list. The template can be specified per-entrytype.

`\namepart[<options>]{<namepart>}`

`<namepart>` is one of the datamodel nameparts defined with the `\DeclareDatamodelConstant` command (see § 4.2.3). The options are:

`use=true, false` default: false

Only use the `<namepart>` in constructing the label information if there is a corresponding option `use'<namepart>'` and that option is true.

`pre=true, false`

default: false

When constructing label strings from names, the `\namepart` *without* a `pre` option will be used to construct label string, passing through disambiguation, substring etc. operations as specified by the `\field` options in `\DeclareLabelAlphaTemplate`. Then the `\namepart` options *with* the `pre` option set will be prepended to the result, (in the order given, if there are more than one such `\nameparts`). This allows to unconditionally prepend certain namepart information to name label strings, like name prefixes. Note that the uppercase and lowercase options of `\field` in `\DeclareLabelAlphaTemplate` are applied to the entire label returned from `\DeclareLabelAlphaTemplate`, both pre parts and non pre.

`compound=true, false`

default: false

For static (non-varwidth) disambiguation in `\DeclareLabelAlphaTemplate`, nameparts separated by whitespace or hyphens (compound names) as separate names for label generation. This means that when forming a label out of, for example the surname 'Ballam Forsyth' with a 1 character, left-side substring, this name would give 'BF' with `compound=true` and 'B' with `compound=false`. The short form `compound` is equivalent to `compound=true`.

`strwidth=<integer>`

default: 1

The number of characters of the `<namepart>` to use.

`strside=left, right`

default: left

The side of the string from which to take the `strwidth` number of characters.

Note that the templates for labels can be defined per-type and you should be aware of this when using the automatically disambiguated label functionality. Disambiguation is not per-type as this might lead to ambiguity due to different label formats for different types being isolated from each others disambiguation process. Normally, you will want to use very different label formats for different types to make the type obvious by the label.

Here are some examples. The default global Biblatex alphabetic label template is defined below. Firstly, shorthand has `final=true` and so if there is a shorthand field, it is used as the label and nothing more of the template is considered. Next, the `label` field is used as the first label element if it exists. Otherwise, if there is only one name (`ifnames=1`) in the `labelname` list, then three characters from the left side of the family name in the `labelname` are used as the first label element. If the `labelname` has more than one name in it, one character from the left side of each family name is used as the first label element. The second label element consists of 2 characters from the right side of the year field.

The default template for constructing labels from names is also shown. This prepends the first character from the left side of any prefix (if the `useprefix` option is true) to a label extracted from the family name (according to the options on the calling `\field` option from `\DeclareLabelAlphaTemplate`), allowing for compound family names.

```
\DeclareLabelAlphaTemplate{
  \labelelement{
    \field[final]{shorthand}
    \field[label]
    \field[strwidth=3,strside=left,ifnames=1]{labelname}
    \field[strwidth=1,strside=left]{labelname}
  }
  \labelelement{
    \field[strwidth=2,strside=right]{year}
  }
}

\DeclareLabelAlphaNameTemplate{
  \namepart[use=true, pre=true, strwidth=1, compound=true]{prefix}
  \namepart{family}
}
```

To get an idea of how the label automatic disambiguation works, consider the following author lists:

```
Agassi, Chang, Laver (2000)
Agassi, Connors, Lendl (2001)
Agassi, Courier, Laver (2002)
Borg, Connors, Edberg (2003)
Borg, Connors, Emerson (2004)
```

Assuming a template declaration such as:

```
\DeclareLabelalphaTemplate{
  \labelelement{
    \field[varwidth]{labelname}
  }
}
```

Then the labels would be:

```
Agassi, Chang, Laver    [AChLa]
Agassi, Connors, Lendl [AConLe]
Agassi, Courier, Laver  [ACouLa]
Borg, Connors, Edberg   [BConEd]
Borg, Connors, Emerson [BConEm]
```

With normalised variable width labels defined:

```
\DeclareLabelalphaTemplate{
  \labelelement{
    \field[varwidthnorm]{labelname}
  }
}
```

You would get the following as the substrings of names in each position are extended to the length of the longest substring in that same position:

```
Agassi, Chang, Laver    [AChaLa]
Agassi, Connors, Lendl [AConLe]
Agassi, Courier, Laver  [ACouLa]
Borg, Connors, Edberg   [BConEd]
Borg, Connors, Emerson [BConEm]
```

With a restriction to two characters for the name components of the label element defined like this:

```
\DeclareLabelalphaTemplate{
  \labelelement{
    \field[varwidthnorm, strwidthmax=2]{labelname}
  }
}
```

This would be the result (note that the individual family name label parts are no longer unambiguous):

```
Agassi, Chang, Laver    [AChLa]
Agassi, Connors, Lendl [ACoLe]
Agassi, Courier, Laver  [ACoLa]
Borg, Connors, Edberg   [BCoEd]
Borg, Connors, Emerson [BCoEm]
```

Alternatively, you could choose to disambiguate the name lists as a whole with:

```
\DeclareLabelalphaTemplate{
  \labelelement{
    \field[varwidthlist]{labelname}
  }
}
```

Which would result in:

|                        |        |
|------------------------|--------|
| Agassi, Chang, Laver   | [AChL] |
| Agassi, Connors, Lendl | [ACoL] |
| Agassi, Courier, Laver | [ACL]  |
| Borg, Connors, Edberg  | [BCEd] |
| Borg, Connors, Emerson | [BCE]  |

Perhaps you only want to consider at most two names for label generation but disambiguate at the whole name list level:

```
\DeclareLabelAlphaTemplate{
  \labelElement{
    \field[varwidthlist,names=2]{labelname}
  }
}
```

Which would result in:

|                        |        |
|------------------------|--------|
| Agassi, Chang, Laver   | [ACh+] |
| Agassi, Connors, Lendl | [ACo+] |
| Agassi, Courier, Laver | [AC+]  |
| Borg, Connors, Edberg  | [BC+a] |
| Borg, Connors, Emerson | [BC+b] |

In this last example, you can see `\labelalphaothers` has been appended to show that there are more names. The last two labels now require disambiguating with `\extraalpha` as there is no way of disambiguating this label name list with only two names.

Finally, here is an example using multiple label elements:

```
\DeclareLabelAlphaTemplate{
  \labelElement{
    \field[varwidthlist]{labelname}
  }
  \labelElement{
    \literal{-}
  }
  \labelElement{
    \field[strwidth=3,strside=right]{labelyear}
  }
}
```

Which would result in:

|                        |             |
|------------------------|-------------|
| Agassi, Chang, Laver   | [AChL-000]  |
| Agassi, Connors, Lendl | [AConL-001] |
| Agassi, Courier, Laver | [ACouL-002] |
| Borg, Connors, Edberg  | [BCEd-003]  |
| Borg, Connors, Emerson | [BCEm-004]  |

Here is another rather contrived example showing that you don't need to specially quote LaTeX special characters (apart from `%`, obviously) when specifying padding characters and literals:

```
\DeclareLabelAlphaTemplate{
  \labelElement{
    \literal{>}
  }
}
```

```

\labelement{
  \literal{\%}
}
\labelement{
  \field[namessep={}, strwidth=4, padchar=_]{labelname}
}
\labelement{
  \field[strwidth=3, padchar=&, padside=left]{title}
}
\labelement{
  \field[strwidth=2, strside=right]{year}
}
}

```

which given:

```

@Book{test,
  author   = {XXX YY and WWW ZZ},
  title    = {T},
  year     = {2007},
}

```

would resulting a label looking like this:

```
[>%YY/ZZ__&&T07]
```

Generating labels from fields may involve some difficulties when you have fields containing diacritics, hyphens, spaces etc. Often, you want to ignore things like separator characters or spaces when generating labels. An option is provided to customise the regular expression(s) to strip from a field before it is passed to the label generation system.

`\DeclareNoLabel{<specification>}`

Defines regular expressions to strip from any field before generating a label part for the field. The *<specification>* is an undelimited list of `\noLabel` directives which specify the regular expressions to remove from fields. Spaces, tabs and line endings may be used freely to visually arrange the *<specification>*. Blank lines are not permissible. This command may only be used in the preamble.

`\noLabel{<regexp>}`

Any number of `\noLabel` commands can be given each of which specifies to remove the *<regexp>* from the copy of the field which the label generation system sees. Since regular expressions usually contain special characters, it is best to enclose them in the provided `\regexp` macro as shown—this will pass the expression through to Bibex correctly.

If there is no `\DeclareNoLabel` specification, Bibex will default to:

```

\DeclareNoLabel{
  % strip punctuation, symbols, separator and control characters
  \noLabel{\regexp{[\p{P}\p{S}\p{C}]+}}
}

```

This Bibex default strips punctuation, symbol, separator and control characters from fields before passing the field string to the label generation system.

`\DeclareNoLabelwidthcount{<specification>}`

Defines regular expressions to ignore from any field when counting characters in fixed-width substrings. The *<specification>* is an undelimited list of `\noLabelwidthcount` directives which specify the regular expressions to ignore when counting characters for fixed-width substrings. Spaces, tabs and line endings may be used freely to visually arrange the *<specification>*. Blank lines are not permissible. This command may only be used in the preamble.

`\nolabelwidthcount{<regex>}`

Any number of `\nolabelwidthcount` commands can be given each of which specifies to ignore the `<regex>` when generating fixed-width substrings during label generation. Since regular expressions usually contain special characters, it is best to enclose them in the provided `\regex` macro as shown—this will pass the expression through to Bibex correctly.

There is no default `\DeclareNoLabelwidthcount` specification. Note that this setting is only taken into account when using fixed-width substrings (non-varwidth) during label part generation. See § 4.5.5.

### 4.5.6 Sorting

In addition to the predefined sorting schemes discussed in § 3.5, it is possible to define new ones or modify the default definitions. The sorting process may be customized further by excluding certain fields from sorting on a per-type basis and by automatically populating the `presort` field on a per-type basis.

`\DeclareSortingScheme[<options>]{<name>}{<specification>}`

Defines the sorting scheme `<name>`. The `<name>` is the identifier passed to the `sorting` option (§ 3.1.2.1) when selecting the sorting scheme. The `\DeclareSortingScheme` command supports the following optional arguments:

`locale=<locale>`

The locale for the sorting scheme which then overrides the global sorting locale in the `sortlocale` option discussed in § 3.1.2.1.

The `<specification>` is an undelimited list of `\sort` directives which specify the elements to be considered in the sorting process. Spaces, tabs, and line endings may be used freely to visually arrange the `<specification>`. Blank lines are not permissible. This command may only be used in the preamble.

`\sort{<elements>}`

Specifies the elements considered in the sorting process. The `<elements>` are an undelimited list of `\field`, `\literal`, and `\citeorder` commands which are evaluated in the order in which they are given. If an element is defined, it is added to the sort key and the sorting routine skips to the next `\sort` directive. If it is undefined, the next element is evaluated. Since literal strings are always defined, any `\literal` commands should be the sole or the last element in a `\sort` directive. All `<elements>` should be the same datatype as described in § 2.2.2 since they will be potentially compared to any of the other `<elements>` in other entries. The `\sort` command supports the following optional arguments:

`locale=<locale>`

Override the locale used for sorting at the level of a particular set of sorting elements. If specified, the locale overrides the locale set at the level of `\DeclareSortingScheme` and also the global setting. See also the discussion of the global sorting locale option `sortlocale` in § 3.1.2.1.

`direction=ascending, descending` default: ascending

The sort direction, which may be either ascending or descending. The default is ascending order.

`final=true, false` default: false

This option marks a `\sort` directive as the final one in the `<specification>`. If one of the `<elements>` is available, the remainder of the `<specification>` will be ignored. The short form `final` is equivalent to `final=true`.

`sortcase=true, false`

Whether or not to sort case-sensitively. The default setting depends on the global `sortcase` option.

`sortupper=true, false`

Whether or not to sort in ‘uppercase before lowercase’ (true) or ‘lowercase before uppercase’ order (false). The default setting depends on the global `sortupper` option.

`\field[<key=value, ...>]{<field>}`

The `\field` element adds a `<field>` to the sorting specification. If the `<field>` is undefined, the element is skipped. The `\field` command supports the following optional arguments:

`padside=left, right` default: left

Pads a field on the left or right side using `padchar` so that its width is `padwidth`. If no padding option is set, no padding is done at all. If any padding option is specified, then padding is performed and the missing options are assigned built-in default values. If padding and substring matching are both specified, the substring match is performed first.

`padwidth=<integer>` default: 4

The target width in characters.

`padchar=<character>` default: 0

The character to be used when padding the field.



`strside=left, right` default: left

Performs a substring match on the left or right side of the field. The number of characters to match is specified by the corresponding `strwidth` option. If no substring option is set, no substring matching is performed at all. If any substring option is specified, then substring matching is performed and the missing options are assigned built-in default values. If padding and substring matching are both specified, the substring match is performed first.

`strwidth=<integer>` default: 4

The number of characters to match.

`\literal{<string>}`

The `\literal` element adds a literal `<string>` to the sorting specification. This is useful as a fallback if some fields are not available.

`\citeorder` The `\citeorder` element has a special meaning. It requests a sort based on the lexical order of the actual citations. For entries cited within the same citation command like:

```
\cite{one,two}
```

there is a distinction between the lexical order and the semantic order. Here “one” and “two” have the same semantic order but a unique lexical order. The semantic order only matters if you specify further sorting to disambiguate entries with the same semantic order. For example, this is the definition of the none sorting scheme:

```
\DeclareSortingScheme{none}{  
  \sort{\citeorder}  
}
```

This sorts the bibliography purely lexically by the order of the keys in the citation commands. In the example above, it sorts “one” before “two”. However, suppose that you consider “one” and “two” to have the same order (semantic order) since they are cited at the same time and want to further sort these by year. Suppose “two” has an earlier year than “one”:

```
\DeclareSortingScheme{noneyear}{  
  \sort{\citeorder}  
  \sort{year}  
}
```

This sorts “two” before “one”, even though lexically, “one” would sort before “two”. This is possible because the semantic order can be disambiguated by the further sorting on year. With the standard none sorting scheme, the lexical order and semantic order are identical because there is nothing further to disambiguate them. This means that you can use `\citeorder` just like any other sorting specification element, choosing how to further sort entries cited at the same time (in the same citation command).

`\DeclareSortingNamekeyScheme[<schemename>]{<specification>}`

Defines how the sorting keys for names are constructed. This can change the sorting order of names arbitrarily because you can choose how to put together the name parts when constructing the string to compare when sorting. The sorting key construction scheme so defined is called `<schemename>` which defaults to “global” if this optional parameter is absent. When constructing the sorting key for a name, a sorting key for each name part is constructed and the key for each name is formed into an ordered key list with a special internal separator. The point of this option is to accommodate languages or situations where sorting of names needs to be customised (for example, Icelandic names are sometimes sorted by given names rather than by family names). This macro may be used multiple times to define schemes with different names which can then be referred to later. Sorting name key schemes can have the following scopes, in order of increasing precedence:

- The default scheme defined without the optional name argument
- Given as the `sortnamekeyscheme` option to a reference context (see § 3.6.11)
- Given as a per-entry option `sortnamekeyscheme` in a bibliography data source entry
- Given as a per-namelist option `sortnamekeyscheme`
- Given as a per-name option `sortnamekeyscheme`

By default there is only a global scheme which has the following `<specification>`:

```

\DeclareSortingNamekeyScheme{
  \keypart{
    \namepart[use=true]{prefix}
  }
  \keypart{
    \namepart{family}
  }
  \keypart{
    \namepart{given}
  }
  \keypart{
    \namepart{suffix}
  }
  \keypart{
    \namepart[use=false]{prefix}
  }
}

```

This means that the key is constructed by concatenating, in order, the name prefix (only if the `useprefix` option is true), the family name(s), the given names(s), the name suffix and then the name prefix (only if the `useprefix` option is false).

`\keypart{⟨part⟩}`

⟨part⟩ is an ordered list of of `\namepart` and `\literal` specifications which are concatenated together when constructing a part of the name sorting key.

`\literal{⟨string⟩}`

A literal string to insert into the name sorting key.

`\namepart{⟨name⟩}`

Specifies the ⟨name⟩ of a namepart to use in constructing the name sorting key.

`use=true, false`

default: true

Indicates that the namepart ⟨name⟩ is only to be used in this concatenation position if the corresponding `use 'name' option` is set to the specified boolean value.

`inits=true, false`

default: true

Indicates that only the initials of namepart ⟨name⟩ are to be used in constructing the sorting specification.

As an example, suppose you wanted to be able to sort names by given name rather than family name, you could define a sorting name key scheme like this:

```

\DeclareSortingNamekeyScheme[givenfirst]{
  \keypart{
    \namepart{given}
  }
  \keypart{
    \namepart[use=true]{prefix}
  }
  \keypart{
    \namepart{family}
  }
  \keypart{
    \namepart[use=false]{prefix}
  }
}

```

You can then use the name `givenfirst` at the appropriate scope in order to make Bibex use this scheme when constructing sorting name keys. For example, you could enable this for one bibliography list like this:

```
\begin{refcontext}[sortnamekeyscheme=givenfirst]
\printbibliography
\end{refcontext}
```

or perhaps you only want to do this for a particular entry:

```
@BOOK{key,
  OPTIONS = {sortnamekeyscheme=givenfirst},
  AUTHOR = {Arnar Vigfusson}
}
```

or just a name list by using the option as a pseudo-name which will be ignored:

```
@BOOK{key,
  AUTHOR = {sortnamekeyscheme=givenfirst and Arnar Vigfusson}
}
```

or just a single name by passing the option as part of the extended name information format which Biber supports (see Biber doc):

```
@BOOK{key,
  AUTHOR = {given=Arnar, family=Vigfusson, sortnamekeyscheme=givenfirst}
}
```

Now we give some examples of sorting schemes. In the first example, we define a simple name/title/year scheme. The name element may be either the author, the editor, or the translator. Given this specification, the sorting routine will use the first element which is available and continue with the title. Note that the options `use<name>` options are considered automatically in the sorting process:

```
\DeclareSortingScheme{sample}{
  \sort{
    \field{author}
    \field{editor}
    \field{translator}
  }
  \sort{
    \field{title}
  }
  \sort{
    \field{year}
  }
}
```

In the next example, we define the same scheme in a more elaborate way, considering special fields such as `presort`, `sortkey`, `sortname`, etc. Since the `sortkey` field specifies the master sort key, it needs to override all other elements except for `presort`. This is indicated by the `final` option. If the `sortkey` field is available, processing will stop at this point. If not, the sorting routine continues with the next `\sort` directive. This setup corresponds to the default definition of the `nty` scheme:

```
\DeclareSortingScheme{nty}{
  \sort{
    \field{presort}
  }
  \sort[final]{
    \field{sortkey}
  }
  \sort{
```

```

\field{sortname}
\field{author}
\field{editor}
\field{translator}
\field{sorttitle}
\field{title}
}
\sort{
\field{sorttitle}
\field{title}
}
\sort{
\field{sortyear}
\field{year}
}
}

```

Finally, here is an example of a sorting scheme which overrides the global sorting locale and additionally overrides again when sorting by the `origtitle` field. Note the use in the scheme-level override of a babel/polyglossia language name instead of a real locale identifier. Biber will map this to a suitable, real locale identifier (in this case, `sv_SE`):

```

\DeclareSortingScheme[locale=swedish]{custom}{
\sort{
\field{sortname}
\field{author}
\field{editor}
\field{translator}
\field{sorttitle}
\field{title}
}
\sort[locale=de_DE_phonebook]{
\field{origtitle}
}
}

```

**`\DeclareSortExclusion`**`{⟨entrytype, ...⟩}{⟨field, ...⟩}`

Specifies fields to be excluded from sorting on a per-type basis. The `⟨entrytype⟩` argument and the `⟨field⟩` argument may be a comma-separated list of values. A blank `⟨field⟩` argument will clear all exclusions for this `⟨entrytype⟩`. A value of `""` for `⟨entrytype⟩` will exclude `⟨field,...⟩` for every entrytype. This is equivalent to simply deleting the field from the sorting specification and is only normally used in combination with `\DeclareSortInclusion` when one wishes to exclude a field for all but explicitly included entrytypes. See example in `\DeclareSortInclusion` below. This command may only be used in the preamble.

**`\DeclareSortInclusion`**`{⟨entrytype, ...⟩}{⟨field, ...⟩}`

Only used along with `\DeclareSortExclusion`. Specifies fields to be included in sorting on a per-type basis. This allows the user to exclude a field from sorting for all entrytypes and then to override this for certain entrytypes. This is easier sometimes than using `\DeclareSortExclusion` to list exclusions for many entrytypes. The `⟨entrytype⟩` argument and the `⟨field⟩` argument may be a comma-separated list of values. This command may only be used in the preamble. For example, this would use `title` during sorting only for `@articles`:

```

\DeclareSortExclusion{*}{title}
\DeclareSortInclusion{article}{title}

```

**`\DeclarePresort`**`[⟨entrytype, ...⟩]{⟨string⟩}`

Specifies a string to be used to automatically populate the `presort` field of entries without a `presort` field. The `presort` may be defined globally or on a per-type basis. If the optional `⟨entrytype⟩` argument is given, the `⟨string⟩` applies to the

| From  | To         | Description                               |
|-------|------------|-------------------------------------------|
| iastr | devanagari | Sanskrit IAST <sup>47</sup> to Devanāgarī |

**Table 9: Valid transliteration pairs**

respective entry type. If not, it serves as the global default value. Specifying an  $\langle entrytype \rangle$  in conjunction with a blank  $\langle string \rangle$  will clear the type-specific setting. The  $\langle entrytype \rangle$  argument may be a comma-separated list of values. This command may only be used in the preamble.

`\DeclareSortTranslit[ $\langle entrytype \rangle$ ]{ $\langle specification \rangle$ }`

Languages which can be written in different scripts or alphabets often only have CLDR sorting tailoring for one script and it is expected that you transliterate into the supported script for sorting purposes. A common example is Sanskrit which is often written in academic contexts in IAST romanised script but which needs to be sorted in the ‘sa’ locale which expects the Devanāgarī script. This means that it is necessary to transliterate into the sorting script internally. `\DeclareSortTranslit` declares which parts of an entry you would like to transliterate for sorting purposes. Without the  $\langle entrytype \rangle$  parameter, the  $\langle specification \rangle$  applies to all entrytypes. The  $\langle specification \rangle$  is one or more `\translit` commands:

`\translit{ $\langle field \text{ or fieldset } \rangle$ }{ $\langle from \rangle$ }{ $\langle to \rangle$ }`

Specifies that the data field `field` or all fields in a fieldset  $\langle fieldset \rangle$  declared with `\DeclareDatafieldSet` (see § 4.5.2) should be transliterated from script  $\langle from \rangle$  to script  $\langle to \rangle$  for sorting purposes. The field/set argument can also be “” to apply transliteration to all fields. The valid  $\langle from \rangle$  and  $\langle to \rangle$  values are given in table 9. Note that Biblatex does not aim to support general transliteration, only those which are useful for sorting purposes. Please open a GitHub ticket for Biblatex if you think you need additional transliterations.

An example of transliterating titles so that they sort correctly in Sanskrit:

```
\DeclareDatafieldSet{settitles}{
  \member[field=title]
  \member[field=booktitle]
  \member[field=eventtitle]
  \member[field=issuetitle]
  \member[field=journaltitle]
  \member[field=maintitle]
  \member[field=origtitle]
}

\DeclareSortTranslit{
  \translit[settitles]{iastr}{devanagari}
}
```

#### 4.5.7 Bibliography List Filters

When using customisable bibliography lists (See § 3.6.4), usually one wants to return in the .bbl only those entries which have the particular fields which the bibliography list is summarising. For example, when printing a normal list of shorthands, you want the list returned by Biber in the .bbl to contain only those entries which have a shorthand field. This is accomplished by defining a bibliography list filter using the `\DeclareBiblistFilter` command. This differs from the filters defined using `\defbibfilter` (see § 3.6.10) since the filters defined by `\defbibfilter` run inside Biblatex after the .bbl has been generated. In addition, bibliography lists in the .bbl do not contain entry data, only the citation keys for the entries and so no filtering by Biblatex using `\defbibfilter` is possible for bibliography lists.

`\DeclareBiblistFilter{ $\langle name \rangle$ }{ $\langle specification \rangle$ }`

Defines a bibliography list filter with  $\langle name \rangle$ . The  $\langle specification \rangle$  consists of one or more `\filter` or `\filteror` macros, all of which must be satisfied for the entry to pass the filter:

`\filter[<filterspec>]{<filter>}`

Filter entries according to the *<filterspec>* and *<filter>*. *<filterspec>* can be one of:

**type/nottype** Entry is/is not of entrytype *<filter>*

**subtype/notsubtype** Entry is/is not of subtype *<filter>*

**keyword/notkeyword** Entry has/does not have keyword *<filter>*

**field/notfield** Entry has/does not have a field called *<filter>*

`\filteror{<type>}{<filters>}`

A wrapper around one or more `\filter` commands specifying that they form a disjunctive set, i.e. any one of the *<filters>* must be satisfied.

Fields in the datamodel which are marked as ‘Label fields’ (see § 4.5.4) automatically have a filter defined for them with the same name and which filters out any entries which do not contain the field. For example, Biblatex automatically generates a filter for the shorthand field:

```
\DeclareBibliFilter{shorthand}{
  \filter[type=field,filter=shorthand]
}
```

## 4.5.8 Controlling Name Initials Generation

Generating initials for name parts from a given name involves some difficulties when you have names with prefixes, diacritics, hyphens etc. Often, you want to ignore things like prefixes when generating initials so that the initials for “al-Hasan” is just “H” instead of “a-H”. This is tricky when you also have names like “Ho-Pun” where you want the initials to be “H-P”, for example.

`\DeclareNoinit{<specification>}`

Defines regular expressions to strip from names before generating initials. The *<specification>* is an undelimited list of `\noinit` directives which specify the regular expressions to remove from the name. Spaces, tabs and line endings may be used freely to visually arrange the *<specification>*. Blank lines are not permissible. This command may only be used in the preamble.

`\noinit{<regex>}`

Any number of `\noinit` commands can be given each of which specifies to remove the *<regex>* from the copy of the name which the initials generation system sees. Since regular expressions usually contain special characters, it is best to enclose them in the provided `\regex` macro as shown—this will pass the expression through to Bibex correctly.

If there is no `\DeclareNoinit` specification, Bibex will default to:

```
\DeclareNoinit{
  % strip lowercase prefixes like 'al-' when generating initials from names
  \noinit{\regex{b\p{Ll}{2}\p{Pd}}}}
  % strip some common diacritics when generating initials from names
  \noinit{\regex{[\x{2bf}\x{2018}]}}
}
```

This Bibex default strips a couple of diacritics and also strips lowercase prefixes from names before generating initials.

## 4.5.9 排序微调 Fine Tuning Sorting

对排序微调是很有用的，它可以忽略一些特殊域的某些部分。It can be useful to fine tune sorting so that it ignores certain parts of particular fields.

`\DeclareNosort{<specification>}`

Defines regular expressions to strip from particular fields or types of fields when sorting. The *<specification>* is an undelimited list of `\nosort` directives which specify the regular expressions to remove from particular fields or type of field. Spaces, tabs and line endings may be used freely to visually arrange the *<specification>*. Blank lines are not permissible. This command may only be used in the preamble.

`\nosort{⟨field or field type⟩}{⟨regexp⟩}`

Any number of `\nosort` commands can be given each of which specifies to remove the `⟨regexp⟩` from the `⟨field⟩` or `⟨field type⟩`. A `⟨field type⟩` is simple a convenience grouping of semantically similar fields from which you might want to remove a regexp. Table 10 shows the available field types. Since regular expressions usually contain special characters, it is best to enclose them in the provided `\regexp` macro as shown—this will pass the expression through to Biber correctly.

The default is:

```
\DeclareNosort{
  % strip prefixes like 'al-' when sorting names
  \nosort{type_names}{\regexp{\A\p{L}{2}\p{Pd}}}
  % strip some diacritics when sorting names
  \nosort{type_names}{\regexp{[\x{2bf}\x{2018}]}}
}
```

This Biber default strips a couple of diacritics and also strips prefixes from names when sorting. Suppose you wanted to ignore “The” at the beginning of a title field when sorting:

```
\DeclareNosort{
  \nosort{title}{\regexp{\AThe\s+}}
}
```

Or if you wanted to ignore “The” at the beginning of any title field:

```
\DeclareNosort{
  \nosort{type_title}{\regexp{\AThe\s+}}
}
```

## 4.5.10 特殊域 Special Fields

Some of the automatically generated fields from § 4.2.4.2 may be customized.

`\DeclareLabelname[⟨entrytype, ...⟩]{⟨specification⟩}`

Defines the fields to consider when generating the `labelname` field (see § 4.2.4.2). The `⟨specification⟩` is an ordered list of `\field` commands. The fields are checked in the order listed and the first field which is available will be used as `labelname`. This is the default definition:

```
\DeclareLabelname{%
  \field{shortauthor}
  \field{author}
  \field{shorteditor}
  \field{editor}
  \field{translator}
}
```

The `labelname` field may be customized globally or on a per-type basis. If the optional `⟨entrytype⟩` argument is given, the specification applies to the respective entry type. If not, it is applied globally. The `⟨entrytype⟩` argument may be a comma-separated list of values. This command may only be used in the preamble.

`\DeclareLabeldate[⟨entrytype, ...⟩]{⟨specification⟩}`

Defines the date components to consider when generating `labelyear`, `labelmonth`, `labelday`, `labelendyear`, `labelendmonth` and `labelendday` fields (see § 4.2.4.2). The `⟨specification⟩` is an ordered list of `\field` or `\literal` commands. The items are checked in the order listed and the first item which is available will be used to populate the mentioned fields. Note that the `\field` items do not have to be datatype ‘date’ in the data model so that you can create pseudo-year labels by, for example, using a `pubstate` field contents, if available, as the year label by defining `\DeclareLabeldate` suitably. Note also that a `\literal` command will always be used when found and so this should always be the last thing in the list. If the value of a `\literal` command is a valid localisation string, then this will be resolved in the current language, otherwise the value is used as a literal string as-is. This is the default definition:

| Field Type | Fields                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| type_name  | author<br>afterword<br>annotator<br>bookauthor<br>commentator<br>editor<br>editora<br>editorb<br>editorc<br>foreword<br>holder<br>introduction<br>namea<br>nameb<br>namec<br>shortauthor<br>shorteditor<br>translator |
| type_title | booktitle<br>eventtitle<br>issuetitle<br>journaltitle<br>maintitle<br>origtitle<br>title                                                                                                                              |

**Table 10: Field types for \nosort**

```
\DeclareLabeldate{%
  \field{date}
  \field{year}
  \field{eventdate}
  \field{origdate}
  \field{urldate}
  \literal{nodate}
}
```

Note that the date field is split by the backend into year, month which are also valid fields in the default data model. In order to support legacy data which directly sets year and/or month, the specification ‘date’ in \DeclareLabeldate will also match year and month fields, if present. The label\* fields may be customized globally or on a per-type basis. If the optional *<entrytype>* argument is given, the specification applies to the respective entry type. If not, it is applied globally. The *<entrytype>* argument may be a comma-separated list of values. This command may only be used in the preamble. See also § 4.2.4.3.

**\DeclareLabeltitle**[*<entrytype, ...>*]{*<specification>*}

Defines the fields to consider when generating the labeltitle field (see § 4.2.4.2). The *<specification>* is an ordered list of \field commands. The fields are checked in the order listed and the first field which is available will be used as labeltitle. This is the default definition:

```
\DeclareLabeltitle{%
  \field{shorttitle}
  \field{title}
}
```



The `labeltitle` field may be customized globally or on a per-type basis. If the optional `<entrytype>` argument is given, the specification applies to the respective entry type. If not, it is applied globally. The `<entrytype>` argument may be a comma-separated list of values. This command may only be used in the preamble.

#### 4.5.11 数据继承 Data Inheritance (crossref)

Biber features a highly customizable cross-referencing mechanism with flexible data inheritance rules. This sections deals with the configuration interface. See 附录 B for the default configuration. A note on terminology: the *child* or *target* is the entry with the `crossref` field, the *parent* or *source* is the entry the `crossref` field points to. The child inherits data from the parent.

`\DefaultInheritance[<exceptions>]{<options>}`

Configures the default inheritance behavior. This command may only be used in the preamble. The default behavior may be customized by setting the following `<options>`:

`all=true, false` default: true

Whether or not to inherit all fields from the parent by default.

`all=true` means that the child entry inherits all fields from the parent, unless a more specific inheritance rule has been set up with `\DeclareDataInheritance`. If an inheritance rule is defined for a field, data inheritance is controlled by that rule. `all=false` means that no data is inherited from the parent by default and each field to be inherited requires an explicit inheritance rule set up with `\DeclareDataInheritance`. The package default is `all=true`.

`override=true, false` default: false

Whether or not to overwrite target fields with source fields if both are defined. This applies both to automatic inheritance and to explicit inheritance rules. The package default is `override=false`, i.e., existing fields of the child entry are not overwritten.

`ignore=<csv list of uniqueness options>`

This option takes a comma-separated list of one or more of 'singletitle', 'uniquetitle', 'uniquebarettitle' and/or 'uniquework'. The purpose of this option is to ignore tracking information for these three options when the field which would trigger the tracking (表 ??) is inherited. An example—Suppose that you have several @book entries which all crossref a @mvbook from which they get their author field. You might reasonably want the `\ifsingletitle` test to return 'true' for this author as their only 'work' is the @mvbook. Similar comments would apply to situations involving the `\ifuniquetitle`, `\ifuniquebarettitle` and `\ifuniquework` tests. The `ignore` option lists which of these should have their tracking information ignored when the fields which would trigger them are inherited. The idea is that the presence of an inherited field does not contribute towards the determination of whether some combination of name/title is unique in the bibliographic data. For example, this modified default setting would ignore `singletitle` and `uniquetitle` tracking:

```
\DefaultInheritance{ignore={singletitle,uniquetitle}, all=true, override=false}
```

Of course, the ignoring of tracking does nothing if the fields inherited do not play a role in tracking. Only the fields listed in 表 ?? are relevant to this option.

The optional `<exceptions>` are an undelimited list of `\except` directives. Spaces, tabs, and line endings may be used freely to visually arrange the `<exceptions>`. Blank lines are not permissible.

`\except{<source>}{<target>}{<options>}`

Defines an exception to the default inheritance rules.

`\DeclareDataInheritance` sets the inheritance `<options>` for a specific `<source>` and `<target>` combination. The `<source>` and `<target>` arguments specify the parent and the child entry type. The asterisk matches all types and is permissible in either argument.

`\DeclareDataInheritance[<options>]{<source, ...>}{<target, ...>}{<rules>}`

Declares inheritance rules. The `<source>` and `<target>` arguments specify the parent and the child entry type. Either argument may be a single entry type, a comma-separated list of types, or an asterisk. The asterisk matches all entry types. The `<rules>` are an undelimited list of `\inherit` and/or `\noinherit` directives. Spaces, tabs, and line endings may be used freely to visually arrange the `<rules>`. Blank lines are not permissible. This command may only be used in the preamble. The options are:

`ignore=<csv list of uniqueness options>`

As the `ignore` option on `\DefaultInheritance` explained above. When set here, it takes precedence over any global options set with `\DefaultInheritance`. For example, this would ignore `singletitle` and `uniquetitle` tracking for a @book inheriting from a @mvbook.

```
\DeclareDataInheritance[ignore={singletitle,uniquetitle}]{mvbook}{book}{...}
```

`\inherit[<option>]{<source>}{<target>}`

Defines an inheritance rule by mapping a *<source>* field to a *<target>* field. *<option>* can be one of

`override=true, false`

default: false

As the override option for `\DefaultInheritance` explained above. When set here, it takes precedence over any global options set with `\DefaultInheritance`.

`\noinherit{<source>}`

Unconditionally prevents inheritance of the *<source>* field.

`\ResetDataInheritance` Clears all inheritance rules defined with `\DeclareDataInheritance`. This command may only be used in the preamble.

Here are some practical examples:

```
\DefaultInheritance{all=true,override=false}
```

This example shows how to configure the default inheritance behavior. The above settings are the package defaults.

```
\DefaultInheritance[
  \except{*}{online}{all=false}
]{all=true,override=false}
```

This example is similar to the one above but adds one exception: entries of type `@online` will, by default, not inherit any data from any parent.

```
\DeclareDataInheritance{collection}{incollection}{
  \inherit{title}{booktitle}
  \inherit{subtitle}{booksubtitle}
  \inherit{titleaddon}{booktitleaddon}
}
```

So far we have looked at setting up standard inheritance. For example, `all=true` means that the publisher field of a source entry is copied to the publisher field of the target entry. In some cases, however, asymmetric mappings are required. They are defined with `\DeclareDataInheritance`. The above example sets up three typical rules for `@incollection` entries referencing a `@collection`. We map the title and related fields of the source to the corresponding `booktitle` fields of the target.

```
\DeclareDataInheritance{mvbook,book}{inbook,bookinbook}{
  \inherit{author}{author}
  \inherit{author}{bookauthor}
}
```

This rule is an example of one-to-many mapping: it maps the `author` field of the source to both the `author` and the `bookauthor` fields of the target in order to allow for compact `inbook/bookinbook` entries. The source may be either a `@mvbook` or a `@book` entry, the target either an `@inbook` or a `@bookinbook` entry.

```
\DeclareDataInheritance{*}{inbook,incollection}{
  \noinherit{introduction}
}
```

This rule prevents inheritance of the `introduction` field. It applies to all targets of type `@inbook` or `@incollection`, regardless of the source entry type.

```
\DeclareDataInheritance{*}{*}{
  \noinherit{abstract}
}
```

This rule, which applies to all entries, regardless of the source and target entry types, prevents inheritance of the abstract field.

```
\DefaultInheritance{all=true,override=false}
\ResetDataInheritance
```

This example demonstrates how to emulate traditional BibTeX's cross-referencing mechanism. It enables inheritance by default, disables overwriting, and clears all other inheritance rules and mappings.

In a bibliography entry, you can give an option 'noinherit' where the value is a datafield set defined with `\DeclareDatafieldSet` (§ 4.5.2). This will block inheritance of the fields in the set on a per-entry basis. For example:

```
\DeclareDatafieldSet{nobtitle}{
  \member[field=booktitle]
}
```

```
@INBOOK{s1,
  OPTIONS = {noinherit=nobtitle},
  TITLE   = {Subtitle},
  CROSSREF = {s2}
}

@BOOK{s2,
  TITLE = {Title}
}
```

Here, s1 will not inherit the TITLE of s2 as BOOKTITLE as this is blocked by the datafield set given as the value to the noinherit option. One important thing to note is that children will never inherit any dateparts of a given type if they already contain a datepart of that type. So, for example:

```
@INBOOK{b1,
  DATE      = {2004-03-03},
  ORIGDATE  = {2004-03},
  CROSSREF  = {b2}
}

@BOOK{b2,
  DATE      = {2004-03-03/2005-08-09},
  ORIGDATE  = {2004-03/2005-08},
  EVENTDATE = {2004-03/2005-08},
}
```

Here, b1 will not inherit any of endyear, endmonth, endday, origendyear or origendmonth as this would make a mess of its own dates. It will, given the inheritance defaults, inherit all of the event\* date parts.

## 4.6 辅助命令

本节的工具用来分析和保存参考文献数据而不是对其进行格式化或者打印。

### 4.6.1 数据命令

本节的命令允许以 low-level 方式访问未格式化的参考文献数据。这些命令不是用来输出，而是用来将数据保存到临时宏中，可以用于下一步的比较。

`\thefield{<field>}`

展开为未格式化的<field>。如果<field>未定义那么展开为一个空字符串。

`\strfield{⟨field⟩}`

类似于`\thefield`命令，但其值经自动净化，以便安全的用于构成控制序列名。

`\csfield{⟨field⟩}`

类似于`\thefield`命令，但禁止展开

`\usefield{⟨command⟩}{⟨field⟩}`

执行`⟨command⟩`命令使用未格式化的`⟨field⟩`作为其参数

`\thelist{⟨literal list⟩}`

展开为未格式化的`⟨literal list⟩`。如果`list`未定义那么展开为一个空字符串。注意该命令中将`⟨literal list⟩`转存为本宏包使用的内部格式。这一格式不适合打印。

`\strlist{⟨literal list⟩}`

类似于`\thelist`，差别在于该命令能自动处理列表的内部表示，因此列表的值可以安全地用于控制序列名的构建。

`\thename{⟨name list⟩}`

展开为未格式化的`⟨name list⟩`。如果`list`未定义那么展开为一个空字符串。注意该命令中将`⟨name list⟩`转存为本宏包使用的内部格式。这一格式不适合打印。

`\strname{⟨name list⟩}`

类似于`\thename`，差别在于该命令能自动处理列表的内部表示，因此列表的值可以安全地用于控制序列名的构建。

`\savefield{⟨field⟩}{⟨macro⟩}`

`\savefield*{⟨field⟩}{⟨macro⟩}`

将未格式化的`⟨field⟩`拷贝到一个`⟨macro⟩`中。不带星的命令全局的定义`⟨macro⟩`，而带星的命令是局部定义。

`\savelist{⟨literal list⟩}{⟨macro⟩}`

`\savelist*{⟨literal list⟩}{⟨macro⟩}`

将未格式化的`⟨literal list⟩`拷贝到一个`⟨macro⟩`中。不带星的命令全局的定义`⟨macro⟩`，而带星的命令是局部定义。

`\savename{⟨name list⟩}{⟨macro⟩}`

`\savename*{⟨name list⟩}{⟨macro⟩}`

将未格式化的`⟨name list⟩`拷贝到一个`⟨macro⟩`中。不带星的命令全局的定义`⟨macro⟩`，而带星的命令是局部定义。

`\savefieldcs{⟨field⟩}{⟨curname⟩}`

`\savefieldcs*{⟨field⟩}{⟨curname⟩}`

类似于`\savefield`命令，当将控制序列名`⟨curname⟩`(即没有斜杠)作为参数，而不是宏。

`\savelistcs{⟨literal list⟩}{⟨curname⟩}`

`\savelistcs*{⟨literal list⟩}{⟨curname⟩}`

类似于`\savelist`命令，当将控制序列名`⟨curname⟩`(即没有斜杠)作为参数，而不是宏。

`\savenamecs{⟨name list⟩}{⟨curname⟩}`

`\savenamecs*{⟨name list⟩}{⟨curname⟩}`

类似于`\savename`命令，当将控制序列名`⟨curname⟩`(即没有斜杠)作为参数，而不是宏。

`\restorefield{⟨field⟩}{⟨macro⟩}`

从之前用`\savefield`命令定义的`⟨macro⟩`中将`⟨field⟩`恢复回来。该域是在局部范围内恢复。

`\restorelist{⟨literal list⟩}{⟨macro⟩}`

从之前用`\savelist`命令定义的`⟨macro⟩`中将`⟨literal list⟩`恢复回来。该`list`是在局部范围内恢复。

`\restorename{⟨name list⟩}{⟨macro⟩}`

从之前用`\savename`命令定义的`⟨macro⟩`中将`⟨name list⟩`恢复回来。该`list`是在局部范围内恢复。

`\clearfield{⟨field⟩}`

在局部范围内清除`⟨field⟩`。以这种方式清除的域对于后续的数据命令来说相当于没有定义。

`\clearlist{⟨literal list⟩}`

在局部范围内清除`⟨literal list⟩`。以这种方式清除的`list`对于后续的数据命令来说相当于没有定义。

`\clearname{<name list>}`

在局部范围内清除<name list>。以这种方式清除的 list 对于后续的数据命令来说相当于没有定义。

## 4.6.2 独立判断命令

本节的命令是不同类型的 stand-alone 判断命令，用于参考文献著录和标注样式中。

`\if<datatype>julian{<true>}{<false>}`

当日期‘datatype’date 因为julian和gregorianstart选项的设置转换为儒略历 (Julian Calendar) 时，展开为<true>。

`\ifdatejulian{<true>}{<false>}`

类似于`\if<datatype>julian`但用于`\mkbibdate*`格式化命令中 (§ 4.10.2)，在这些格式化命令中恰当使用的`\if<datatype>julian`命令等价于该命令。

`\if<datatype>dateera{<era>}{<true>}{<false>}`

当日期‘datatype’date(date, urldate, eventdate等) 指定了一个时区等于<era>，则展开为<true>，否则展开为<false>。Biber 确认并在.bbl文件中传递的可用<era>字符串是：

**bce**BCE/BC era

**ce**CE/AD era

该命令用于确定是否打印 § 4.9.2.21 节的地址字符串。

`\ifdateera{<era>}{<true>}{<false>}`

类似于`\if<datatype>dateera`，但用于`\mkbibdate*`格式化命令 (§ 4.10.2)，在这些格式化命令中恰当使用的`\if<datatype>dateera`命令等价于该命令。

`\if<datatype>datecirca{<true>}{<false>}`

当日期‘datatype’date(date, urldate, eventdate等) 在数据源中具有一个‘circa’标记时，则展开为<true>，否则展开为<false>。参见 § 2.3.8。该命令用于确定是否打印 § 4.9.2.21 节中的字符串。

`\ifdatecirca{<true>}{<false>}`

类似于`\if<datatype>datecirca`，但用于`\mkbibdate*`格式化命令 (§ 4.10.2)，在这些格式化命令中恰当使用的`\if<datatype>datecirca`命令等价于该命令。

`\if<datatype>dateuncertain{<true>}{<false>}`

当日期‘datatype’date(date, urldate, eventdate等) 在数据源中具有一个不确定标记时，则展开为<true>，否则展开为<false>。参见 § 2.3.8。该命令用于确定是否打印例如年份后的一个问号。

`\ifdateuncertain{<true>}{<false>}`

类似于`\if<datatype>dateuncertain`，但用于`\mkbibdate*`格式化命令 (§ 4.10.2)，在这些格式化命令中恰当使用的`\if<datatype>dateuncertain`命令等价于该命令。

`\ifenddateuncertain{<true>}{<false>}`

类似于`\ifend<datatype>dateuncertain`，但用于`\mkbibdate*`格式化命令 (§ 4.10.2)，在这些格式化命令中恰当使用的`\ifend<datatype>dateuncertain`命令等价于该命令。

`\ifcaselang[<language>]{<true>}{<false>}`

如果可选的<language>是\DeclareCaseLangs(见 § 4.6.4) 声明的语言之一，展开为<true>，否则展开为<false>。但可选参数不给出时，对\currentlang值进行判断。

`\ifsortnamekeyscheme{<string>}{<true>}{<false>}`

如果<string>等于范围排序名关键词格式名<sup>48</sup>(4.5.6)，否则展开为<false>。

`\iffieldundef{<field>}{<true>}{<false>}`

展开为<true>，如果<field>未定义，否则展开为<false>

`\iflistundef{<literal list>}{<true>}{<false>}`

展开为<true>，如果<literal list>未定义，否则展开为<false>

`\ifnameundef{<name list>}{<true>}{<false>}`

展开为<true>，如果<name list>未定义，否则展开为<false>

---

<sup>48</sup>the current in scope sorting name key scheme name 待议

`\iffieldequal{⟨field 1⟩}{⟨field 2⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

展开为⟨true⟩，如果⟨field 1⟩和⟨field 2⟩相等，否则展开为⟨false⟩

`\iflistequal{⟨literal list 1⟩}{⟨literal list 2⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

展开为⟨true⟩，如果⟨literal list 1⟩和⟨literal list 2⟩相等，否则展开为⟨false⟩

`\ifnameequal{⟨name list 1⟩}{⟨name list 2⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

展开为⟨true⟩，如果⟨name list 1⟩和⟨name list 2⟩相等，否则展开为⟨false⟩

`\iffieldequals{⟨field⟩}{⟨macro⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

展开为⟨true⟩，如果⟨field⟩的值和⟨macro⟩的定义相等，否则展开为⟨false⟩。<sup>49</sup>

`\iflistequal{⟨literal list⟩}{⟨macro⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

展开为⟨true⟩，如果⟨literal list⟩的值和⟨macro⟩的定义相等，否则展开为⟨false⟩。

`\ifnameequal{⟨name list⟩}{⟨macro⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

展开为⟨true⟩，如果⟨name list⟩的值和⟨macro⟩的定义相等，否则展开为⟨false⟩。

`\iffieldequalcs{⟨field⟩}{⟨csname⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

类似于`\iffieldequals`，但将控制序列名⟨csname⟩(不带斜杠)作为参数，而不是一个宏名。

`\iflistequalcs{⟨literal list⟩}{⟨csname⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

类似于`\iflistequal`，但将控制序列名⟨csname⟩(不带斜杠)作为参数，而不是一个宏名。

`\ifnameequalcs{⟨name list⟩}{⟨csname⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

类似于`\ifnameequal`，但将控制序列名⟨csname⟩(不带斜杠)作为参数，而不是一个宏名。

`\iffieldequalstr{⟨field⟩}{⟨string⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

展开为⟨true⟩，如果⟨field⟩的值和字符串⟨string⟩的定义相等，否则展开为⟨false⟩。该命令是鲁棒的。

`\iffieldxref{⟨field⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

如果一个条目定义了`crossref/xref`，该命令检测⟨field⟩是否与 `cross-referenced` 父条目相关联。如果子条目的⟨field⟩与父条目对应的⟨field⟩相等，那么执行⟨true⟩，否则执行⟨false⟩。如果`crossref/xref`未定义，总是执行⟨false⟩。该命令是鲁棒的。`crossref`和`xref`域的描述见 § 2.2.3，更多关于 `cross-referencing` 的信息见 § 2.4.1。

`\iflistxref{⟨literal list⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

类似于`\iffieldxref`命令，但检测⟨literal list⟩是否与 `cross-referenced` 父条目相关联。`crossref`和`xref`域的描述见 § 2.2.3，更多关于 `cross-referencing` 的信息见 § 2.4.1。

`\ifnamexref{⟨name list⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

类似于`\iffieldxref`命令，但检测⟨name list⟩是否与 `cross-referenced` 父条目相关联。`crossref`和`xref`域的描述见 § 2.2.3，更多关于 `cross-referencing` 的信息见 § 2.4.1。

`\ifcurrentfield{⟨field⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

执行⟨true⟩，如果当前域为⟨field⟩，否则执行⟨false⟩。该命令是鲁棒的。它主要用于域格式指令中，如果在其它环境中总是执行⟨false⟩。

`\ifcurrentlist{⟨literal list⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

执行⟨true⟩，如果当前 list 为⟨literal list⟩，否则执行⟨false⟩。该命令是鲁棒的。它主要用于域格式指令中，如果在其它环境中总是执行⟨false⟩。

`\ifcurrentname{⟨name list⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

执行⟨true⟩，如果当前 list 为⟨name list⟩，否则执行⟨false⟩。该命令是鲁棒的。它主要用于域格式指令中，如果在其它环境中总是执行⟨false⟩。

`\ifuseprefix{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

执行⟨true⟩，如果`useprefix`选项打开 (无论是全局的还是针对当前条目)，否则执行⟨false⟩。该选项的细节见 § 3.1.3。

`\ifuseauthor{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

这只是下面的`\ifuse<name>`宏的一个特例，因为`author`是默认数据模型的一部分所以放到这里来说。执行⟨true⟩，如果`useauthor`选项打开 (无论是全局的还是针对当前条目)，否则执行⟨false⟩。该选项的细节见 § 3.1.3。

`\ifuseeditor{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

这只是下面的`\ifuse<name>`宏的一个特例，因为`editor`是默认数据模型的一部分所以放到这里来说。执行⟨true⟩，如果`useeditor`选项打开 (无论是全局的还是针对当前条目)，否则执行⟨false⟩。该选项的细节见 § 3.1.3。

---

<sup>49</sup>可以用于改进 gb7714-2015 中的新闻和标准的判断

`\ifsettranslator{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

这只是下面的`\ifuse<name>`宏的一个特例, 因为`translator`是默认数据模型的一部分所以放到这里来说。执行`⟨true⟩`, 如果`usetranslator`选项打开 (无论是全局的还是针对当前条目), 否则执行`⟨false⟩`。该选项的细节见 § 3.1.3。

`\ifuse<name>{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

展开为`⟨true⟩`, 如果选项`use<name>`打开 (无论全局还是当前条目的选项), 否则展开为`⟨false⟩`。这一选项的细节详见第 § 3.1.3节。

`\ifcrossrefsource{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

展开为`⟨true⟩`, 如果包含在`.bbl`中的条目的间接引用 (referenced)<sup>50</sup>次数大于`mincrossrefs`, 否则展开为`⟨false⟩`。见 § 3.1.2.1。如果条目被直接引用则展开为`⟨false⟩`。

`\ifxrefsource{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

展开为`⟨true⟩`, 如果包含在`.bbl`中的条目的间接引用 (referenced)<sup>51</sup>次数大于`optminxrefs`, 否则展开为`⟨false⟩`。见 § 3.1.2.1。如果条目被直接引用则展开为`⟨false⟩`。

`\ifsingletitle{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

展开为`⟨true⟩`, 如果文献表中只有以`labelname`为名的一片文献, 否则展开为`⟨false⟩`。如果没有`labelname`为名的条目, 当文献表中有以`labeltitle`为题的文献则展开为`⟨true⟩`, 否则展开为`⟨false⟩`。如果条目既没设置`labelname`也没设置`labeltitle`, 总是展开为`⟨false⟩`。注意该功能需要显式的打开宏包选项`singletitle`才行。

`\ifuniquetitle{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

展开为`⟨true⟩`, 如果只有一篇文献的题名是`labeltitle`, 否则展开为`⟨false⟩`。如果条目的`labeltitle`未设置也展开为`⟨false⟩`。注意: 要使用这一功能需要显式地打开宏包选项`uniquetitle`。

`\ifuniquebaretitle{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

展开为`⟨true⟩`, 如果`labelname`域为空且只有一篇文献的题名是`labeltitle`, 否则展开为`⟨false⟩`。如果条目的`labeltitle`未设置也展开为`⟨false⟩`。注意: 要使用这一功能需要显式地打开宏包选项`uniquebaretitle`。

`\ifuniquework{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

展开为`⟨true⟩`, 如果文献表中只有一篇文献的标签名是`labelname`且题名是`labeltitle`, 否则展开为`⟨false⟩`。如果条目的`labelname`和`labeltitle`均未设置也展开为`⟨false⟩`。注意: 要使用这一功能需要显式地打开宏包选项`uniquework`。如果同一条目的`singletitle`和`uniquetitle`都是`false`, 可能是因为其他条目也有相同的`labelname`或者`labeltitle`。`uniquework`可以让我们知道有另一条目具有相同的`labelname`和`labeltitle`。这对于一种多人合作的情况很有用, 当多个同时维护参考文献数据源时, 有可能会添加内容相同但引用关键词不同的文献。这一判断能帮助找到这中存在副本情况。

`\ifuniqueprimaryauthor{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

展开为`⟨true⟩`, 如果一篇文献的对于其`labelname`的第一作者的姓是唯一的, 否则展开为`⟨false⟩`。如果条目的`labelname`未设置, 将展开为`⟨false⟩`。注意使用该功能需要显式的打开宏包选项`uniqueprimaryauthor`。

`\ifandothers{⟨list⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

展开为`⟨true⟩`, 如果`⟨list⟩`已定义并且在`bib`文件中以关键词`'and others'`截短了, 否则展开为`⟨false⟩`。`⟨list⟩`可以是 `literal` 或 `name` 列表。

`\ifmorenames{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

展开为`⟨true⟩`, 如果当前姓名列表已经截短或将截短, 否则展开为`⟨false⟩`。该命令用于姓名列表的格式化指令中, 在其它地方使用将展开为`⟨false⟩`。该命令对当前列表执行与`\ifandothers`判断一样的操作。如果判断结果为否, 它将检测`listtotal`是否大于`liststop`。该命令用于格式化命令中用以决定是否需要在列表默认打印`"and others"` or `"et al."`这样的标注。注意: 当需要检测实在列表中间或者末尾时, 即`listcount`是否小于或等于`liststop`, 详见第 § 4.4.1节。

`\ifmoreitems{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

类似于`\ifmorenames`, 但检测 `literal` 列表。用于 `literal` 列表的格式化指令, 其它地方用总是展开为`⟨false⟩`。

`\if<namepart>inits{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

根据`firstinits`包选项的状态, 展开为`⟨true⟩`或`⟨false⟩`(见第 § 3.1.2.3节)。该命令用于姓名列表的格式化指令。

`\ifterseinits{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

根据`terseinits`包选项的状态, 展开为`⟨true⟩`或`⟨false⟩`(见第 § 3.1.2.3节)。该命令用于姓名列表的格式化指令。

---

<sup>50</sup>应该是交叉引用次数

<sup>51</sup>应该是交叉引用次数



`\ifentrytype{<type>}{<true>}{<false>}`

如果当前处理条目类型是<type>，则展开为<true>，否则展开为<false>。

`\ifkeyword{<keyword>}{<true>}{<false>}`

如果<keyword>能在当前处理的条目的keywords域中找到，展开为<true>，否则展开为<false>。

`\ifentrykeyword{<entrykey>}{<keyword>}{<true>}{<false>}`

当条目关键词作为\ifkeyword命令参数的变化形式，在判断当前处理条目是否是某一条目时很有用。

`\ifcategory{<category>}{<true>}{<false>}`

执行<true>，如果当前正在处理条目被指派为由\addtocategory命令定义的<category>中，否则执行<false>。

`\ifentrycategory{<entrykey>}{<category>}{<true>}{<false>}`

当条目关键词作为\ifcategory命令参数时的变化形式，在判断当前处理条目是否是某一条目时很有用。

`\ifciteseen{<true>}{<false>}`

展开为<true>，如果当前条目之前已经被引用过，否则展开为<false>。该命令是鲁棒的，用于标注样式中。如果文档中有refsection环境，引用追踪是基于这些环境的。注意：引用追踪器需要显式的以包选项citetracker打开，如果追踪器未打开，该命令总是展开为<false>。另可参见第 4.6.4 节的\citetrackertrue和\citetrackerfalse开关。

`\ifentryseen{<entrykey>}{<true>}{<false>}`

当条目关键词作为

\ifciteseen命令参数时的变化形式。因为<entrykey>先于判断展开，它也可以用来测试在xref等域中的条目关键词。

```
\ifentryseen{\thefield{xref}}{true}{false}
```

除了一个额外参数，\ifentryseen的操作类似于\ifciteseen。

`\ifentryinbib{<entrykey>}{<true>}{<false>}`

如果<entrykey>出现当前文献表中，执行<true>，否则执行<false>。该命令用于参考文献著录样式。

`\iffirstcitekey{<true>}{<false>}`

如果当前处理条目是引用列表中的第一个，执行<true>，否则执行<false>。该命令依赖于citecount, citetotal, multicitecount 和 multicitetotal计数器 (见 § 4.10.5)，因此只能用于\DeclareCiteCommand命令定义的标注命令的循环执行代码<loopcode>中。

`\iflastcitekey{<true>}{<false>}`

类似于\iffirstcitekey，但判断的是是否为引用列表中的最后一个。

`\ifciteibid{<true>}{<false>}`

如果当前处理条目于前一条相同，展开为<true>，否则展开为<false>。该命令用于标注样式。如果有refsection环境，追踪器是基于这些环境的。注意：‘ibidem’追踪器需要由ibidtracker包选项显式的打开。该判断命令的运行方式与追踪器运行的模式相关，详见 § 3.1.2.3。如果追踪器未打开，总是展开为<false>。另可参见 § 4.6.4 节的\citetrackertrue和\citetrackerfalse开关。

`\ifciteidem{<true>}{<false>}`

如果当前处理条目的责任者 (即作者或编者) 于前一条目的相同，展开为<true>，否则展开为<false>。该命令用于标注样式。如果有refsection环境，追踪器是基于这些环境的。注意：‘idem’追踪器需要由idemtracker包选项显式的打开。该判断命令的运行方式与追踪器运行的模式相关，详见 § 3.1.2.3。如果追踪器未打开，总是展开为<false>。另可参见 § 4.6.4 节的\citetrackertrue和\citetrackerfalse开关。

`\ifopcit{<true>}{<false>}`

该命令类似于\ifciteibid，但只要当前处理等条目的作者或编者 与前一条目相同，则展开为<true>。注意：‘opcit’追踪器需要由opcitracker包选项显式的打开。该判断命令的运行方式与追踪器运行的模式相关，详见 § 3.1.2.3。如果追踪器未打开，总是展开为<false>。另可参见 § 4.6.4 节的\citetrackertrue和\citetrackerfalse开关。

`\ifloccit{<true>}{<false>}`

该命令类似于\ifopcit，但还要比较<postnote>的参数，如果他们相同且是数值 (§ 4.6.2 节的\ifnumerals命令判断)，则展开为<true>。即：如果引文的页码与前一文献相同则展开为 true。注意：‘loccit’追踪器需要由loccittracker包选项显式的打开。该判断命令的运行方式与追踪器运行的模式相关，详见 § 3.1.2.3。如果追踪器未打开，总是展开为<false>。另可参见 § 4.6.4 节的\citetrackertrue和\citetrackerfalse开关。



`\iffirstonpage{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

该命令的运行与`pagetracker`包选项相关，如果选项设置成 `page`，当当前项是页中的第一项，展开为`⟨true⟩`，否则展开为`⟨false⟩`。如果选项设置成 `spread`，当当前项是合页中的第一项，展开为`⟨true⟩`，否则展开为`⟨false⟩`。如果选项未打开，总是展开为`⟨false⟩`。根据所处环境不同，‘item’可以是一个标注，或者参考文献表中的条目。注意该命令区分正文文本和脚注，例如，当在某页的第一个脚注中使用，即便是文中有一个标注且先于该脚注。另可参见 § 4.6.4节的`\pagetrackertrue`和`\pagetrackerfalse`开关。

`\ifsamepage{⟨instance 1⟩}{⟨instance 2⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

如果两个引用实例位于同于页或者同一合页中，展开为`⟨true⟩`，否则为`⟨false⟩`。一个引用实例可以是一个标注也可以是文献表中的条目。这些实例用`instcount`计数区分，见 § 4.10.5。该命令的运行与`pagetracker`包选项相关，如果选项设置成 `spread`，其本质是‘if same spread’(是否同意合页)的判断。如果选项未打开，总是展开为`⟨false⟩`。参数`⟨instance 1⟩`和`⟨instance 2⟩`以e-TeX’s `\numexpr`方式当成整数表达式处理。这意味着可以在参数中计算。比如：

```
\ifsamepage{⟨value{instcount}⟩}{⟨value{instcount}-1⟩}{true}{false}
```

注意：`\value`命令不是以`\the`为前缀，在第二个参数中做了减法运算。如果`⟨instance 1⟩` 或 `⟨instance 2⟩`是无效数字（比如一个负值），总是展开为`⟨false⟩`。也要注意该命令不区分正文和脚注。另可参见 § 4.6.4节的`\pagetrackertrue`和`\pagetrackerfalse`开关。

`\ifinteger{⟨string⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

如果`⟨string⟩`是一个正整数，展开为`⟨true⟩`，否则为`⟨false⟩`，该命令鲁棒。

`\ifnumeral{⟨string⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

如果`⟨string⟩`是一个阿拉伯或者罗马数字，展开为`⟨true⟩`，否则为`⟨false⟩`，该命令鲁棒。另可参见 § 4.6.4节的`\DeclareNumChars`和`\NumCheckSetup`命令。

`\ifnumerals{⟨string⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

如果`⟨string⟩`是一个阿拉伯或者罗马数字的范围或列表，展开为`⟨true⟩`，否则为`⟨false⟩`，该命令鲁棒。相比于`\ifnumeral`命令，当参数像“52–58”，“14/15”，“1, 3, 5”等时，该命令会执行`⟨true⟩`。另可参见 § 4.6.4节的`\DeclareNumChars`，`\NumCheckSetup`，`\DeclareRangeCommands`和`\NumCheckSetup`命令。

`\ifpages{⟨string⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

类似于`\ifnumerals`，但也考虑 § 4.6.4节的`\DeclarePageCommands`命令。

`\iffieldint{⟨field⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

类似于`\ifinteger`命令，但使用`⟨field⟩`的值而不是一个字符串，如果域未定义，执行`⟨false⟩`。

`\iffieldnum{⟨field⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

类似于`\ifnumeral`命令，但使用`⟨field⟩`的值而不是一个字符串，如果域未定义，执行`⟨false⟩`。

`\iffieldnums{⟨field⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

类似于`\ifnumerals`命令，但使用`⟨field⟩`的值而不是一个字符串，如果域未定义，执行`⟨false⟩`。<sup>52</sup>

`\iffieldpages{⟨field⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

类似于`\ifpages`命令，但使用`⟨field⟩`的值而不是一个字符串，如果域未定义，执行`⟨false⟩`。

`\ifbibstring{⟨string⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

如果`⟨string⟩`是已知的本地化关键词，展开为`⟨true⟩`，否则`⟨false⟩`。默认定义的本地化字符串见 § 4.9.2。新的字符串可以用命令`\NewBibliographyString`定义。

`\ifbibxstring{⟨string⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

类似于`\ifbibstring`，但`⟨string⟩`是展开的。

`\iffieldbibstring{⟨field⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

类似于`\ifbibstring`，但使用`⟨field⟩`域的值而不是一个字符串，如果域未定义，执行`⟨false⟩`。

`\ifdriver{⟨entrytype⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

展开为`⟨true⟩`如果`⟨entrytype⟩`的驱动存在，否则为`⟨false⟩`。

`\ifcapital{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

如果 Biblatex 的标点追踪器将当前位置的本地化字符串大写，则执行`⟨true⟩`，否则执行`⟨false⟩`。给命令在格式化指令中对于姓名的某一部分做有条件的大写处理时有用。

---

<sup>52</sup>是否可以用来解析卷期的范围？

`\ifcitation{<true>}{<false>}`

当处于标注中则展开为`<true>`，否则为`<false>`。注意这一命令与其所在的最外层环境有关。比如，当由`\DeclareCiteCommand`命令定义的标注命令执行一个由`\DeclareBibliographyDriver`定义的驱动，则任何在该驱动中的`\ifcitation`都会展开为`<true>`。在 § 4.11.6 可以看到一个实例。

`\ifbibliography{<true>}{<false>}`

当处于文献表中则展开为`<true>`，否则为`<false>`。注意这一命令与其所在的最外层环境有关。比如，当由`\DeclareBibliographyDriver`命令定义的驱动执行一个由`\DeclareCiteCommand`定义的标注，则任何在该标注中的`\ifbibliography`都会展开为`<true>`。在 § 4.11.6 可以看到一个实例。

`\ifnatbibmode{<true>}{<false>}`

根据 § 3.1.1 的 `natbib` 选项展开为`<true>`或`<false>`。

`\ifciteindex{<true>}{<false>}`

根据 § 3.1.2.1 的 `indexing` 选项展开为`<true>`或`<false>`。

`\ifbibindex{<true>}{<false>}`

根据 § 3.1.2.1 的 `indexing` 选项展开为`<true>`或`<false>`。

`\iffootnote{<true>}{<false>}`

当处于脚注中时，展开为`<true>`，否则为`<false>`。注意：在 `minipage` 中的脚注被认为正文的一部分。当处于页面底部的脚注中或者由 `endnotes` 提供的 `endnotes` 中时，只会展开为`<true>`。

**citecounter** 这一计数器表示当前处理条目在当前 reference section 中的引用次数。注意该功能需要以包选项 `citecounter` 显式的打开。如果选项设置为 `context`，正文和脚注中的引用分别计数。这种情况下，`citecounter` 记录其所在环境中的值。

**uniquename** 这一计数器用于 `labelname` 列表。它以每个名字为基础进行设置。如果姓不同，它的值设置为 0，当增加姓名的其它部分的首字母使得姓名能区分，则设置为 1，如果需要完整的姓名才能区分，则设置为 2。作者年值和作者标题值得标注格式需要这一信息来增加姓名的其它部分以对姓相同的作者进行引用。比如：当引用列表中有一个 'John Doe' 和一个 'Edward Doe'，该计数器将设置为 1。如果有有一个 'John Doe' 和一个 'John Doe'，该计数器将设置为 2。如果选项设置成 `init/allinit/mininit`，那么计数器将限制值最大为 1。这对于标注样式不打印全名而使用首字母来区分姓名很有用。如果添加首字母还无法区分姓名，`uniquename` 将设置为 0。该功能需要以包选项 `uniquename` 显式的打开。注意 `uniquename` 是对 `\printnames` 局部的，仅根据 `labelname` 列表或其来源姓名列表 (典型如 `author` 或 `editor`) 设置。它的值在任何正文中都是 0，即它仅在处理姓名的格式化指令中计算，更多细节和实例见 § 4.11.4。

**uniquelist** 该计数器用于 `labelname` 列表。它以每个域为基础进行设置。它的值表示当使用 `maxnames/minnames` 自动将姓名列表截短后导致标注歧义时，消除歧义最小需要的姓名数。比如，有一篇作者是 'Doe/Smith/Johnson' 的文献和另一篇作者是 'Doe/Edwards/Williams' 的文献，设置 `maxnames=1` 将导致两篇的作者都是 'Doe et al.'。这种情况下，两个条目的 `labelname` 列表的 `uniquelist` 将设置成 2，因为至少需要两个名字来区分。注意 `uniquelist` 是对 `\printnames` 命令局部的，仅根据 `labelname` 列表或其来源姓名列表 (典型如 `author` 或 `editor`) 设置。它的值在任何正文中都是 0，即它仅在处理姓名的格式化指令中计算，如果该值存在，则 `\printnames` 命令在处理姓名列表时将自动应用，即自动覆盖 `maxnames/minnames`。该功能需要以包选项 `uniquelist` 显式的打开。更多细节和实例见 § 4.11.4。

**parenlevel** 圆括号和/或方括号的嵌套层级。该信息仅在 § 3.1.2.3 的 `parenttracker` 选项打开的情况下提供。

## 4.6.3 使用 `\ifboolexpr` 和 `\ifthenelse` 的判断

第 § 4.6.2 节介绍的判断可以与 `etoolbox` 宏包提供的 `\ifboolexpr` 命令和 `ifthen` 宏包提供的 `\ifthenelse` 命令一同使用。这种情况下，其语法略有差异，判断命令的 `<true>` 和 `<false>` 参数自动省略，而直接传递给 `\ifboolexpr` 或 `\ifthenelse`。注意，使用这些命令需要一些计算代价。如果不需要一些布尔操作，使用 § 4.6.2 节的 `stand-alone` 判断命令更高效。

`\ifboolexpr{<expression>}{<true>}{<false>}`

该 `etoolbox` 包命令允许进行包括布尔运算和编组的复杂判断。

```
\ifboolexpr{ (
    test {\ifnameundef{editor}}
    and
    not test {\iflistundef{location}}
)
    or test {\iffieldundef{year}}
}
{...}
{...}
```

```
\ifthenelse{<tests>}{<true>}{<false>}
```

该ifthen包命令允许进行包括布尔运算和编组的复杂判断。

```
\ifthenelse{ \(  
    \ifnameundef{editor}  
    \and  
    \not \iflistundef{location}  
  \)  
  \or \iffieldundef{year}  
}  
{...}  
{...}
```

Biblatex 提供的附加判断命令仅在标注命令和文献表中使用\ifboolexpr或\ifthenelse命令时可用。

## 4.6.4 综合命令

本节介绍参考文献著录和标注样式中使用的一些综合命令和小巧工具。

```
\newbibmacro{<name>}[<arguments>][<optional>]{<definition>}
```

```
\newbibmacro*{<name>}[<arguments>][<optional>]{<definition>}
```

定义一个用于后面\usebibmacro调用的宏。该命令的语法类似于\newcommand，除了<name>可以包含一些数字或标点，但不以斜杠开头。可选参数<arguments>是一个整数用于指定宏需要处理的参数数量。如果<optional>给出，它指定了该宏的第一个参数的默认值，这第一个参数自动成为可选参数。相比于\newcommand，当宏已经定义时，\newbibmacro命令会给出一个警告信息，并自动转换为\renewbibmacro命令。类似于\newcommand，该命令的常规形式在定义中使用\long前缀，而带星的命令则没有。如果一个宏声明为 long，它的参数可以包含\par记号。提供\newbibmacro和\renewbibmacro命令是为了方便使用，样式作者也可以使用\newcommand或\def。然而，需要注意，共享文件 biblatex.def 中的绝大多数定义都是用\newbibmacro定义的，因此，要使用和修改它们要用相应的方式处理。

```
\renewbibmacro{<name>}[<arguments>][<optional>]{<definition>}
```

```
\renewbibmacro*{<name>}[<arguments>][<optional>]{<definition>}
```

类似于\newbibmacro，但用于重定义<name>。相比于\newcommand，当宏未定义时，\renewbibmacro命令给出一个警告信息，并自动转换为\newbibmacro命令。

```
\providebibmacro{<name>}[<arguments>][<optional>]{<definition>}
```

```
\providebibmacro*{<name>}[<arguments>][<optional>]{<definition>}
```

类似于\newbibmacro，但仅在<name>未定义时定义宏。该命令概念上类似于\providecommand。

```
\usebibmacro{<name>}
```

```
\usebibmacro*{<name>}
```

该命令执行由\newbibmacro定义的宏<name>。如果宏带参数，只要简单的跟在<name>后面即可。该命令的常规形式会处理<name>，而带星的命令不会。<name> while the starred variant does not.

```
\savecommand{<command>}
```

```
\restorecommand{<command>}
```

这两个命令用来保存和恢复<command>，其中<command>必须是以斜杠开头的命令。两个命令都在局部范围内起作用。它们主要用于本地化文件中。

```
\savebibmacro{<name>}
```

```
\restorebibmacro{<name>}
```

这两个命令用来保存和恢复宏<name>，其中<name>由\newbibmacro定义的宏的标识。两个命令都在局部范围内起作用。它们主要用于本地化文件中。

```
\savefieldformat[<entry type>]{<format>}
```

```
\restorefieldformat[<entry type>]{<format>}
```

这两个命令用来保存和恢复格式化指令<format>，其中<format>由\DeclareFieldFormat定义。两个命令都在局部范围内起作用。它们主要用于本地化文件中。

```
\savelistformat[<entry type>]{<format>}
```

```
\restorelistformat[<entry type>]{<format>}
```

这两个命令用来保存和恢复格式化指令<format>，其中<format>由\DeclareListFormat定义。两个命令都在局部范围内起作用。它们主要用于本地化文件中。

```
\savenameformat[⟨entry type⟩]{⟨format⟩}
\restorenameformat[⟨entry type⟩]{⟨format⟩}
```

这两个命令用来保存和恢复格式化指令⟨format⟩, 其中⟨format⟩由\DeclareNameFormat定义。两个命令都在局部范围内起作用。它们主要用于本地化文件中。

```
\ifbibmacroundef{⟨name⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}
```

如果参考文献宏⟨name⟩未定义, 展开为⟨true⟩否则为⟨false⟩。

```
\iffieldformatundef[⟨entry type⟩]{⟨name⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}
\iflistformatundef[⟨entry type⟩]{⟨name⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}
\ifnameformatundef[⟨entry type⟩]{⟨name⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}
```

如果参考文献格式化指令⟨format⟩未定义, 展开为⟨true⟩否则为⟨false⟩。otherwise.

```
\usedriver{⟨code⟩}{⟨entrytype⟩}
```

执行⟨entrytype⟩类条目的参考文献驱动。在由\DeclareCiteCommand定义的标注命令的⟨loopcode⟩中调用该命令是打印类似于一个参考文献条目的完整标注的简单方法。诸如\newblock等命令无法用于标注, 自动省略。附加的初始化命令可以通过⟨code⟩参数传递。该参数在一个编组内执行, 这一编组用于运行相应驱动。注意: 该参数语法上是必须的, 但可以留空。也要注意如果autolang包选项打开的话, 该命令会自动切换语言。

```
\bibhypertarget{⟨name⟩}{⟨text⟩}
```

hyperref的\hypertarget命令的封套<sup>53</sup>。⟨name⟩是超链接锚的名字, ⟨text⟩的内容作为超链接锚, 可以是任意可打印文字或代码。如果文档中存在refsection环境, ⟨name⟩是基于当前 refsection 环境。如果hyperref包选项未打开或者hyperref包未加载, 该命令简单的传递⟨text⟩变量。另可参见 § 4.10.4 节的格式化指令 bibhypertarget。

```
\bibhyperlink{⟨name⟩}{⟨text⟩}
```

hyperref的\hyperlink命令的包套。⟨name⟩是由\bibhypertarget定义的超链接锚的名字, ⟨text⟩的内容将转变成超链接, 可以是任意可打印文字或代码。如果文档中存在refsection环境, ⟨name⟩是基于当前 refsection 环境。如果hyperref包选项未打开或者hyperref包未加载, 该命令简单的传递⟨text⟩变量。另可参见 § 4.10.4 节的格式化指令 bibhyperlink。

```
\bibhyperref[⟨entrykey⟩]{⟨text⟩}
```

将⟨text⟩转变为指向参考文献表中的⟨entrykey⟩(即某一条目)的内部链接。如果⟨entrykey⟩省略, 该命令使用当前正在处理的条目的引用关键词。该命令用于将标注转换为可点击的超链接, 可以链接到参考文献表中的相应条目。链接目标由Biblatex自动标记。如果文档中有多个文献表, 链接目标将是所有文献表中第一个出现的⟨entrykey⟩条目。如果文档中存在refsection环境, 则超链接基于当前 refsection 环境。另可参见 § 4.10.4 节的格式化指令 bibhyperref。

```
\ifhyperref{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}
```

展开为⟨true⟩, 如果hyperref包选项已打开(意味着hyperref包已加载), 否则展开为⟨false⟩。

```
\docsvfield{⟨field⟩}
```

类似于etoolbox包的\docsvlist命令, 差别在于它的参数是一个域名。域的值将以一个 comma-separated(英文逗号分隔)的列表进行解析。如果⟨field⟩为定义, 该命令展开为空字符串。

```
\forcsvfield{⟨handler⟩}{⟨field⟩}
```

类似于etoolbox包的\forcsvlist命令, 差别在于它的参数是一个域名。域的值将以一个 comma-separated(英文逗号分隔)的列表进行解析。如果⟨field⟩为定义, 该命令展开为空字符串

```
\MakeCapital{⟨text⟩}
```

类似于\MakeUppercase, 但仅将⟨text⟩的第一个可打印字符转换为大写。注意:\MakeUppercase命令的限制也适用于这一命令。即: ⟨text⟩中的所有命令必须是鲁棒的或者以\protect为前缀, 因为在大写操作中⟨text⟩需要展开。除了Ascii字符和标准重音命令外, 该命令也处理inputenc包的活字字符和babel包的缩略词。如果⟨text⟩以一个控制序列开头, 不做任何大写操作。该命令是鲁棒的。

```
\MakeSentenceCase{⟨text⟩}
```

```
\MakeSentenceCase*{⟨text⟩}
```

将⟨text⟩参数转换为 sentence case(句子模式), 即字符串中的第一个单词首字母大写而剩下其他部分转换为小写。该命令是鲁棒的。带星号的命令与常规命令(不带星号)的差别在于它能考虑条目的语言, 根据langid域指定。只有当langid未定义或者定为由\DeclareCaseLangs命令(见后面)声明的某种语言时, 它才将⟨text⟩转换为句子模式。<sup>54</sup> 否则⟨text⟩不做任何改变。推荐使用\MakeSentenceCase\*而不是常规命令。两个命令都支持bib文件的传统 BibTeX 规范, 即: 遇到任何以花括号包围的内容大小写都不作变化, 例如:

<sup>53</sup>wrapper 译为包围器, 封套, 包套?

<sup>54</sup>默认情况下, 如下语言支持转换: american, british, canadian, english, australian, newzealand as well as the aliases USenglish and UKenglish. 要扩展或修改该列表请使用\DeclareCaseLangs命令。

```
\MakeSentenceCase{an Introduction to LaTeX}
\MakeSentenceCase{an Introduction to {LaTeX}}
```

将得到:

```
An introduction to latex
An introduction to LaTeX
```

在以传统 BibTeX 方式设计的bib文件中, 为阻止字母的 case-changing(大小写变化), 将单个字母用花括号包围是一种相当常见的方法。

```
title = {An Introduction to {L}{a}{T}{e}{X}}
```

这种方式存在一个问题是括号会压缩被包围字母两侧的字距。最好的方式是如第一个例子所示的那样, 将整个单词都包围起来。

`\mkpageprefix[⟨paganation⟩][⟨postpro⟩]{⟨text⟩}`

该命令用于域格式化指令中, 包括标注命令的⟨postnote⟩参数和文献条目的pages域的格式化。默认情况下, 它将解析⟨text⟩参数, 并且以‘p.’ or ‘pp.’ 做为前缀。可选参数⟨paganation⟩保存指示 pagination 类型的域名, 可以是pagination或bookpagination, 默认是pagination。前缀与⟨text⟩之间的间距可以通过重定义\ppspace命令来调整。默认是一个不可断行的词内空格。详见 §§ 2.3.10 和 3.12.3。另可参见\DeclareNumChars, \DeclareRangeChars, \DeclareRangeCommands, 和\NumCheckSetup。可选参数⟨postpro⟩指定了用于对⟨text⟩后处理的宏。如果只给出一个可选参数, 将作为⟨paganation⟩, 下面是两个典型例子:

```
\DeclareFieldFormat{postnote}{\mkpageprefix[pagination]{#1}}
\DeclareFieldFormat{pages}{\mkpageprefix[bookpagination]{#1}}
```

第一个例子中的可选参数pagination可以省略。

`\mkpagetotal[⟨paganation⟩][⟨postpro⟩]{⟨text⟩}`

该命令类似于\mkpageprefix, 差别在于它用于条目的pagetotal域, 即它将打印“123 pages”而不是“page 123”。可选参数⟨paganation⟩默认是bookpagination。在⟨text⟩和后缀之间的间距可由对\ppspace重定义进行调整。可选参数⟨postpro⟩指定了用于对⟨text⟩后处理的宏。如果只给出一个可选参数, 将作为⟨paganation⟩, 下面是一个典型例子:

```
\DeclareFieldFormat{pagetotal}{\mkpagetotal[bookpagination]{#1}}
```

在本例中可选参数bookpagination可省略。

`\mkcomprange[⟨postpro⟩]{⟨text⟩}`

`\mkcomprange*[⟨postpro⟩]{⟨text⟩}`

该命令, 用于域格式化指令, 将⟨text⟩参数解析为页码范围并且压缩这些范围。扫描程序将\bibrangedash和 hyphens 作为范围间隔符。支持范围列表以\bibrangessep(Biber<sup>55</sup>) 或 commas/semicolon(BibTeX) 分隔。如果因为某些原因需要隐藏来自 list/range 扫描程序的一个字符, 那么可以将该字符或者整个字符串用花括号包围起来。可选参数⟨postpro⟩指定了一个用于对⟨text⟩进行后处理的宏。怎么使用该参数见\mkcomprange命令。带星的命令的差别在于⟨postpro⟩参数应用于列表的各项。例如:

```
\DeclareFieldFormat{postnote}{\mkcomprange[\mkpageprefix[pagination]]{#1}}
```

注意:\mkcomprange命令首先处理, \mkpageprefix则作为后处理器。也要注意⟨postpro⟩被额外的一对花括号包围。这仅在特殊情况下需要, 为阻止 LaTeX 的可选参数扫描器与嵌套的方括号混淆。带星的命令与不带星命令的差别是它应用于值得列表, 例如:

```
\mkcomprange[\mkpageprefix]{5, 123-129, 423-439}
\mkcomprange*[\mkpageprefix]{5, 123-129, 423-439}
```

<sup>55</sup>Biber 总会将 commas/semicolon(逗号或冒号) 的多范围分隔符转换为 \bibrangessep, 因此可以在样式中控制。

| Input     | Output            |                  |                   |
|-----------|-------------------|------------------|-------------------|
|           | mincomprange=10   | mincomprange=100 | mincomprange=1000 |
| 11-15     | 11-5              | 11-15            | 11-15             |
| 111-115   | 111-5             | 111-5            | 111-115           |
| 1111-1115 | 1111-5            | 1111-5           | 1111-5            |
|           | maxcomprange=1000 | maxcomprange=100 | maxcomprange=10   |
| 1111-1115 | 1111-5            | 1111-5           | 1111-5            |
| 1111-1155 | 1111-55           | 1111-55          | 1111-1155         |
| 1111-1555 | 1111-555          | 1111-1555        | 1111-1555         |
|           | mincompwidth=1    | mincompwidth=10  | mincompwidth=100  |
| 1111-1115 | 1111-5            | 1111-15          | 1111-115          |
| 1111-1155 | 1111-55           | 1111-55          | 1111-155          |
| 1111-1555 | 1111-555          | 1111-555         | 1111-555          |

Table 11: \mkcomprange setup

将输出:

```
pp. 5, 123-9, 423-39
p. 5, pp. 123-9, pp. 423-39
```

\mkfirstpage[⟨postpro⟩]{⟨text⟩}

\mkfirstpage\*[⟨postpro⟩]{⟨text⟩}

该命令，用于域格式化指令，将⟨text⟩参数解析为页码范围并且仅打印这些范围的起始页码。扫描程序将\bibrangedash和hyphens作为范围间隔符。支持范围列表以\bibrangessep(Biber<sup>56</sup>)或commas/semicolon(BibTeX)分隔。如果因为某些原因需要隐藏来自list/range扫描程序的一个字符，那么可以将该字符或者整个字符串用花括号包围起来。可选参数⟨postpro⟩指定了一个用于对⟨text⟩进行后处理的宏。怎么使用该参数见\mkcomprange命令。带星的命令的差别在于⟨postpro⟩参数应用于列表的各项。例如:

```
\mkfirstpage[\mkpageprefix]{5, 123-129, 423-439}
\mkfirstpage*[\mkpageprefix]{5, 123-129, 423-439}
```

将输出:

```
pp. 5, 123, 423
p. 5, p. 123, p. 423
```

\rangelen{⟨rangefield⟩}该命令将其参数解析为一个范围,并返回范围的长度。对于开口的范围将返回-1。这可以作为样式中一些判断的一部分,例如将‘f’作为只有两页的范围的后缀,比如范围‘36-37’将打印‘36f’。这可以通过命令\ifnumcomp实现:

- Calculate the total of multiple ranges in the same field such as ‘1-10, 20-30’
- Handle implicit ranges such as ‘22-4’ and ‘130-33’
- Handle roman numeral ranges in upper and lower case and consisting of both ASCII and Unicode roman numeral representations.

下面是一些例子:

<sup>56</sup>Biber 总会将 commas/semicolon(逗号或冒号)的多范围分隔符转换为\bibrangessep，因此可以在样式中控制。

|                                  |                               |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| pages = '10'                     | \rangelen{pages} returns '1'  |
| pages = '10-15'                  | \rangelen{pages} returns '6'  |
| pages = '10-15,47-53'            | \rangelen{pages} returns '13' |
| pages = '10-'                    | \rangelen{pages} returns '-1' |
| pages = '-10'                    | \rangelen{pages} returns '-1' |
| pages = '48-9'                   | \rangelen{pages} returns '2'  |
| pages = '172-77'                 | \rangelen{pages} returns '6'  |
| pages = 'i-vi'                   | \rangelen{pages} returns '6'  |
| pages = 'X-XX'                   | \rangelen{pages} returns '11' |
| pages = 'VII-xii'                | \rangelen{pages} returns '6'  |
| pages = 'VII-xii, 145-7, 135-39' | \rangelen{pages} returns '14' |

\rangelen命令可以用于判断中:

```
\ifnumcomp{\rangelen{pages}}{=}{1}{add 'f'}{do nothing}
```

`\DeclareNumChars{<characters>}`

`\DeclareNumChars*{<characters>}`

该命令设置 § 4.6.2节的\ifnumeral, \ifnumerals, 和\ifpages命令。该设置也将影响\iffielddnum, \iffielddnums, \iffielddpages, \mkpageprefix 和 \mkpagetotal命令。<characters>参数是一个无分隔符的符号列表, 将作为数字的一部分进行处理。不带星命令将替换当前设置, 带星命令则将其参数附加到当前列表中。默认设置为:

```
\DeclareNumChars{.}
```

这意味着 (节或者其他) 数值比如 '3.4.5' 将被认为是一个数字。注意, 默认检测的是阿拉伯和罗马数字, 没有必要对此做显式声明。

`\DeclareRangeChars{<characters>}`

`\DeclareRangeChars*{<characters>}`

该命令设置 § 4.6.2的\ifnumerals和\ifpages命令。其设置还将影响\iffielddnums, \iffielddpages, \mkpageprefix和\mkpagetotal。<characters>参数是一个无分隔符的符号列表, 将作为范围指示符进行处理。不带星命令将替换当前设置, 带星命令则将其参数附加到当前列表中。默认设置为:

```
\DeclareRangeChars{~,;-+}
```

这意味着比如'3-5', '35+', '8/9'等字符串会被\ifnumerals和\ifpages认为是一个范围。这些字符串中的非范围字符将被认为是数字。因此, 类似于'3a-5a'和'35b+'之类的字符串默认情况下不被认为是范围。更多细节详见 §§ 2.3.10 和 3.12.3。

`\DeclareRangeCommands{<commands>}`

`\DeclareRangeCommands*{<commands>}`

该命令类似于\DeclareRangeChars, 差别在于<commands>参数是一个无分隔符的命令列表, 将被视为范围指示符。不带星命令将替换当前设置, 带星命令则将其参数附加到当前列表中。默认列表相当长, 应该覆盖所有一般情况。下面是一个简单例子:

```
\DeclareRangeCommands{\&\bibrangedash\textendash\textemdash\psq\psqq}
```

更多细节参见 §§ 2.3.10 和 3.12.3。

`\DeclarePageCommands{<commands>}`

`\DeclarePageCommands*{<commands>}`

该命令类似于\DeclareRangeCommands, 差别在于它仅影响\ifpages和\iffielddpages判断, 而不影响\ifnumerals和\iffielddnums。默认设置为:

```
\DeclarePageCommands{\pno\ppno}
```



`\NumCheckSetup{<code>}`

该命令用于临时重定义一些命令，若不重定义，这些命令将与 § 4.6.2 节的 `\ifnumeral`, `\ifnumerals`, `\ifpages` 命令执行的判断冲突。该设置也将影响 `\iffielddnum`, `\iffielddnums`, `\iffielddpages`, `\mkpageprefix` 和 `\mkpagetotal`。这些命令将在组内执行 `<code>`。因为上述命令将展开为字符串用于分析，可以利用将冲突命令展开为空字符串 (将被判断命令忽略) 的方式来移除这些命令。更多细节参见 §§ 2.3.10 和 3.12.3。

`\DeclareCaseLangs{<languages>}`

`\DeclareCaseLangs*{<languages>}`

定义语言列表，该列表在 `\MakeSentenceCase*` 命令将一个字符串转换成句子时考虑。`<languages>` 参数是一个由 `babel/polyglossia` 语言标识构成的 comma-separated (逗号分隔) 列表。不带星命令用于替换当前设置，而带星的命令用于附加当前列表。默认的设置为：

```
\DeclareCaseLangs{%
  american,british,canadian,english,australian,newzealand,USenglish,UKenglish}
```

语言标识的列表见 `babel/polyglossia` 手册和表 2。

`\BibliographyWarning{<message>}`

该命令类似于 `\PackageWarning`，但打印内容除了输入行号外还有当前处理条目的引用关键词。如果 `<message>` 相当长，可以使用 `\MessageBreak` 命令来断行。注意：标准的 `\PackageWarning` 命令在参考文献中使用时无法提供一个有意义的提示，因为其打印的输入行号只是 `\printbibliography` 命令所在的行号。

`\pagetrackertrue`

`\pagetrackerfalse`

这些命令将打开或关闭局部引用追踪器 (这将影响来自 § 4.6.2 节的 `\iffirstonpage` 和 `\ifsamepage` 判断)。可在标注命令定义或者正文中的任意位置使用。要使标注命令完全排除页码追踪，可以在 `\DeclareCiteCommand` 命令的 `<precode>` 参数中使用 `\pagetrackerfalse`。详见 § 4.3.1。注意：当全局页码追踪关闭时，这些命令无效。

`\citetrackertrue`

`\citetrackerfalse`

这些命令将打开或关闭所有的局部引用追踪器 (这将影响来自 § 4.6.2 节的 `\ifciteseen`, `\ifentryseen`, `\ifciteibid`, 和 `\ifciteidem` 判断)。可在标注命令定义或者正文中的任意位置使用。要使标注命令完全排除页码追踪，可以在 `\DeclareCiteCommand` 命令的 `<precode>` 参数中使用 `\citetrackerfalse`。详见 § 4.3.1。注意：当全局追踪关闭时，这些命令无效。

`\backtrackertrue`

`\backtrackerfalse`

这些命令将打开或关闭所有的局部 `backref` 追踪器。可在标注命令定义或者正文中的任意位置使用。要使标注命令完全排除反向链接追踪，可以在 `\DeclareCiteCommand` 命令的 `<precode>` 参数中使用 `\backtrackerfalse`。注意：当 `backref` 选项未进行全局设置，这些命令无效。

## 4.7 标点和间距

The Biblatex package provides elaborate facilities designed to manage and track punctuation and spacing in the bibliography and in citations. These facilities work on two levels. The high-level commands discussed in § 4.7.1 deal with punctuation and whitespace inserted by the bibliography style between the individual segments of a bibliography entry. The commands in §§ 4.7.2、4.7.3、4.7.4 work at a lower level. They use TeX's space factor and modified space factor codes to track punctuation in a robust and efficient way. This way it is possible to detect trailing punctuation marks within fields, not only those explicitly inserted between fields. The same technique is also used for automatic capitalization of localisation strings, see `\DeclareCapitalPunctuation` in § 4.7.5 as well as § 4.8 for details. Note that these facilities are only made available locally in citations and bibliographies. They will not affect any other part of a document.

### 4.7.1 块和单元标点 Block and Unit Punctuation

The major segments of a bibliography entry are 'blocks' and 'units'. A block is the larger segment of the two, a unit is shorter or at most equal in length. For example, the values of fields such as `title` or `note` usually form a unit which is separated from subsequent data by a period or a comma. A block may comprise several fields which are treated as separate units, for example `publisher`, `location`, and `year`. The segmentation of an entry into blocks and units is at the discretion of the bibliography style. An entry is segmented by inserting `\newblock` and `\newunit` commands at suitable places and `\finentry` at the very end (see § 4.2.3 for an example). See also § 4.11.7 for some practical hints.

`\newblock`

Records the end of a block. This command does not print anything, it merely marks the end of the block. The block delimiter `\newblockpunct` will be inserted by a subsequent `\printtext`, `\printfield`, `\printlist`, `\printnames`, or `\bibstring` command. You may use `\newblock` at suitable places without having to worry about spurious blocks. A new block will only be started by the next `\printfield` (or similar) command if this command prints anything. See § 4.11.7 for further details.



`\newunit` Records the end of a unit and puts the default delimiter `\newunitpunct` in the punctuation buffer. This command does not print anything, it merely marks the end of the unit. The punctuation buffer will be inserted by the next `\printtext`, `\printfield`, `\printlist`, `\printnames`, or `\bibstring` command. You may use `\newunit` after commands like `\printfield` without having to worry about spurious punctuation and whitespace. The buffer will only be inserted by the next `\printfield` or similar command if *both* fields are non-empty. This also applies to `\printtext`, `\printlist`, `\printnames`, and `\bibstring`. See § 4.11.7 for further details.

`\finentry` Inserts `\finentrypunct`. This command should be used at the very end of every bibliography entry.

`\setunit{⟨punctuation⟩}`

`\setunit*{⟨punctuation⟩}`

The `\setunit` command is similar to `\newunit` except that it uses `⟨punctuation⟩` instead of `\newunitpunct`. The starred variant differs from the regular version in that it checks if the last `\printtext`, `\printfield`, `\printlist`, `\printnames`, or `\bibstring` command did actually print anything. If not, it does nothing.

`\printunit{⟨punctuation⟩}`

`\printunit*{⟨punctuation⟩}`

The `\printunit` command is similar to `\setunit` except that `⟨punctuation⟩` persists in the buffer. This ensures that `⟨punctuation⟩` is inserted before the next non-empty field printed by the `\printtext`, `\printfield`, `\printlist`, `\printnames`, or `\bibstring` commands—regardless of any intermediate calls to `\newunit` or `\setunit`.

`\setpunctfont{⟨command⟩}`

This command, which is intended for use in field formatting directives, provides an alternative way of dealing with unit punctuation after a field printed in a different font (for example, a title printed in italics). The standard LaTeX way of dealing with this is adding a small amount of space, the so-called italic correction. This command allows adapting the punctuation to the font of the preceding field. The `⟨command⟩` should be a text font command which takes one argument, such as `\emph` or `\textbf`. This command will only affect punctuation marks inserted by one of the commands from § 4.7.3. The font adaption is applied to the next punctuation mark only and will be reset automatically thereafter. If you want to reset it manually before it takes effect, issue `\resetpunctfont`. If the `punctfont` package option is disabled, this command does nothing. Note that the `\mkbibemph`, `\mkbibitalic` and `\mkbibbold` wrappers from § 4.10.4 incorporate this feature by default.

`\resetpunctfont` This command resets the unit punctuation font defined with `\setpunctfont` before it takes effect. If the `punctfont` package option is disabled, this command does nothing.

## 4.7.2 标点判断 Punctuation Tests

The following commands may be used to test for preceding punctuation marks at any point in citations and the bibliography.

`\ifpunct{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

Executes `⟨true⟩` if preceded by any punctuation mark except for an abbreviation dot, and `⟨false⟩` otherwise.

`\ifterm{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

Executes `⟨true⟩` if preceded by a terminal punctuation mark, and `⟨false⟩` otherwise. A terminal punctuation mark is any punctuation mark which has been registered for automatic capitalization, either with `\DeclareCapitalPunctuation` or by default, see § 4.7.5 for details. By default, this applies to periods, exclamation marks, and question marks.

`\ifpunctmark{⟨character⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

Executes `⟨true⟩` if preceded by the punctuation mark `⟨character⟩`, and `⟨false⟩` otherwise. The `⟨character⟩` may be a comma, a semicolon, a colon, a period, an exclamation mark, a question mark, or an asterisk. Note that a period denotes an end-of-sentence period. Use the asterisk to test for the dot after an abbreviation. If this command is used in a formatting directive for name lists, i.e., in the argument to `\DeclareNameFormat`, the `⟨character⟩` may also be an apostrophe.

`\ifprefchar{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}`

Executes `⟨true⟩` if preceded by any prefix character declared by `\DeclarePrefChars`.

## 4.7.3 添加标点 Adding Punctuation

下面的命令设计用来重复标点。参考文献和标注样式总需要使用这些命令来代替原样输出标点符号。本节中所有的`\add...`命令自动利用`\unspace`命令移除前面的空白 (见 § 4.7.4)。注意: 下面讨论的所有的`\add...`命令的作用是宏包默认的, 无论 Biblatex 换哪种语言都会重新恢复。其作用可以通过`\DeclarePunctuationPairs`命令进行调整, 见 § 4.7.5。节

The following commands are designed to prevent double punctuation marks. Bibliography and citation styles should always use these commands instead of literal punctuation marks. All `\add...` commands in this section automatically remove preceding whitespace with `\unspace` (see § 4.7.4). Note that the behavior of all `\add...` commands discussed below is the package default, which is restored whenever Biblatex switches languages. This behavior may be adjusted with `\DeclarePunctuationPairs` from § 4.7.5.

|                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>\adddot</code>       | 如果前面输出的不是任何一种标点符号, 那么添加一个句点 (period)。该命令的目的是在一个缩写后面插入点 (dot)。以这种方式插入的点被认为与其它标点命令插入的标点性质相同。该命令也用来将前面如实输出的句点 (原样输出的句点, literal period) 转换成一个缩写的点。Adds a period unless it is preceded by any punctuation mark. The purpose of this command is inserting the dot after an abbreviation. Any dot inserted this way is recognized as such by the other punctuation commands. This command may also be used to turn a previously inserted literal period into an abbreviation dot. |
| <code>\addcomma</code>     | 如果前面输出不是一个逗号 (comma)、分号 (semicolon)、冒号 (colon) 和句点 (period), 那么添加一个逗号。Adds a comma unless it is preceded by another comma, a semicolon, a colon, or a period.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <code>\addsemicolon</code> | Adds a semicolon unless it is preceded by a comma, another semicolon, a colon, or a period.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <code>\addcolon</code>     | Adds a colon unless it is preceded by a comma, a semicolon, another colon, or a period.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <code>\addperiod</code>    | 如果前面输出不是一个缩写点或其他任何标点符号, 那么添加一个句号。该命令也可以用来将前面插入的缩写点转换为句号, 比如在句子的末尾 <sup>57</sup> 。Adds a period unless it is preceded by an abbreviation dot or any other punctuation mark. This command may also be used to turn a previously inserted abbreviation dot into a period, for example at the end of a sentence.                                                                                                                                                                |
| <code>\addexclam</code>    | Adds an exclamation mark unless it is preceded by any punctuation mark except for an abbreviation dot.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <code>\addquestion</code>  | Adds a question mark unless it is preceded by any punctuation mark except for an abbreviation dot.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <code>\isdot</code>        | 当前面输出的是句号的时候, 将其转换为缩写的点, 如果前面是其它符号那么不添加任何符号。Turns a previously inserted literal period into an abbreviation dot. In contrast to <code>\adddot</code> , nothing is inserted if this command is not preceded by a period.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <code>\nopunct</code>      | Adds an internal marker which will cause the next punctuation command to print nothing.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

#### 4.7.4 添加空格 Adding Whitespace

The following commands are designed to prevent spurious whitespace. Bibliography and citation styles should always use these commands instead of literal whitespace. In contrast to the commands in §§ 4.7.2 和 4.7.3, they are not restricted to citations and the bibliography but available globally.

|                               |                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>\unspace</code>         | Removes preceding whitespace, i.e., removes all skips and penalties from the end of the current horizontal list. This command is implicitly executed by all of the following commands. |
| <code>\addspace</code>        | Adds a breakable interword space.                                                                                                                                                      |
| <code>\addnbspace</code>      | Adds a non-breakable interword space.                                                                                                                                                  |
| <code>\addthinspace</code>    | Adds a <i>breakable</i> thin space.                                                                                                                                                    |
| <code>\addnbthinspace</code>  | Adds a non-breakable thin space. This is similar to <code>\,</code> and <code>\thinspace</code> .                                                                                      |
| <code>\addlowpenspace</code>  | Adds a space penalized by the value of the <code>lownamepenalty</code> counter, see §§ 3.9.3 和 4.10.3 for details.                                                                     |
| <code>\addhighpenspace</code> | Adds a space penalized by the value of the <code>highnamepenalty</code> counter, see §§ 3.9.3 和 4.10.3 for details.                                                                    |
| <code>\addlpthinspace</code>  | Similar to <code>\addlowpenspace</code> but adds a breakable thin space.                                                                                                               |
| <code>\addhpthinspace</code>  | Similar to <code>\addhighpenspace</code> but adds a breakable thin space.                                                                                                              |
| <code>\addabbrvspace</code>   | Adds a space penalized by the value of the <code>abbrvpenalty</code> counter, see §§ 3.9.3 和 4.10.3 for details.                                                                       |
| <code>\addabthinspace</code>  | Similar to <code>\addabbrvspace</code> but using a thin space.                                                                                                                         |
| <code>\adddotSPACE</code>     | Executes <code>\adddot</code> and adds a space penalized by the value of the <code>abbrvpenalty</code> counter, see §§ 3.9.3 和 4.10.3 for details.                                     |
| <code>\addslash</code>        | Adds a breakable slash. This command differs from the <code>\slash</code> command in the LaTeX kernel in that a linebreak after the slash is not penalized at all.                     |

Note that the commands in this section implicitly execute `\unspace` to remove spurious whitespace, hence they may be used to override each other. For example, you may use `\addnbspace` to transform a previously inserted interword space into a non-breakable one and `\addspace` to turn a non-breakable space into a breakable one.

58

<sup>57</sup>不是很理解, 前面如果是缩写的点, 那么不加入句号, 那么缩写的点就转变为句号了?

<sup>58</sup>注意有的时候`\unspace`看似能够起到作用, 但其实并不能随意使用的。在 beamer 中 `\printtext` 老是有些问题, 可能是实现 `\printtext` 命令的依赖命令, 在 beamer 中重定义了, 跟 `article` 文档类中的情况差别很大。

### 4.7.5 标点设置和大写 Configuring Punctuation and Capitalization

The following commands configure various features related to punctuation and automatic capitalization.<sup>59</sup>

`\DeclarePrefChars{⟨characters⟩}`

This command declares characters that are to be treated specially when testing to see if `\bibnamedelimc` is to be inserted between a name prefix and a family name. If a character is in the list of `⟨characters⟩`, `\bibnamedelimc` is not inserted. It is used to allow abbreviated name prefixes like ‘d’Argent’ where no space should be inserted after the apostrophe. The default setting is:

```
\DeclarePrefChars{''}
```

`\DeclareAutoPunctuation{⟨characters⟩}`

This command defines the punctuation marks to be considered by the citation commands as they scan ahead for punctuation. Note that `⟨characters⟩` is an undelimited list of characters. Valid `⟨characters⟩` are period, comma, semicolon, colon, exclamation and question mark. The default setting is:

```
\DeclareAutoPunctuation{.,,:!?
```

This definition is restored automatically whenever the `autopunct` package option is set to `true`. Executing `\DeclareAutoPunctuation{}` is equivalent to setting `autopunct=false`, i.e., it disables this feature.

`\DeclareCapitalPunctuation{⟨characters⟩}`

When Biblatex inserts localisation strings, i.e., key terms such as ‘edition’ or ‘volume’, it automatically capitalizes them after terminal punctuation marks. This command defines the punctuation marks which will cause localisation strings to be capitalized if one of them precedes a string. Note that `⟨characters⟩` is an undelimited list of characters. Valid `⟨characters⟩` are period, comma, semicolon, colon, exclamation and question mark. The package default is:

```
\DeclareCapitalPunctuation{.!?
```

Using `\DeclareCapitalPunctuation` with an empty argument is equivalent to disabling automatic capitalization. Since this feature is language specific, this command must be used in the argument to `\DefineBibliographyExtras` (when used in the preamble) or `\DeclareBibliographyExtras` (when used in a localisation module). See §§ 3.8 和 4.9 for details. By default, strings are capitalized after periods, exclamation marks, and question marks. All strings are generally capitalized at the beginning of a paragraph (in fact whenever TeX is in vertical mode).

`\DeclarePunctuationPairs{⟨identifier⟩}{⟨characters⟩}`

Use this command to declare valid pairs of punctuation marks. This will affect the punctuation commands discussed in § 4.7.3. For example, the description of `\addcomma` states that this command adds a comma unless it is preceded by another comma, a semicolon, a colon, or a period. In other words, commas after abbreviation dots, exclamation marks, and question marks are permitted. These valid pairs are declared as follows:

```
\DeclarePunctuationPairs{comma}{*!?
```

The `⟨identifier⟩` selects the command to be configured. The identifiers correspond to the names of the punctuation commands from § 4.7.3 without the `\add` prefix, i.e., valid `⟨identifier⟩` strings are dot, comma, semicolon, colon, period, exclam, question. The `⟨characters⟩` argument is an undelimited list of punctuation marks. Valid `⟨characters⟩` are comma, semicolon, colon, period, exclamation mark, question mark, and asterisk. A period in the `⟨characters⟩` argument denotes an end-of-sentence period, an asterisk the dot after an abbreviation. This is the default setup, which is automatically restored whenever Biblatex switches languages and corresponds to the behavior described in § 4.7.3:

```
\DeclarePunctuationPairs{dot}{}
\DeclarePunctuationPairs{comma}{*!?
```

<sup>59</sup>这里的 capitalization 是大写的意思么？

```
\DeclarePunctuationPairs{colon}{*!?}
\DeclarePunctuationPairs{period}{}
\DeclarePunctuationPairs{exclam}{*}
\DeclarePunctuationPairs{question}{*}
```

Since this feature is language specific, `\DeclarePunctuationPairs` must be used in the argument to `\DefineBibliographyExtras` (when used in the preamble) or `\DeclareBibliographyExtras` (when used in a localisation module). See §§ 3.8 和 4.9 for details. Note that some localisation modules may use a setup which is different from the package default.<sup>60</sup>

`\DeclareQuotePunctuation{⟨characters⟩}`

This command controls ‘American-style’ punctuation. The `\mkbibquote` wrapper from § 4.10.4 can interact with the punctuation facilities discussed in §§ 4.7.1、4.7.3、4.7.4. Punctuation marks after `\mkbibquote` will be moved inside the quotes if they have been registered with `\DeclareQuotePunctuation`. Note that `⟨characters⟩` is an undelimited list of characters. Valid `⟨characters⟩` are period, comma, semicolon, colon, exclamation and question mark. Here is an example:

```
\DeclareQuotePunctuation{.,}
```

Executing `\DeclareQuotePunctuation{}` is equivalent to disabling this feature. This is the package default. Since this feature is language specific, this command must be used in the argument to `\DefineBibliographyExtras` (when used in the preamble) or `\DeclareBibliographyExtras` (when used in a localisation module). See §§ 3.8 和 4.9 for details. See also § 3.10.1.

`\uspunctuation` A shorthand using the lower-level commands `\DeclareQuotePunctuation` and `\DeclarePunctuationPairs` to activate ‘American-style’ punctuation. See § 3.10.1 for details. This shorthand is provided for convenience only. The effective settings are applied by the lower-level commands.

`\stdpunctuation` Undoes the settings applied by `\uspunctuation`, restoring standard punctuation. As standard punctuation is the default setting, you only need this command to override a previously executed `\uspunctuation` command. See § 3.10.1 for details.

## 4.7.6 Correcting Punctuation Tracking

The facilities for punctuation tracking and automatic capitalization are very reliable under normal circumstances, but there are always marginal cases which may require manual intervention. Typical cases are localisation strings printed as the first word in a footnote (which is usually treated as the beginning of a paragraph as far as capitalization is concerned, but TeX is not in vertical mode at this point) or punctuation after periods which are not really end-of-sentence periods (for example, after an ellipsis like “[...]” a command such as `\addperiod` would do nothing since parentheses and brackets are transparent to the punctuation tracker). In such cases, use the following commands in bibliography and citation styles to mark the beginning or middle of a sentence if and where required:

`\bibsentence` This command marks the beginning of a sentence. A localisation string immediately after this command will be capitalized and the punctuation tracker is reset, i. e., this command hides all preceding punctuation marks from the punctuation tracker and enforces capitalization.

`\midsentence` This command marks the middle of a sentence. A localisation string immediately after this command will not be capitalized and the punctuation tracker is reset, i. e., this command hides all preceding punctuation marks from the punctuation tracker and suppresses capitalization.

`\midsentence*` The starred variant of `\midsentence` differs from the regular one in that a preceding abbreviation dot is not hidden from the the punctuation tracker, i. e., any code after `\midsentence*` will see a preceding abbreviation dot. All other punctuation marks are hidden from the punctuation tracker and capitalization is suppressed.

## 4.8 本地化字符串 Localization Strings

Localization strings are key terms such as ‘edition’ or ‘volume’ which are automatically translated by Biblatex’s localisation modules. See § 4.9 for an overview and § 4.9.2 for a list of all strings supported by default. The commands in this section are used to print the localised term.

`\bibstring[⟨wrapper⟩]{⟨key⟩}`

Prints the localisation string `⟨key⟩`, where `⟨key⟩` is an identifier in lowercase letters (see § 4.9.2). The string will be capitalized as required, see § 4.7.5 for details. Depending on the `abbreviate` package option from § 3.1.2.1, `\bibstring` prints

<sup>60</sup>As of this writing, the `american` module uses different settings for ‘American-style’ punctuation.

the short or the long version of the string. If localisation strings are nested, i. e., if `\bibstring` is used in another string, it will behave like `\bibxstring`. If the `\wrapper` argument is given, the string is passed to the `\wrapper` for formatting. This is intended for font commands such as `\emph`.

`\biblstring[\wrapper]{\key}`

Similar to `\bibstring` but always prints the long string, ignoring the `abbreviate` option.

`\bibsstring[\wrapper]{\key}`

Similar to `\bibstring` but always prints the short string, ignoring the `abbreviate` option.

`\bibcpstring[\wrapper]{\key}`

Similar to `\bibstring` but the term is always capitalized.

`\bibcplstring[\wrapper]{\key}`

Similar to `\biblstring` but the term is always capitalized.

`\bibcpsstring[\wrapper]{\key}`

Similar to `\bibsstring` but the term is always capitalized.

`\bibucstring[\wrapper]{\key}`

Similar to `\bibstring` but the whole term is uppercased.

`\bibuclstring[\wrapper]{\key}`

Similar to `\biblstring` but the whole term is uppercased.

`\bibucsstring[\wrapper]{\key}`

Similar to `\bibsstring` but the whole term is uppercased.

`\biblcstring[\wrapper]{\key}`

Similar to `\bibstring` but the whole term is lowercased.

`\biblclstring[\wrapper]{\key}`

Similar to `\biblstring` but the whole term is lowercased.

`\biblcsstring[\wrapper]{\key}`

Similar to `\bibsstring` but the whole term is lowercased.

`\bibxstring{\key}`

A simplified but expandable version of `\bibstring`. Note that this variant does not capitalize automatically, nor does it hook into the punctuation tracker. It is intended for special cases in which strings are nested or an expanded localisation string is required in a test.

`\bibxlstring[\wrapper]{\key}`

Similar to `\bibxstring` but always uses the long string, ignoring the `abbreviate` option.

`\bibxsstring[\wrapper]{\key}`

Similar to `\bibxstring` but always uses the short string, ignoring the `abbreviate` option.

`\mainlang`

Switches from the current language to the main document language. This can be used the `\wrapper` argument in the localisation string commands above.

## 4.9 本地化模块 Localization Modules

A localisation module provides translations for key terms such as ‘edition’ or ‘volume’ as well as definitions for language specific features such as the date format and ordinals. These definitions are provided in files with the suffix `lbx`. The base name of the file must be a language name known to the `babel/polyglossia` packages. The `lbx` files may also be used to map `babel/polyglossia` language names to the backend modules of the `Biblatex` package. All localisation modules are loaded on demand in the document body. Note that the contents of the file are processed in a group and that the category code of the character `@` is temporarily set to ‘letter’.

### 4.9.1 本地化命令 Localization Commands

The user-level versions of the localisation commands were already introduced in § 3.8. When used in `\bx` files, however, the syntax of localisation commands is different from the user syntax in the preamble and the configuration file. When used in localisation files, there is no need to specify the `\language` because the mapping of strings to a language is already provided by the name of the `\bx` file.

`\DeclareBibliographyStrings{\definitions}`

This command is only available in `\bx` files. It is used to define localisation strings. The `\definitions` consist of `\key`=`\value` pairs which assign an expression to an identifier. A complete list of all keys supported by default is given in § 4.9.2. Note that the syntax of the value is different in `\bx` files. The value assigned to a key consists of two expressions, each of which is wrapped in an additional pair of brackets. This is best shown by example:

```
\DeclareBibliographyStrings{%
  bibliography = {{Bibliography}{Bibliography}},
  shorthands   = {{List of Abbreviations}{Abbreviations}},
  editor       = {{editor}{ed.}},
  editors      = {{editors}{eds.}},
}
```

The first value is the long, written out expression, the second one is an abbreviated or short form. Both strings must always be given even though they may be identical if an expression is always (or never) abbreviated. Depending on the setting of the `abbreviate` package option (see § 3.1.2.1), BibLaTeX selects one expression when loading the `\bx` file. There is also a special key named `inherit` which copies the strings from a different language. This is intended for languages which only differ in a few expressions, such as German and Austrian or American and British English. For example, here are the complete definitions for Austrian:

```
\DeclareBibliographyStrings{%
  inherit      = {german},
  january      = {{J\^anner}{J\^an.}},
}
```

The above examples are slightly simplified. Real localisation files should use the punctuation and formatting commands discussed in §§ 4.7.3 and 3.9 instead of literal punctuation. Here is an excerpt from a real localisation file:

```
bibliography = {{Bibliography}{Bibliography}},
shorthands   = {{List of Abbreviations}{Abbreviations}},
editor       = {{editor}{ed\adddot}},
editors      = {{editors}{eds\adddot}},
byeditor     = {{edited by}{ed\adddotspace by}},
mathesis     = {{Master's thesis}{MA\addabbrvspace thesis}},
```

Note the handling of abbreviation dots, the spacing in abbreviated expressions, and the capitalization in the example above. All expressions should be capitalized as they usually are when used in the middle of a sentence. The BibLaTeX package will automatically capitalize the first word when required at the beginning of a sentence, see `\DeclareCapitalPunctuation` in § 4.7.5 for details. Expressions intended for use in headings are special. They should be capitalized in a way that is suitable for titling and should not be abbreviated (but they may have a short form).

`\InheritBibliographyStrings{\language}`

This command is only available in `\bx` files. It copies the localisation strings for `\language` to the current language, as specified by the name of the `\bx` file.

`\DeclareBibliographyExtras{\code}`

This command is only available in `\bx` files. It is used to adapt language specific features such as the date format and ordinals. The `\code`, which may be arbitrary LaTeX code, will usually consist of redefinitions of the formatting commands from § 4.10.2.

`\UndeclareBibliographyExtras{⟨code⟩}`

This command is only available in `lbx` files. It is used to restore any formatting commands modified with `\DeclareBibliographyExtras`. If a redefined command is included in § 4.10.2, there is no need to restore its previous definition since these commands are localised by all language modules anyway.

`\InheritBibliographyExtras{⟨language⟩}`

This command is only available in `lbx` files. It copies the bibliography extras for `⟨language⟩` to the current language, as specified by the name of the `lbx` file.

`\DeclareHyphenationExceptions{⟨text⟩}`

This command corresponds to `\DefineHyphenationExceptions` from § 3.8. The difference is that it is only available in `lbx` files and that the `⟨language⟩` argument is omitted. The hyphenation exceptions will affect the language of the `lbx` file currently being processed.

`\DeclareRedundantLanguages{⟨language, language, ...⟩}{⟨langid, langid, ...⟩}`

This command provides the language mappings required by the `clearlang` option from § 3.1.2.1. The `⟨language⟩` is the string given in the language field (without the optional `lang` prefix); `⟨langid⟩` is babel/polyglossia's language identifier, as given in the optional argument of `\usepackage` when loading babel or the argument of `\setdefaultlanguage` or `\setotherlanguages` when using polyglossia. This command may be used in `lbx` files or in the document preamble. Here are some examples:

```
\DeclareRedundantLanguages{french}{french}
\DeclareRedundantLanguages{german}{german,ngerman,austrian,naustrian,
nswissgerman,swissgerman}
\DeclareRedundantLanguages{english,american}{english,american,british,
canadian,australian,newzealand,USenglish,UKenglish}
```

Note that this feature needs to be enabled globally with the `clearlang` option from § 3.1.2.1. If it is disabled, all mappings will be ignored. If the `⟨langid⟩` parameter is blank, Bibl<sub>at</sub>ex will clear the mappings for the corresponding `⟨language⟩`, i. e., the feature will be disabled for this `⟨language⟩` only.

`\DeclareLanguageMapping{⟨language⟩}{⟨file⟩}`

This command maps a babel/polyglossia language identifier to an `lbx` file. The `⟨language⟩` must be a language name known to the babel/polyglossia package, i. e., one of the identifiers listed in 表 2. The `⟨file⟩` argument is the name of an alternative `lbx` file without the `.lbx` suffix. Declaring the same mapping more than once is possible. Subsequent declarations will simply overwrite any previous ones. This command may only be used in the preamble. See § 4.11.8 for further details.

`\NewBibliographyString{⟨key⟩}`

This command, which may be used in the preamble (including `cbx` and `bbx` files) as well as in `lbx` files, declares new localisation strings, i. e., it initializes a new `⟨key⟩` to be used in the `⟨definitions⟩` of `\DefineBibliographyStrings` or `\DeclareBibliographyStrings`. The `⟨key⟩` argument may also be a comma-separated list of key names. When used in an `lbx`, the `⟨key⟩` is initialized only for the language specified by the name of the `lbx` file. The keys listed in § 4.9.2 are defined by default.

## 4.9.2 Localization Keys

The localisation keys in this section are defined by default and covered by the localisation files which come with Bibl<sub>at</sub>ex. Note that these strings are only available in citations, the bibliography and bibliography lists. All expressions should be capitalized as they usually are when used in the middle of a sentence. Bibl<sub>at</sub>ex will capitalize them automatically at the beginning of a sentence. The only exceptions to these rules are the three strings intended for use in headings.

**4.9.2.1 Headings** The following strings are special because they are intended for use in headings and made available globally via macros. For this reason, they should be capitalized for use in headings and they must not include any local commands which are part of Bibl<sub>at</sub>ex's author interface.

|                     |                                                                                                         |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>bibliography</b> | The term 'bibliography', also available as <code>\bibname</code> .                                      |
| <b>references</b>   | The term 'references', also available as <code>\refname</code> .                                        |
| <b>shorthands</b>   | The term 'list of shorthands' or 'list of abbreviations', also available as <code>\biblistname</code> . |

**4.9.2.2 Roles, Expressed as Functions** The following keys refer to roles which are expressed as a function ('editor', 'translator') rather than as an action ('edited by', 'translated by').

|                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>editor</b>        | The term 'editor', referring to the main editor. This is the most generic editorial role.                                                                                                       |
| <b>editors</b>       | The plural form of <b>editor</b> .                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>compiler</b>      | The term 'compiler', referring to an editor whose task is to compile a work.                                                                                                                    |
| <b>compilers</b>     | The plural form of <b>compiler</b> .                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>founder</b>       | The term 'founder', referring to a founding editor.                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>founders</b>      | The plural form of <b>founder</b> .                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>continuator</b>   | An expression like 'continuator', 'continuation', or 'continued', referring to a past editor who continued the work of the founding editor but was subsequently replaced by the current editor. |
| <b>continuators</b>  | The plural form of <b>continuator</b> .                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>redactor</b>      | The term 'redactor', referring to a secondary editor.                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>redactors</b>     | The plural form of <b>redactor</b> .                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>reviser</b>       | The term 'reviser', referring to a secondary editor.                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>revisers</b>      | The plural form of <b>reviser</b> .                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>collaborator</b>  | A term like 'collaborator', 'collaboration', 'cooperator', or 'cooperation', referring to a secondary editor.                                                                                   |
| <b>collaborators</b> | The plural form of <b>collaborator</b> .                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>translator</b>    | The term 'translator'.                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>translators</b>   | The plural form of <b>translator</b> .                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>commentator</b>   | The term 'commentator', referring to the author of a commentary to a work.                                                                                                                      |
| <b>commentators</b>  | The plural form of <b>commentators</b> .                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>annotator</b>     | The term 'annotator', referring to the author of annotations to a work.                                                                                                                         |
| <b>annotators</b>    | The plural form of <b>annotators</b> .                                                                                                                                                          |

**4.9.2.3 Concatenated Editor Roles, Expressed as Functions** The following keys are similar in function to **editor**, **translator**, etc. They are used to indicate additional roles of the editor, e.g., 'editor and translator', 'editor and foreword'.

|                                                                         |                                                                                |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>editortr</b>                                                         | Used if <b>editor</b> / <b>translator</b> are identical.                       |
| <b>editorstr</b>                                                        | The plural form of <b>editortr</b> .                                           |
| <b>editorco</b>                                                         | Used if <b>editor</b> / <b>commentator</b> are identical.                      |
| <b>editorsco</b>                                                        | The plural form of <b>editorco</b> .                                           |
| <b>editoran</b>                                                         | Used if <b>editor</b> / <b>annotator</b> are identical.                        |
| <b>editorsan</b>                                                        | The plural form of <b>editoran</b> .                                           |
| <b>editorin</b>                                                         | Used if <b>editor</b> / <b>introduction</b> are identical.                     |
| <b>editorsin</b>                                                        | The plural form of <b>editorin</b> .                                           |
| <b>editorfo</b>                                                         | Used if <b>editor</b> / <b>foreword</b> are identical.                         |
| <b>editorsfo</b>                                                        | The plural form of <b>editorfo</b> .                                           |
| <b>editoraf</b>                                                         | Used if <b>editor</b> / <b>aftword</b> are identical.                          |
| <b>editorsaf</b>                                                        | The plural form of <b>editoraf</b> .                                           |
| Keys for <b>editor</b> / <b>translator</b> / <i>role</i> combinations:  |                                                                                |
| <b>editortrco</b>                                                       | Used if <b>editor</b> / <b>translator</b> / <b>commentator</b> are identical.  |
| <b>editorstrco</b>                                                      | The plural form of <b>editortrco</b> .                                         |
| <b>editortran</b>                                                       | Used if <b>editor</b> / <b>translator</b> / <b>annotator</b> are identical.    |
| <b>editorstran</b>                                                      | The plural form of <b>editortran</b> .                                         |
| <b>editortrin</b>                                                       | Used if <b>editor</b> / <b>translator</b> / <b>introduction</b> are identical. |
| <b>editorstrin</b>                                                      | The plural form of <b>editortrin</b> .                                         |
| <b>editortrfo</b>                                                       | Used if <b>editor</b> / <b>translator</b> / <b>foreword</b> are identical.     |
| <b>editorstrfo</b>                                                      | The plural form of <b>editortrfo</b> .                                         |
| <b>editortraf</b>                                                       | Used if <b>editor</b> / <b>translator</b> / <b>aftword</b> are identical.      |
| <b>editorstraf</b>                                                      | The plural form of <b>editortraf</b> .                                         |
| Keys for <b>editor</b> / <b>commentator</b> / <i>role</i> combinations: |                                                                                |



**editorcoin** Used if editor/commentator/introduction are identical.  
**editorscoin** The plural form of editorcoin.  
**editorcofo** Used if editor/commentator/foreword are identical.  
**editorscofo** The plural form of editorcofo.  
**editorcoaf** Used if editor/commentator/aftword are identical.  
**editorscoaf** The plural form of editorcoaf.

Keys for editor/annotator/⟨role⟩ combinations:

**editoranin** Used if editor/annotator/introduction are identical.  
**editorsanin** The plural form of editoranin.  
**editoranfo** Used if editor/annotator/foreword are identical.  
**editorsanfo** The plural form of editoranfo.  
**editoranaf** Used if editor/annotator/aftword are identical.  
**editorsanaf** The plural form of editoranaf.

Keys for editor/translator/commentator/⟨role⟩ combinations:

**editortrcoin** Used if editor/translator/commentator/introduction are identical.  
**editorstrcoin** The plural form of editortrcoin.  
**editortrcofo** Used if editor/translator/commentator/foreword are identical.  
**editorstrcofo** The plural form of editortrcofo.  
**editortrcoaf** Used if editor/translator/commentator/aftword are identical.  
**editorstrcoaf** The plural form of editortrcoaf.

Keys for editor/annotator/commentator/⟨role⟩ combinations:

**editortranin** Used if editor/annotator/commentator/introduction are identical.  
**editorstranin** The plural form of editortranin.  
**editortranfo** Used if editor/annotator/commentator/foreword are identical.  
**editorstranfo** The plural form of editortranfo.  
**editortranaf** Used if editor/annotator/commentator/aftword are identical.  
**editorstranaf** The plural form of editortranaf.

**4.9.2.4 Concatenated Translator Roles, Expressed as Functions** The following keys are similar in function to translator. They are used to indicate additional roles of the translator, e.g., ‘translator and commentator’, ‘translator and introduction’.

**translаторco** Used if translator/commentator are identical.  
**translatorsco** The plural form of translаторco.  
**translаторan** Used if translator/annotator are identical.  
**translatorsan** The plural form of translаторan.  
**translаторin** Used if translator/introduction are identical.  
**translatorsin** The plural form of translаторin.  
**translаторfo** Used if translator/foreword are identical.  
**translatorsfo** The plural form of translаторfo.  
**translаторaf** Used if translator/aftword are identical.  
**translatorsaf** The plural form of translаторaf.

Keys for translator/commentator/⟨role⟩ combinations:

**translatorcoin** Used if translator/commentator/introduction are identical.  
**translatorscoin** The plural form of translatorcoin.  
**translatorcofo** Used if translator/commentator/foreword are identical.  
**translatorscofo** The plural form of translatorcofo.  
**translatorcoaf** Used if translator/commentator/aftword are identical.  
**translatorscoaf** The plural form of translatorcoaf.

Keys for translator/annotator/⟨role⟩ combinations:

|                 |                                                          |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| translatoranin  | Used if translator/annotator/introduction are identical. |
| translatorsanin | The plural form of translatoranin.                       |
| translatoranfo  | Used if translator/annotator/foreword are identical.     |
| translatorsanfo | The plural form of translatoranfo.                       |
| translatoranaf  | Used if translator/annotator/aftword are identical.      |
| translatorsanaf | The plural form of translatoranaf.                       |

**4.9.2.5 Roles, Expressed as Actions** The following keys refer to roles which are expressed as an action ('edited by', 'translated by') rather than as a function ('editor', 'translator').

|                |                                                                                                                           |
|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| byauthor       | The expression '[created] by <i>&lt;name&gt;</i> '.                                                                       |
| byeditor       | The expression 'edited by <i>&lt;name&gt;</i> '.                                                                          |
| bycompiler     | The expression 'compiled by <i>&lt;name&gt;</i> '.                                                                        |
| byfounder      | The expression 'founded by <i>&lt;name&gt;</i> '.                                                                         |
| bycontinuator  | The expression 'continued by <i>&lt;name&gt;</i> '.                                                                       |
| byredactor     | The expression 'redacted by <i>&lt;name&gt;</i> '.                                                                        |
| byreviser      | The expression 'revised by <i>&lt;name&gt;</i> '.                                                                         |
| byreviewer     | The expression 'reviewed by <i>&lt;name&gt;</i> '.                                                                        |
| bycollaborator | An expression like 'in collaboration with <i>&lt;name&gt;</i> ' or 'in cooperation with <i>&lt;name&gt;</i> '.            |
| bytranslator   | The expression 'translated by <i>&lt;name&gt;</i> ' or 'translated from <i>&lt;language&gt;</i> by <i>&lt;name&gt;</i> '. |
| bycommentator  | The expression 'commented by <i>&lt;name&gt;</i> '.                                                                       |
| byannotator    | The expression 'annotated by <i>&lt;name&gt;</i> '.                                                                       |

**4.9.2.6 Concatenated Editor Roles, Expressed as Actions** The following keys are similar in function to byeditor, bytranslator, etc. They are used to indicate additional roles of the editor, e.g., 'edited and translated by', 'edited and furnished with an introduction by', 'edited, with a foreword, by'.

|                                                                           |                                                                   |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| byeditortr                                                                | Used if editor/translator are identical.                          |
| byeditorco                                                                | Used if editor/commentator are identical.                         |
| byeditoran                                                                | Used if editor/annotator are identical.                           |
| byeditorin                                                                | Used if editor/introduction are identical.                        |
| byeditorfo                                                                | Used if editor/foreword are identical.                            |
| byeditoraf                                                                | Used if editor/aftword are identical.                             |
| Keys for editor/translator/ <i>&lt;role&gt;</i> combinations:             |                                                                   |
| byeditortrco                                                              | Used if editor/translator/commentator are identical.              |
| byeditortran                                                              | Used if editor/translator/annotator are identical.                |
| byeditortrin                                                              | Used if editor/translator/introduction are identical.             |
| byeditortrfo                                                              | Used if editor/translator/foreword are identical.                 |
| byeditortraf                                                              | Used if editor/translator/aftword are identical.                  |
| Keys for editor/commentator/ <i>&lt;role&gt;</i> combinations:            |                                                                   |
| byeditorcoin                                                              | Used if editor/commentator/introduction are identical.            |
| byeditorcofo                                                              | Used if editor/commentator/foreword are identical.                |
| byeditorcoaf                                                              | Used if editor/commentator/aftword are identical.                 |
| Keys for editor/annotator/ <i>&lt;role&gt;</i> combinations:              |                                                                   |
| byeditoranin                                                              | Used if editor/annotator/introduction are identical.              |
| byeditoranfo                                                              | Used if editor/annotator/foreword are identical.                  |
| byeditoranaf                                                              | Used if editor/annotator/aftword are identical.                   |
| Keys for editor/translator/commentator/ <i>&lt;role&gt;</i> combinations: |                                                                   |
| byeditortrcoin                                                            | Used if editor/translator/commentator/introduction are identical. |
| byeditortrcofo                                                            | Used if editor/translator/commentator/foreword are identical.     |
| byeditortrcoaf                                                            | Used if editor/translator/commentator/aftword are identical.      |
| Keys for editor/translator/annotator/ <i>&lt;role&gt;</i> combinations:   |                                                                   |
| byeditortranin                                                            | Used if editor/annotator/commentator/introduction are identical.  |
| byeditortranfo                                                            | Used if editor/annotator/commentator/foreword are identical.      |
| byeditortranaf                                                            | Used if editor/annotator/commentator/aftword are identical.       |

**4.9.2.7 Concatenated Translator Roles, Expressed as Actions** The following keys are similar in function to `bytranslator`. They are used to indicate additional roles of the translator, e. g., ‘translated and commented by’, ‘translated and furnished with an introduction by’, ‘translated, with a foreword, by’.

`bytranslatorco` Used if translator/commentator are identical.  
`bytranslatorsan` Used if translator/annotator are identical.  
`bytranslatorin` Used if translator/introduction are identical.  
`bytranslatorfo` Used if translator/foreword are identical.  
`bytranslatorsaf` Used if translator/afterword are identical.

Keys for translator/commentator/⟨role⟩ combinations:

`bytranslatorcoin` Used if translator/commentator/introduction are identical.  
`bytranslatorcofo` Used if translator/commentator/foreword are identical.  
`bytranslatorcoaf` Used if translator/commentator/afterword are identical.

Keys for translator/annotator/⟨role⟩ combinations:

`bytranslatorsanin` Used if translator/annotator/introduction are identical.  
`bytranslatorsanfo` Used if translator/annotator/foreword are identical.  
`bytranslatorsanaf` Used if translator/annotator/afterword are identical.

**4.9.2.8 Roles, Expressed as Objects** Roles which are related to supplementary material may also be expressed as objects (‘with a commentary by’) rather than as functions (‘commentator’) or as actions (‘commented by’).

`withcommentator` The expression ‘with a commentary by ⟨name⟩’.  
`withannotator` The expression ‘with annotations by ⟨name⟩’.  
`withintroduction` The expression ‘with an introduction by ⟨name⟩’.  
`withforeword` The expression ‘with a foreword by ⟨name⟩’.  
`withafterword` The expression ‘with an afterword by ⟨name⟩’.

### 4.9.2.9 Supplementary Material

`commentary` The term ‘commentary’.  
`annotations` The term ‘annotations’.  
`introduction` The term ‘introduction’.  
`foreword` The term ‘foreword’.  
`afterword` The term ‘afterword’.

### 4.9.2.10 Publication Details

`volume` The term ‘volume’, referring to a book.  
`volumes` The plural form of volume.  
`involumes` The term ‘in’, as used in expressions like ‘in ⟨number of volumes⟩ volumes’.  
`jourvol` The term ‘volume’, referring to a journal.  
`jourser` The term ‘series’, referring to a journal.  
`book` The term ‘book’, referring to a document division.  
`part` The term ‘part’, referring to a part of a book or a periodical.  
`issue` The term ‘issue’, referring to a periodical.  
`newseries` The expression ‘new series’, referring to a journal.  
`oldseries` The expression ‘old series’, referring to a journal.  
`edition` The term ‘edition’.  
`in` The term ‘in’, referring to the title of a work published as part of another one, e. g., ‘⟨title of article⟩ in ⟨title of journal⟩’.  
`inseries` The term ‘in’, as used in expressions like ‘volume ⟨number⟩ in ⟨name of series⟩’.  
`ofseries` The term ‘of’, as used in expressions like ‘volume ⟨number⟩ of ⟨name of series⟩’.  
`number` The term ‘number’, referring to an issue of a journal.  
`chapter` The term ‘chapter’, referring to a chapter in a book.  
`version` The term ‘version’, referring to a revision number.  
`reprint` The term ‘reprint’.

|                 |                                                                                                              |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| reprintof       | The expression ‘reprint of <i>&lt;title&gt;</i> ’.                                                           |
| reprintas       | The expression ‘reprinted as <i>&lt;title&gt;</i> ’.                                                         |
| reprintfrom     | The expression ‘reprinted from <i>&lt;title&gt;</i> ’.                                                       |
| translationof   | The expression ‘translation of <i>&lt;title&gt;</i> ’.                                                       |
| translationas   | The expression ‘translated as <i>&lt;title&gt;</i> ’.                                                        |
| translationfrom | The expression ‘translated from [the] <i>&lt;language&gt;</i> ’.                                             |
| reviewof        | The expression ‘review of <i>&lt;title&gt;</i> ’.                                                            |
| origpubas       | The expression ‘originally published as <i>&lt;title&gt;</i> ’.                                              |
| origpubin       | The expression ‘originally published in <i>&lt;year&gt;</i> ’.                                               |
| astitle         | The term ‘as’, as used in expressions like ‘published by <i>&lt;publisher&gt;</i> as <i>&lt;title&gt;</i> ’. |
| bypublisher     | The term ‘by’, as used in expressions like ‘published by <i>&lt;publisher&gt;</i> ’.                         |

#### 4.9.2.11 Publication State

|               |                                                                                                                                                         |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| inpreparation | The expression ‘in preparation’ (the manuscript is being prepared for publication).                                                                     |
| submitted     | The expression ‘submitted’ (the manuscript has been submitted to a journal or conference).                                                              |
| forthcoming   | The expression ‘forthcoming’ (the manuscript has been accepted by a press or journal).                                                                  |
| inpress       | The expression ‘in press’ (the manuscript is fully copyedited and out of the author’s hands; it is in the final stages of the production process).      |
| prepublished  | The expression ‘pre-published’ (the manuscript is published in a preliminary form or location, such as online version in advance of print publication). |

#### 4.9.2.12 Pagination

|            |                                                                                    |
|------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| page       | The term ‘page’.                                                                   |
| pages      | The plural form of page.                                                           |
| column     | The term ‘column’, referring to a column on a page.                                |
| columns    | The plural form of column.                                                         |
| section    | The term ‘section’, referring to a document division (usually abbreviated as §).   |
| sections   | The plural form of section (usually abbreviated as §§).                            |
| paragraph  | The term ‘paragraph’ (i. e., a block of text, not to be confused with section).    |
| paragraphs | The plural form of paragraph.                                                      |
| verse      | The term ‘verse’ as used when referring to a work which is cited by verse numbers. |
| verses     | The plural form of verse.                                                          |
| line       | The term ‘line’ as used when referring to a work which is cited by line numbers.   |
| lines      | The plural form of line.                                                           |

**4.9.2.13 Types** The following keys are typically used in the `type` field of `@thesis`, `@report`, `@misc`, and other entries:

|            |                                                                                                                                                        |
|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| mathesis   | An expression equivalent to the term ‘Master’s thesis’.                                                                                                |
| phdthesis  | The term ‘PhD thesis’, ‘PhD dissertation’, ‘doctoral thesis’, etc.                                                                                     |
| candthesis | An expression equivalent to the term ‘Candidate thesis’. Used for ‘Candidate’ degrees that have no clear equivalent to the Master’s or doctoral level. |
| techreport | The term ‘technical report’.                                                                                                                           |
| resreport  | The term ‘research report’.                                                                                                                            |
| software   | The term ‘computer software’.                                                                                                                          |
| datacd     | The term ‘data CD’ or ‘CD-ROM’.                                                                                                                        |
| audiocd    | The term ‘audio CD’.                                                                                                                                   |

#### 4.9.2.14 Miscellaneous

|           |                                                                                       |
|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| nodate    | The term to use in place of a date when there is no date for an entry e. g., ‘n.d.’   |
| and       | The term ‘and’, as used in a list of authors or editors, for example.                 |
| andothers | The expression ‘and others’ or ‘et alii’, used to mark the truncation of a name list. |
| andmore   | Like <code>andothers</code> but used to mark the truncation of a literal list.        |

#### 4.9.2.15 Labels

The following strings are intended for use as labels, e. g., ‘Address: *<url>*’ or ‘Abstract: *<abstract>*’.

|                         |                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>url</code>        | The term ‘address’ in the sense of an internet address.                                                                                                                            |
| <code>urlfrom</code>    | An expression like ‘available from <i>&lt;url&gt;</i> ’ or ‘available at <i>&lt;url&gt;</i> ’.                                                                                     |
| <code>urlseen</code>    | An expression like ‘accessed on <i>&lt;date&gt;</i> ’, ‘retrieved on <i>&lt;date&gt;</i> ’, ‘visited on <i>&lt;date&gt;</i> ’, referring to the access date of an online resource. |
| <code>file</code>       | The term ‘file’.                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <code>library</code>    | The term ‘library’.                                                                                                                                                                |
| <code>abstract</code>   | The term ‘abstract’.                                                                                                                                                               |
| <code>annotation</code> | The term ‘annotations’.                                                                                                                                                            |

#### 4.9.2.16 Citations

Traditional scholarly expressions used in citations:

|                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>idem</code>      | The term equivalent to the Latin ‘idem’ (‘the same [person]’).                                                                                                                                               |
| <code>idemsf</code>    | The feminine singular form of <code>idem</code> .                                                                                                                                                            |
| <code>idemsn</code>    | The masculine singular form of <code>idem</code> .                                                                                                                                                           |
| <code>idempf</code>    | The neuter singular form of <code>idem</code> .                                                                                                                                                              |
| <code>idempm</code>    | The feminine plural form of <code>idem</code> .                                                                                                                                                              |
| <code>idempn</code>    | The masculine plural form of <code>idem</code> .                                                                                                                                                             |
| <code>idempp</code>    | The neuter plural form of <code>idem</code> .                                                                                                                                                                |
| <code>ibidem</code>    | The plural form of <code>idem</code> suitable for a mixed gender list of names.                                                                                                                              |
| <code>opcit</code>     | The term equivalent to the Latin ‘ibidem’ (‘in the same place’).                                                                                                                                             |
| <code>loccit</code>    | The term equivalent to the Latin term ‘opere citato’ (‘[in] the work [already] cited’).                                                                                                                      |
| <code>confer</code>    | The term equivalent to the Latin term ‘loco citato’ (‘[at] the place [already] cited’).                                                                                                                      |
| <code>sequens</code>   | The term equivalent to the Latin ‘confer’ (‘compare’).                                                                                                                                                       |
| <code>sequentes</code> | The term equivalent to the Latin ‘sequens’ (‘[and] the following [page]’), as used to indicate a range of two pages when only the starting page is provided (e. g., ‘25 sq.’ or ‘25 f.’ instead of ‘25–26’). |
| <code>passim</code>    | The term equivalent to the Latin ‘sequentes’ (‘[and] the following [pages]’), as used to indicate an open-ended range of pages when only the starting page is provided (e. g., ‘25 sqq.’ or ‘25 ff.’).       |
|                        | The term equivalent to the Latin ‘passim’ (‘throughout’, ‘here and there’, ‘scatteredly’).                                                                                                                   |

Other expressions frequently used in citations:

|                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>see</code>          | The term ‘see’.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <code>seealso</code>      | The expression ‘see also’.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <code>seernote</code>     | An expression like ‘see note <i>&lt;footnote&gt;</i> ’ or ‘as in <i>&lt;footnote&gt;</i> ’, used to refer to a previous footnote in a citation.                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <code>backrefpage</code>  | An expression like ‘see page <i>&lt;page&gt;</i> ’ or ‘cited on page <i>&lt;page&gt;</i> ’, used to introduce back references in the bibliography.                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <code>backrefpages</code> | The plural form of <code>backrefpage</code> , e. g., ‘see pages <i>&lt;pages&gt;</i> ’ or ‘cited on pages <i>&lt;pages&gt;</i> ’.                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <code>quotedin</code>     | An expression like ‘quoted in <i>&lt;citation&gt;</i> ’, used when quoting a passage which was already a quotation in the cited work.                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <code>citedas</code>      | An expression like ‘henceforth cited as <i>&lt;shorthand&gt;</i> ’, used to introduce a shorthand in a citation.                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <code>thiscite</code>     | The expression used in some verbose citation styles to differentiate between the page range of the cited item (typically an article in a journal, collection, or conference proceedings) and the page number the citation refers to. For example: “Author, Title, in: Book, pp. 45–61, <code>thiscite</code> p. 52.” |

#### 4.9.2.17 Month Names

|                        |                       |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| <code>january</code>   | The name ‘January’.   |
| <code>february</code>  | The name ‘February’.  |
| <code>march</code>     | The name ‘March’.     |
| <code>april</code>     | The name ‘April’.     |
| <code>may</code>       | The name ‘May’.       |
| <code>june</code>      | The name ‘June’.      |
| <code>july</code>      | The name ‘July’.      |
| <code>august</code>    | The name ‘August’.    |
| <code>september</code> | The name ‘September’. |
| <code>october</code>   | The name ‘October’.   |
| <code>november</code>  | The name ‘November’.  |
| <code>december</code>  | The name ‘December’.  |

#### 4.9.2.18 Language Names

|                                                                                                                     |                                                                             |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>langamerican</code>                                                                                           | The language ‘American’ or ‘American English’.                              |
| <code>langbrazilian</code>                                                                                          | The language ‘Brazilian’ or ‘Brazilian Portuguese’.                         |
| <code>langcatalan</code>                                                                                            | The language ‘Catalan’.                                                     |
| <code>langcroatian</code>                                                                                           | The language ‘Croatian’.                                                    |
| <code>langczech</code>                                                                                              | The language ‘Czech’.                                                       |
| <code>langdanish</code>                                                                                             | The language ‘Danish’.                                                      |
| <code>langdutch</code>                                                                                              | The language ‘Dutch’.                                                       |
| <code>langenglish</code>                                                                                            | The language ‘English’.                                                     |
| <code>langestonian</code>                                                                                           | The language ‘Estonian’.                                                    |
| <code>langfinnish</code>                                                                                            | The language ‘Finnish’.                                                     |
| <code>langfrench</code>                                                                                             | The language ‘French’.                                                      |
| <code>langgerman</code>                                                                                             | The language ‘German’.                                                      |
| <code>langgreek</code>                                                                                              | The language ‘Greek’.                                                       |
| <code>langitalian</code>                                                                                            | The language ‘Italian’.                                                     |
| <code>langjapanese</code>                                                                                           | The language ‘Japanese’.                                                    |
| <code>langlatin</code>                                                                                              | The language ‘Latin’.                                                       |
| <code>langnorwegian</code>                                                                                          | The language ‘Norwegian’.                                                   |
| <code>langpolish</code>                                                                                             | The language ‘Polish’.                                                      |
| <code>langportuguese</code>                                                                                         | The language ‘Portuguese’.                                                  |
| <code>langrussian</code>                                                                                            | The language ‘Russian’.                                                     |
| <code>langslovak</code>                                                                                             | The language ‘Slovak’.                                                      |
| <code>langslovene</code>                                                                                            | The language ‘Slovene’.                                                     |
| <code>langspanish</code>                                                                                            | The language ‘Spanish’.                                                     |
| <code>langswedish</code>                                                                                            | The language ‘Swedish’.                                                     |
| The following strings are intended for use in phrases like ‘translated from [the] English by <i>(translator)</i> ’: |                                                                             |
| <code>fromamerican</code>                                                                                           | The expression ‘from [the] American’ or ‘from [the] American English’.      |
| <code>frombrazilian</code>                                                                                          | The expression ‘from [the] Brazilian’ or ‘from [the] Brazilian Portuguese’. |
| <code>fromcatalan</code>                                                                                            | The expression ‘from [the] Catalan’.                                        |
| <code>fromcroatian</code>                                                                                           | The expression ‘from [the] Croatian’.                                       |
| <code>fromczech</code>                                                                                              | The expression ‘from [the] Czech’.                                          |
| <code>fromdanish</code>                                                                                             | The expression ‘from [the] Danish’.                                         |
| <code>fromdutch</code>                                                                                              | The expression ‘from [the] Dutch’.                                          |
| <code>fromenglish</code>                                                                                            | The expression ‘from [the] English’.                                        |
| <code>fromestonian</code>                                                                                           | The expression ‘from [the] Estonian’.                                       |
| <code>fromfinnish</code>                                                                                            | The expression ‘from [the] Finnish’.                                        |
| <code>fromfrench</code>                                                                                             | The expression ‘from [the] French’.                                         |
| <code>fromgerman</code>                                                                                             | The expression ‘from [the] German’.                                         |
| <code>fromgreek</code>                                                                                              | The expression ‘from [the] Greek’.                                          |
| <code>fromitalian</code>                                                                                            | The expression ‘from [the] Italian’.                                        |
| <code>fromjapanese</code>                                                                                           | The expression ‘from [the] Japanese’.                                       |
| <code>fromlatin</code>                                                                                              | The expression ‘from [the] Latin’.                                          |
| <code>fromnorwegian</code>                                                                                          | The expression ‘from [the] Norwegian’.                                      |
| <code>frompolish</code>                                                                                             | The expression ‘from [the] Polish’.                                         |
| <code>fromportuguese</code>                                                                                         | The expression ‘from [the] Portuguese’.                                     |
| <code>fromrussian</code>                                                                                            | The expression ‘from [the] Russian’.                                        |
| <code>fromslovak</code>                                                                                             | The expression ‘from [the] Slovak’.                                         |
| <code>fromslovene</code>                                                                                            | The expression ‘from [the] Slovene’.                                        |
| <code>fromspanish</code>                                                                                            | The expression ‘from [the] Spanish’.                                        |
| <code>fromswedish</code>                                                                                            | The expression ‘from [the] Swedish’.                                        |

**4.9.2.19 Country Names** Country names are localised by using the string `country` plus the ISO-3166 country code as the key. The short version of the translation should be the ISO-3166 country code. Note that only a small number of country names is defined by default, mainly to illustrate this scheme. These keys are used in the `location` list of `@patent` entries but they may be useful for other purposes as well.

|                        |                                                                                               |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>countryde</code> | The name ‘Germany’, abbreviated as DE.                                                        |
| <code>countryeu</code> | The name ‘European Union’, abbreviated as EU.                                                 |
| <code>countryep</code> | Similar to <code>countryeu</code> but abbreviated as EP. This is intended for patent entries. |
| <code>countryfr</code> | The name ‘France’, abbreviated as FR.                                                         |
| <code>countryuk</code> | The name ‘United Kingdom’, abbreviated (according to ISO-3166) as GB.                         |
| <code>countryus</code> | The name ‘United States of America’, abbreviated as US.                                       |

**4.9.2.20 Patents and Patent Requests** Strings related to patents are localised by using the term `patent` plus the ISO-3166 country code as the key. Note that only a small number of patent keys is defined by default, mainly to illustrate this scheme. These keys are used in the `type` field of `@patent` entries.

|                       |                                   |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <code>patent</code>   | The generic term ‘patent’.        |
| <code>patentde</code> | The expression ‘German patent’.   |
| <code>patenteu</code> | The expression ‘European patent’. |
| <code>patentfr</code> | The expression ‘French patent’.   |
| <code>patentuk</code> | The expression ‘British patent’.  |
| <code>patentus</code> | The expression ‘U.S. patent’.     |

Patent requests are handled in a similar way, using the string `patreq` as the base name of the key:

|                       |                                           |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <code>patreq</code>   | The generic term ‘patent request’.        |
| <code>patreqde</code> | The expression ‘German patent request’.   |
| <code>patreqeu</code> | The expression ‘European patent request’. |
| <code>patreqfr</code> | The expression ‘French patent request’.   |
| <code>patrequk</code> | The expression ‘British patent request’.  |
| <code>patrequs</code> | The expression ‘U.S. patent request’.     |

**4.9.2.21 Dates and Times** Abbreviation strings for standard eras. Both secular and Christian variants are supported.

|                              |               |
|------------------------------|---------------|
| <code>commonera</code>       | The era ‘CE’  |
| <code>beforecommonera</code> | The era ‘BCE’ |
| <code>annodomini</code>      | The era ‘AD’  |
| <code>beforechrist</code>    | The era ‘BC’  |

Abbreviation strings for ‘circa’ dates:

|                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| <code>circa</code> | The string ‘circa’ |
|--------------------|--------------------|

Abbreviation strings for seasons parsed from EDTF dates:

|                     |                     |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| <code>spring</code> | The string ‘spring’ |
| <code>summer</code> | The string ‘summer’ |
| <code>autumn</code> | The string ‘autumn’ |
| <code>winter</code> | The string ‘winter’ |

Abbreviation strings for AM/PM:

|                 |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| <code>am</code> | The string ‘AM’ |
| <code>pm</code> | The string ‘PM’ |

## 4.10 Formatting Commands

This section corresponds to § 3.9 in the user part of this manual. Bibliography and citation styles should incorporate the commands and facilities discussed in this section in order to provide a certain degree of high-level configurability. Users should not be forced to write new styles if all they want to do is modify the spacing in the bibliography or the punctuation used in citations.

### 4.10.1 User-definable Commands and Hooks

This section corresponds to § 3.9.1 in the user part of the manual. The commands and hooks discussed here are meant to be redefined by users, but bibliography and citation styles may provide a default definition which is different from the package default. These commands are defined in `biblatex.def`. Note that all commands starting with `\mk...` take one mandatory argument.

|                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>\bibnamedelima</code>            | This delimiter controls the spacing between the elements which make up a name part. It is inserted automatically by the backend after the first name element if the element is less than three characters long and before the last element. The default definition is <code>\addhighenspace</code> , i.e., a space penalized by the value of the <code>highnamepenalty</code> counter (§ 3.9.3). Please refer to § 3.12.4 for further details.          |
| <code>\bibnamedelimb</code>            | This delimiter controls the spacing between the elements which make up a name part. It is inserted automatically by the backend between all name elements where <code>\bibnamedelima</code> does not apply. The default definition is <code>\addlowenspace</code> , i.e., a space penalized by the value of the <code>lownamepenalty</code> counter (§ 3.9.3). Please refer to § 3.12.4 for further details.                                            |
| <code>\bibnamedelimc</code>            | This delimiter controls the spacing between name parts. The default name formats use it between the name prefix and the last name if <code>useprefix=true</code> . The default definition is <code>\addhighenspace</code> , i.e., a space penalized by the value of the <code>highnamepenalty</code> counter (§ 3.9.3). Please refer to § 3.12.4 for further details.                                                                                   |
| <code>\bibnamedelimd</code>            | This delimiter controls the spacing between name parts. The default name formats use it between all name parts where <code>\bibnamedelimc</code> does not apply. The default definition is <code>\addlowenspace</code> , i.e., a space penalized by the value of the <code>lownamepenalty</code> counter (§ 3.9.3). Please refer to § 3.12.4 for further details.                                                                                       |
| <code>\bibnamedelimi</code>            | This delimiter replaces <code>\bibnamedelima/b</code> after initials. Note that this only applies to initials given as such in the <code>bib</code> file, not to the initials automatically generated by Biblatex which use their own set of delimiters.                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <code>\bibinitperiod</code>            | The punctuation inserted automatically by the backend after all initials unless <code>\bibinitthyphendelim</code> applies. The default definition is a period ( <code>\adddot</code> ). Please refer to § 3.12.4 for further details.                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <code>\bibinitdelim</code>             | The spacing inserted automatically by the backend between multiple initials unless <code>\bibinitthyphendelim</code> applies. The default definition is an unbreakable interword space. Please refer to § 3.12.4 for further details.                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <code>\bibinitthyphendelim</code>      | The punctuation inserted automatically by the backend between the initials of hyphenated name parts, replacing <code>\bibinitperiod</code> and <code>\bibinitdelim</code> . The default definition is a period followed by an unbreakable hyphen. Please refer to § 3.12.4 for further details.                                                                                                                                                         |
| <code>\bibindexnamedelima</code>       | Replaces <code>\bibnamedelima</code> in the index.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <code>\bibindexnamedelimb</code>       | Replaces <code>\bibnamedelimb</code> in the index.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <code>\bibindexnamedelimc</code>       | Replaces <code>\bibnamedelimc</code> in the index.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <code>\bibindexnamedelimd</code>       | Replaces <code>\bibnamedelimd</code> in the index.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <code>\bibindexnamedelimi</code>       | Replaces <code>\bibnamedelimi</code> in the index.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <code>\bibindexinitperiod</code>       | Replaces <code>\bibinitperiod</code> in the index.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <code>\bibindexinitdelim</code>        | Replaces <code>\bibinitdelim</code> in the index.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <code>\bibindexinitthyphendelim</code> | Replaces <code>\bibinitthyphendelim</code> in the index.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <code>\revsnamepunct</code>            | The punctuation to be printed between the first and last name parts when a name is reversed. The default is a comma. This command should be incorporated in formatting directives for name lists. Please refer to § 3.12.4 for further details.                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <code>\bibnamedash</code>              | The dash to be used as a replacement for recurrent authors or editors in the bibliography. The default is an ‘em’ or an ‘en’ dash, depending on the indentation of the list of references.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <code>\labelnamepunct</code>           | The separator to be printed after the name used for alphabetizing in the bibliography (author or editor, if the author field is undefined). Use this separator instead of <code>\newunitpunct</code> at this location. The default is <code>\newunitpunct</code> , i.e., it is not handled differently from regular unit punctuation but permits convenient reconfiguration.                                                                            |
| <code>\subtitlepunct</code>            | The separator to be printed between the fields <code>title</code> and <code>subtitle</code> , <code>booktitle</code> and <code>booksubtitle</code> , as well as <code>maintitle</code> and <code>mainsubtitle</code> . Use this separator instead of <code>\newunitpunct</code> at this location. The default is <code>\newunitpunct</code> , i.e., it is not handled differently from regular unit punctuation but permits convenient reconfiguration. |
| <code>\intitlepunct</code>             | The separator to be printed between the word “in” and the following title in entry types such as <code>@article</code> , <code>@inbook</code> , <code>@incollection</code> , etc. Use this separator instead of <code>\newunitpunct</code> at this location. The default definition is a colon plus an interword space.                                                                                                                                 |
| <code>\bibpagespunct</code>            | The separator to be printed before the <code>pages</code> field. Use this separator instead of <code>\newunitpunct</code> at this location. The default is a comma plus an interword space.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <code>\bibpagerefspunct</code>         | The separator to be printed before the <code>pageref</code> field. Use this separator instead of <code>\newunitpunct</code> at this location. The default is an interword space.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |



|                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>\multinamedelim</code>                  | The delimiter to be printed between multiple items in a name list like author or editor if there are more than two names in the list. If there are only two names in the list, use the <code>\finalnamedelim</code> instead. This command should be incorporated in all formatting directives for name lists.            |
| <code>\finalnamedelim</code>                  | Use this command instead of <code>\multinamedelim</code> before the final name in a name list.                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <code>\revsdsnamedelim</code>                 | The extra delimiter to be printed after the first name in a name list consisting of two names (in addition to <code>\finalnamedelim</code> ) if the first name is reversed. This command should be incorporated in all formatting directives for name lists.                                                             |
| <code>\andothersdelim</code>                  | The delimiter to be printed before the localisation string ‘andothers’ if a name list like author or editor is truncated. This command should be incorporated in all formatting directives for name lists.                                                                                                               |
| <code>\multilistdelim</code>                  | The delimiter to be printed between multiple items in a literal list like publisher or location if there are more than two names in the list. If there are only two items in the list, use the <code>\finallistdelim</code> instead. This command should be incorporated in all formatting directives for literal lists. |
| <code>\finallistdelim</code>                  | Use this command instead of <code>\multilistdelim</code> before the final item in a literal list.                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <code>\andmoredelim</code>                    | The delimiter to be printed before the localisation string ‘andmore’ if a literal list like publisher or location is truncated. This command should be incorporated in all formatting directives for literal lists.                                                                                                      |
| <code>\multicitedelim</code>                  | The delimiter printed between citations if multiple entry keys are passed to a single citation command. This command should be incorporated in the definition of all citation commands, for example in the <code>(sepcode)</code> argument passed to <code>\DeclareCiteCommand</code> . See § 4.3.1 for details.         |
| <code>\supercitedelim</code>                  | Similar to <code>\multinamedelim</code> , but intended for the <code>\supercite</code> command only.                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <code>\comp citedelim</code>                  | Similar to <code>\multicitedelim</code> , but intended for citation styles that ‘compress’ multiple citations, i. e., print the author only once if subsequent citations share the same author etc.                                                                                                                      |
| <code>\textcitedelim</code>                   | Similar to <code>\multicitedelim</code> , but intended for <code>\textcite</code> and related commands (§ 3.7.2).                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <code>\nametitledelim</code>                  | The delimiter to be printed between the author/editor and the title. This command should be incorporated in the definition of all citation commands of author-title and some verbose citation styles.                                                                                                                    |
| <code>\nameyear delim</code>                  | The delimiter to be printed between the author/editor and the year. This command should be incorporated in the definition of all citation commands of author-year citation styles.                                                                                                                                       |
| <code>\namelabeldelim</code>                  | The delimiter printed between the name/title and the label. This command should be incorporated in the definition of all citation commands of alphabetic and numeric citation styles.                                                                                                                                    |
| <code>\nonameyear delim</code>                | The delimiter printed between the substitute for the labelname when it does not exist (usually the label or title in standard styles) and the year in author-year citation styles. This is only used when there is no labelname since when the labelname exists, <code>\nameyear delim</code> is used.                   |
| <code>\volcitedelim</code>                    | The delimiter to be printed between the volume portion and the page/text portion of <code>\volcite</code> and related commands (§ 3.7.6).                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <code>\prenotedelim</code>                    | The delimiter to be printed after the <code>(prenote)</code> argument of a citation command.                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <code>\postnotedelim</code>                   | The delimiter to be printed after the <code>(postnote)</code> argument of a citation command.                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <code>\extpostnotedelim</code>                | The delimiter printed between the citation and the parenthetical <code>(postnote)</code> argument of a citation command when the postnote occurs outside of the citation parentheses. In the standard styles, this occurs when the citation uses the shorthand field of the entry.                                       |
| <code>\mkbibnamefamily{&lt;text&gt;}</code>   | Formatting hook for the family name, to be used in all formatting directives for name lists.                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <code>\mkbibnamegiven{&lt;text&gt;}</code>    | Similar to <code>\mkbibnamefamily</code> , but intended for the given name.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <code>\mkbibnameprefix{&lt;text&gt;}</code>   | Similar to <code>\mkbibnamefamily</code> , but intended for the name prefix.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <code>\mkbibnamesuffix{&lt;text&gt;}</code>   | Similar to <code>\mkbibnamefamily</code> , but intended for the name suffix.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <code>\relatedpunct</code>                    | The separator between the relatedtype bibliography localisation string and the data from the first related entry.                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <code>\relateddelim</code>                    | The separator between the data of multiple related entries. The default definition is a linebreak.                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <code>\relateddelim&lt;relatedtype&gt;</code> | The separator between the data of multiple related entries inside related entries of type ‘relatedtype’. There is no default, if such a type-specific delimiter does not exist, <code>\relateddelim</code> is used.                                                                                                      |

### 4.10.2 Language-specific Commands

This section corresponds to § 3.9.2 in the user part of the manual. The commands discussed here are usually handled by the localisation modules, but may also be redefined by users on a per-language basis. Note that all commands starting with `\mk...` take one or more mandatory arguments.

`\bibrangedash` The language specific range dash. Defaults to `\textendash`.

|                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>\bibrangesep</code>                      | The language specific separator to be used between multiple ranges. Defaults to a comma followed by a space.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <code>\bibdatesep</code>                       | The language specific separator used between date components in terse date formats. Defaults to <code>\hyphen</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <code>\bibdaterangesep</code>                  | The language specific separator to be used for date ranges. Defaults to <code>\textendash</code> for all date formats apart from <code>ymd</code> which defaults to a <code>\slash</code> . The date format option <code>edtf</code> is hard-coded to <code>\slash</code> since this is a standards compliant format.                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <code>\mkbibdatelong</code>                    | Takes the names of three field as arguments which correspond to three date components (in the order year/month/day) and uses their values to print the date in the language specific long date format.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <code>\mkbibdateshort</code>                   | Similar to <code>\mkbibdatelong</code> but using the language specific short date format.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <code>\mkbibtimezone</code>                    | Modifies a timezone string passed in as the only argument. By default this changes ‘Z’ to the value of <code>\bibtimezone</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <code>\bibdateuncertain</code>                 | The language specific marker to be used after uncertain dates when the global option <code>dateuncertain</code> is enabled. Defaults to a space followed by a question mark.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <code>\bibdateeraprefix</code>                 | The language specific marker which is printed as a prefix to beginning BCE/BC dates in a date range when the option <code>dateera</code> is set to ‘astronomical’. Defaults to <code>\textminus</code> , if defined and <code>\textendash</code> otherwise.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <code>\bibdateeraendprefix</code>              | The language specific marker which is printed as a prefix to end BCE/BC dates in a date range when the option <code>dateera</code> is set to ‘astronomical’. Defaults to a thin space followed by <code>\bibdateeraprefix</code> when <code>\bibdaterangesep</code> is set to a dash and to <code>\bibdateeraprefix</code> otherwise. This is a separate macro so that you may add extra space before a negative date marker which, for example follows a dash date range marker as this can look a little odd. |
| <code>\bibtimesep</code>                       | The language specific marker which separates time components. Default to a colon.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <code>\bibutctimezone</code>                   | The language specific string printed for the UTC timezone. Defaults to ‘Z’.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <code>\bibtimezonesep</code>                   | The language specific marker which separates an optional time zone component from a time. Empty by default.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <code>\bibdatetimesep</code>                   | The language specific separator printed between date and time components when printing time components along with date components (see the <code>&lt;datatype&gt;dateusetime</code> option in § 3.1.2.1). Defaults to a space for non-EDTF output formats, and ‘T’ for EDTF output format.                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <code>\finalandcomma</code>                    | Prints the comma to be inserted before the final ‘and’ in an enumeration, if applicable in the respective language.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <code>\finalandsemicolon</code>                | Prints the semicolon to be inserted before the final ‘and’ in an enumeration, if applicable in the respective language.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <code>\mkbibordinal{&lt;integer&gt;}</code>    | Takes an integer argument and prints it as an ordinal number.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <code>\mkbibmascord{&lt;integer&gt;}</code>    | Similar to <code>\mkbibordinal</code> , but prints a masculine ordinal, if applicable in the respective language.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <code>\mkbibfemord{&lt;integer&gt;}</code>     | Similar to <code>\mkbibordinal</code> , but prints a feminine ordinal, if applicable in the respective language.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <code>\mkbibneutord{&lt;integer&gt;}</code>    | Similar to <code>\mkbibordinal</code> , but prints a neuter ordinal, if applicable in the respective language.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <code>\mkbibordedition{&lt;integer&gt;}</code> | Similar to <code>\mkbibordinal</code> , but intended for use with the term ‘edition’.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <code>\mkbibordseries{&lt;integer&gt;}</code>  | Similar to <code>\mkbibordinal</code> , but intended for use with the term ‘series’.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

### 4.10.3 用户可定义的尺寸和计数器 User-definable Lengths and Counters

This section corresponds to § 3.9.3 in the user part of the manual. The length registers and counters discussed here are meant to be altered by users. Bibliography and citation styles should incorporate them where applicable and may also provide a default setting which is different from the package default.

|                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>\bibhang</code>     | The hanging indentation of the bibliography, if applicable. This length is initialized to <code>\parindent</code> at load-time. If <code>\parindent</code> is zero length for some reason, <code>\bibhang</code> will default to <code>1em</code> .                 |
| <code>\biblabelsep</code> | The horizontal space between entries and their corresponding labels. Bibliography styles which use <code>list</code> environments and print a label should set <code>\labelsep</code> to <code>\biblabelsep</code> in the definition of the respective environment. |
| <code>\bibitemsep</code>  | The vertical space between the individual entries in the bibliography. Bibliography styles using <code>list</code> environments should set <code>\itemsep</code> to <code>\bibitemsep</code> in the definition of the respective environment.                       |
| <code>\bibparsep</code>   | The vertical space between paragraphs within an entry in the bibliography. Bibliography styles using <code>list</code> environments should set <code>\parsep</code> to <code>\bibparsep</code> in the definition of the respective environment.                     |

|                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>abbrvpenalty</code>     | The penalty used by <code>\addabbrvspace</code> , <code>\addabthinspace</code> , and <code>\adddotsspace</code> , see § 4.7.4 for details.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <code>lownamepenalty</code>   | The penalty used by <code>\addlowpenspace</code> and <code>\addlpthinspace</code> , see § 4.7.4 for details.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <code>highnamepenalty</code>  | The penalty used by <code>\addhighpenspace</code> and <code>\addhpthinspace</code> , see § 4.7.4 for details.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <code>biburlnumpenalty</code> | If this counter is set to a value greater than zero, Biblatex will permit linebreaks after numbers in all strings formatted with the <code>\url</code> command from the <code>url</code> package. This will affect URLs and DOIs in the bibliography. The breakpoints will be penalized by the value of this counter. If URLs and/or DOIs in the bibliography run into the margin, try setting this counter to a value greater than zero but less than 10000 (you normally want to use a high value like 9000). Setting the counter to zero disables this feature. This is the default setting. |
| <code>biburlucpenalty</code>  | Similar to <code>biburlnumpenalty</code> , except that it will add a breakpoint after all uppercase letters.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <code>biburlllcpenalty</code> | Similar to <code>biburlnumpenalty</code> , except that it will add a breakpoint after all lowercase letters.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |

#### 4.10.4 辅助命令和钩子 Auxiliary Commands and Hooks

The auxiliary commands and facilities in this section serve a special purpose. Some of them are used by Biblatex to communicate with bibliography and citation styles in some way or other.

`\mkbibemph{⟨text⟩}`

A generic command which prints its argument as emphasized text. This is a simple wrapper around the standard `\emph` command. Apart from that, it uses `\setpunctfont` from § 4.7.1 to adapt the font of the next punctuation mark following the text set in italics. If the `punctfont` package option is disabled, this command behaves like `\emph`.

`\mkbibitalic{⟨text⟩}`

Similar in concept to `\mkbibemph` but prints italicized text. This is a simple wrapper around the standard `\textit` command which incorporates `\setpunctfont`. If the `punctfont` package option is disabled, this command behaves like `\textit`.

`\mkbibbold{⟨text⟩}`

Similar in concept to `\mkbibemph` but prints bold text. This is a simple wrapper around the standard `\textbf` command which incorporates `\setpunctfont`. If the `punctfont` package option is disabled, this command behaves like `\textbf`.

`\mkbibquote{⟨text⟩}`

A generic command which wraps its argument in quotation marks. If the `csquotes` package is loaded, this command uses the language sensitive quotation marks provided by that package. `\mkbibquote` also supports ‘American-style’ punctuation, see `\DeclareQuotePunctuation` in § 4.7.5 for details.

`\mkbibparens{⟨text⟩}`

A generic command which wraps its argument in parentheses. This command is nestable. When nested, it will alternate between parentheses and brackets, depending on the nesting level.

`\mkbibbrackets{⟨text⟩}`

A generic command which wraps its argument in square brackets. This command is nestable. When nested, it will alternate between brackets and parentheses, depending on the nesting level.

`\bibopenparen⟨text⟩\bibcloseparen`

Alternative syntax for `\mkbibparens`. This will also work across groups. Note that `\bibopenparen` and `\bibcloseparen` must always be balanced.

`\bibopenbracket⟨text⟩\bibclosebracket`

Alternative syntax for `\mkbibbrackets`. This will also work across groups. Note that `\bibopenbracket` and `\bibclosebracket` must always be balanced.

`\mkbibfootnote{⟨text⟩}`

A generic command which prints its argument as a footnote. This is a wrapper around the standard LaTeX `\footnote` command which removes spurious whitespace preceding the footnote mark and prevents nested footnotes. By default, `\mkbibfootnote` requests capitalization at the beginning of the note and automatically adds a period at the end. You may change this behavior by redefining the `\bibfootnotewrapper` macro introduced below.

`\mkbibfootnotetext{⟨text⟩}`

Similar to `\mkbibfootnote` but uses the `\footnotetext` command.

`\mkbibendnote{<text>}`

Similar in concept to `\mkbibfootnote` except that it prints its argument as an endnote. `\mkbibendnote` removes spurious whitespace preceding the endnote mark and prevents nested notes. It supports the `\endnote` command provided by the `endnotes` package as well as the `\pagenote` command provided by the `pagenote` package and the `memoir` class. If both commands are available, `\endnote` takes precedence. If no endnote support is available, `\mkbibendnote` issues an error and falls back to `\footnote`. By default, `\mkbibendnote` requests capitalization at the beginning of the note and automatically adds a period at the end. You may change this behavior by redefining the `\bibendnotewrapper` macro introduced below.

`\mkbibendnotetext{<text>}`

Similar to `\mkbibendnote` but uses the `\endnotetext` command. Please note that as of this writing, neither the `pagenote` package nor the `memoir` class provide a corresponding `\pagenotetext` command. In this case, `\mkbibendnote` will issue an error and fall back to `\footnotetext`.

`\bibfootnotewrapper{<text>}`

An inner wrapper which encloses the `<text>` argument of `\mkbibfootnote` and `\mkbibfootnotetext`. For example, `\mkbibfootnote` eventually boils down to this:

```
\footnote{\bibfootnotewrapper{text}}
```

The wrapper ensures capitalization at the beginning of the note and adds a period at the end. The default definition is:

```
\newcommand{\bibfootnotewrapper}[1]{\bibsentence #1\addperiod}
```

If you don't want capitalization at the beginning or a period at the end of the note, do not modify `\mkbibfootnote` but redefine `\bibfootnotewrapper` instead.

`\bibendnotewrapper{<text>}`

Similar in concept to `\bibfootnotewrapper` but related to the `\mkbibendnote` and `\mkbibendnotetext` commands.

`\mkbibsuperscript{<text>}`

A generic command which prints its argument as superscripted text. This is a simple wrapper around the standard LaTeX `\textsuperscript` command which removes spurious whitespace and allows hyphenation of the preceding word.

`\mkbibmonth{<integer>}`

This command takes an integer argument and prints it as a month name. Even though the output of this command is language specific, its definition is not, hence it is normally not redefined in localisation modules.

`\mkbibseason{<string>}`

This command takes a season localisation string and prints the version of the string corresponding to the setting of the `dateabbrev` package option. Even though the output of this command is language specific, its definition is not, hence it is normally not redefined in localisation modules.

`\mkyearzeros{<integer>}`

This command strips leading zeros from a year or enforces them, depending on the `datezeros` package option (§ 3.1.2.1). It is intended for use in the definition of date formatting macros.

`\mkmonthzeros{<integer>}`

This command strips leading zeros from a month or enforces them, depending on the `datezeros` package option (§ 3.1.2.1). It is intended for use in the definition of date formatting macros.

`\mkdayzeros{<integer>}`

This command strips leading zeros from a day or enforces them, depending on the `datezeros` package option (§ 3.1.2.1). It is intended for use in the definition of date formatting macros.

`\mktimezeros{<integer>}`

This command strips leading zeros from a number or preserves them, depending on the `timezeros` package option (§ 3.1.2.1). It is intended for use in the definition of time formatting macros.

`\forcezerosy{<integer>}`

This command adds zeros to a year (or any number supposed to be 4-digits). It is intended for date formatting and ordinals.

`\forcezerosmdt{<integer>}`

This command adds zeros to a month, day or time part (or any number supposed to be 2-digits). It is intended for date/time formatting and ordinals.

`\stripzeros{<integer>}`

This command strips leading zeros from a number. It is intended for date formatting and ordinals.

`<labelfield>width` For every field marked as a ‘Label field’ in the data model, a formatting directive is created as per `shorthandwidth` above. Since shorthand is so marked in the default data model, this functionality is a superset of that described for `shorthandwidth`.

`labelnumberwidth` Similar to `shorthandwidth`, but referring to the `labelnumber` field and the length register `\labelnumberwidth`. Numeric styles should adjust this directive such that it corresponds to the format used in the bibliography.

`labelalphawidth` Similar to `shorthandwidth`, but referring to the `labelalpha` field and the length register `\labelalphawidth`. Alphabetic styles should adjust this directive such that it corresponds to the format used in the bibliography.

`bibhyperref` A special formatting directive for use with `\printfield` and `\printtext`. This directive wraps its argument in a `\bibhyperref` command, see § 4.6.4 for details.

`bibhyperlink` A special formatting directive for use with `\printfield` and `\printtext`. It wraps its argument in a `\bibhyperlink` command, see § 4.6.4 for details. The `<name>` argument passed to `\bibhyperlink` is the value of the `entrykey` field.

`bibhypertarget` A special formatting directive for use with `\printfield` and `\printtext`. It wraps its argument in a `\bibhypertarget` command, see § 4.6.4 for details. The `<name>` argument passed to `\bibhypertarget` is the value of the `entrykey` field.

`volcitepages` A special formatting directive which controls the format of the page/text portion in the argument of citation commands like `\volcite`.

`volcitevolume` A special formatting directive which controls the format of the volume portion in the argument of citation commands like `\volcite`.

`date` A special formatting directive which controls the format of `\printdate` (§ 4.4.1). Note that the date format (long/short etc.) is controlled by the package option `date` from § 3.1.2.1. This formatting directive only controls additional formatting such as fonts etc.

`labeldate` As `date` but controls the format of `\printlabeldate`.

`<datatype>date` As `date` but controls the format of `\print<datatype>date`.

`time` A special formatting directive which controls the format of `\printtime` (§ 4.4.1). Note that the time format (24h/12h etc.) is controlled by the package option `time` from § 3.1.2.1. This formatting directive only controls additional formatting such as fonts etc.

`labeltime` As `time` but controls the format of `\printlabeltime`.

`<datatype>time` As `time` but controls the format of `\print<datatype>time`.

#### 4.10.5 辅助长度计数器和其它功能 Auxiliary Lengths, Counters, and Other Features

The length registers and counters discussed here are used by Biblatex to pass information to bibliography and citation styles. Think of them as read-only registers. Note that all counters are LaTeX counters. Use `\value{counter}` to read out the current value.

`<labelfield>width` For every field marked as a ‘label’ field in the data model, a length register is created as per `shorthandwidth` above. Since shorthand is so marked in the default data model, this functionality is a superset of that described for `shorthandwidth`.

`\labelnumberwidth` This length register indicates the width of the widest `labelnumber`. Numeric bibliography styles should incorporate this length in the definition of the bibliography environment.

`\labelalphawidth` This length register indicates the width of the widest `labelalpha`. Alphabetic bibliography styles should incorporate this length in the definition of the bibliography environment.

`maxextraalpha` This counter holds the highest number found in any `extraalpha` field.

`maxextrayear` This counter holds the highest number found in any `extrayear` field.

`refsection` This counter indicates the current `refsection` environment. When queried in a bibliography heading, the counter returns the value of the `refsection` option passed to `\printbibliography`.

`refsegment` This counter indicates the current `refsegment` environment. When queried in a bibliography heading, this counter returns the value of the `refsegment` option passed to `\printbibliography`.

|                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>maxnames</code>       | This counter holds the setting of the <code>maxnames</code> package option.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <code>minnames</code>       | This counter holds the setting of the <code>minnames</code> package option.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <code>maxitems</code>       | This counter holds the setting of the <code>maxitems</code> package option.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <code>minitems</code>       | This counter holds the setting of the <code>minitems</code> package option.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <code>instcount</code>      | This counter is incremented by Biblatex for every citation as well as for every entry in the bibliography and bibliography lists. The value of this counter uniquely identifies a single instance of a reference in the document.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <code>citetotal</code>      | This counter, which is only available in the $\langle loopcode \rangle$ of a citation command defined with <code>\DeclareCiteCommand</code> , holds the total number of valid entry keys passed to the citation command.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <code>citecount</code>      | This counter, which is only available in the $\langle loopcode \rangle$ of a citation command defined with <code>\DeclareCiteCommand</code> , holds the number of the entry key currently being processed by the $\langle loopcode \rangle$ .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <code>multicitetotal</code> | This counter is similar to <code>citetotal</code> but only available in <code>multicite</code> commands. It holds the total number of citations passed to the <code>multicite</code> command. Note that each of these citations may consist of more than one entry key. This information is provided by the <code>citetotal</code> counter.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <code>multicitecount</code> | This counter is similar to <code>citecount</code> but only available in <code>multicite</code> commands. It holds the number of the citation currently being processed. Note that this citation may consist of more than one entry key. This information is provided by the <code>citetotal</code> and <code>citecount</code> counters.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <code>listtotal</code>      | This counter holds the total number of items in the current list. It is intended for use in list formatting directives and does not hold a meaningful value when used anywhere else. As an exception, it may also be used in the second optional argument to <code>\printnames</code> and <code>\printlist</code> , see § 4.4.1 for details. For every list, there is also a counter by the same name which holds the total number of items in the corresponding list. For example, the <code>author</code> counter holds the total number of items in the author list. This applies to both name lists and literal lists. These counters are similar to <code>listtotal</code> except that they may also be used independently of list formatting directives. For example, a bibliography style might check the <code>editor</code> counter to decide Whether or not to print the term “editor” or rather its plural form “editors” after the list of editors. |
| <code>listcount</code>      | This counter holds the number of the list item currently being processed. It is intended for use in list formatting directives and does not hold a meaningful value when used anywhere else.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <code>liststart</code>      | This counter holds the $\langle start \rangle$ argument passed to <code>\printnames</code> or <code>\printlist</code> . It is intended for use in list formatting directives and does not hold a meaningful value when used anywhere else.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <code>liststop</code>       | This counter holds the $\langle stop \rangle$ argument passed to <code>\printnames</code> or <code>\printlist</code> . It is intended for use in list formatting directives and does not hold a meaningful value when used anywhere else.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <code>\currentlang</code>   | The name of the currently active language for Biblatex. Can be used anywhere and defaults to the main document language. This is automatically switched inside entries which define <code>langid</code> , given suitable settings of the <code>autolang</code> and language options. Note that this does not track all document language changes, only the current Biblatex setting.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <code>\currentfield</code>  | The name of the field currently being processed by <code>\printfield</code> . This information is only available locally in field formatting directives.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <code>\currentlist</code>   | The name of the literal list currently being processed by <code>\printlist</code> . This information is only available locally in list formatting directives.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <code>\currentname</code>   | The name of the name list currently being processed by <code>\printnames</code> . This information is only available locally in name formatting directives.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

#### 4.10.6 一般目的的钩子 General Purpose Hooks

`\AtBeginBibliography{ $\langle code \rangle$ }`

Appends the  $\langle code \rangle$  to an internal hook executed at the beginning of the bibliography. The  $\langle code \rangle$  is executed at the beginning of the list of references, immediately after the  $\langle begin code \rangle$  of `\defbibenvironment`. This command may only be used in the preamble.

`\AtBeginShorthands{ $\langle code \rangle$ }`

Appends the  $\langle code \rangle$  to an internal hook executed at the beginning of the list of shorthands. The  $\langle code \rangle$  is executed at the beginning of the list of shorthands, immediately after the  $\langle begin code \rangle$  of `\defbibenvironment`. This command may only be used in the preamble.

This is just an alias for:

```
\AtBeginBiblist{shorthand}{code}
```

`\AtBeginBiblist{<biblistname>}{<code>}`

Appends the `<code>` to an internal hook executed at the beginning of the bibliography list `<biblistname>`. The `<code>` is executed at the beginning of the bibliography list, immediately after the `<begin code>` of `\defbibenvironment`. This command may only be used in the preamble.

`\AtEveryBibitem{<code>}`

Appends the `<code>` to an internal hook executed at the beginning of every item in the bibliography. The `<code>` is executed immediately after the `<item code>` of `\defbibenvironment`. The bibliographic data of the respective entry is available at this point. This command may only be used in the preamble.

`\AtEveryLositem{<code>}`

Appends the `<code>` to an internal hook executed at the beginning of every item in the list of shorthands. The `<code>` is executed immediately after the `<item code>` of `\defbibenvironment`. The bibliographic data of the respective entry is available at this point. This command may only be used in the preamble.

This is just an alias for:

```
\AtEveryBiblistitem{<shorthand>}{<code>}
```

`\AtEveryBiblistitem{<biblistname>}{<code>}`

Appends the `<code>` to an internal hook executed at the beginning of every item in the bibliography list named `<biblistname>`. The `<code>` is executed immediately after the `<item code>` of `\defbibenvironment`. The bibliographic data of the respective entry is available at this point. This command may only be used in the preamble.

`\AtNextBibliography{<code>}`

Similar to `\AtBeginBibliography` but only affecting the next `\printbibliography`. The internal hook is cleared after being executed once. This command may be used in the document body.

`\AtEveryCite{<code>}`

Appends the `<code>` to an internal hook executed at the beginning of every citation command. The `<code>` is executed immediately before the `<precode>` of the command (see § 4.3.1). No bibliographic data is available at this point. This command may only be used in the preamble.

`\AtEveryCitekey{<code>}`

Appends the `<code>` to an internal hook executed once for every entry key passed to a citation command. The `<code>` is executed immediately before the `<loopcode>` of the command (see § 4.3.1). The bibliographic data of the respective entry is available at this point. This command may only be used in the preamble.

`\AtEveryMultiCite{<code>}`

Appends the `<code>` to an internal hook executed at the beginning of every multicite command. The `<code>` is executed immediately before the `multiprenote` field (§ 4.3.2) is printed. No bibliographic data is available at this point. This command may only be used in the preamble.

`\AtNextCite{<code>}`

Similar to `\AtEveryCite` but only affecting the next citation command. The internal hook is cleared after being executed once. This command may be used in the document body.

`\AtEachCitekey{<code>}`

Similar to `\AtEveryCitekey` but only affecting the current citation command. This command may be used in the document body. The `<code>` is appended to the internal hook locally when located in a citation, as determined by `\ifcitation`.

`\AtNextCitekey{<code>}`

Similar to `\AtEveryCitekey` but only affecting the next entry key. The internal hook is cleared after being executed once. This command may be used in the document body.

`\AtNextMultiCite{<code>}`

Similar to `\AtEveryMultiCite` but only affecting the next multicite command. The internal hook is cleared after being executed once. This command may be used in the document body.

`\AtDataInput[<entrytype>]{<code>}`

Appends the `<code>` to an internal hook executed once for every entry as the bibliographic data is imported from the `bb1` file. The `<entrytype>` is the entry type the `<code>` applies to. If it applies to all entry types, omit the optional argument. The `<code>` is executed immediately after the entry has been imported. This command may only be used in the preamble. Note that `<code>` may be executed multiple times for an entry. This occurs when the same entry is cited in different refsection environments or the `sorting` option settings incorporate more than one sorting scheme. The `refsection` counter holds the number of the respective reference section while the data is imported.



`\UseBibitemHook`

Executes the internal hook corresponding to `\AtEveryBibitem`.

`\UseEveryCiteHook`

Executes the internal hook corresponding to `\AtEveryCite`.

`\UseEveryCitekeyHook`

Executes the internal hook corresponding to `\AtEveryCitekey`.

`\UseEveryMultiCiteHook`

Executes the internal hook corresponding to `\AtMultiEveryCite`.

`\UseNextCiteHook`

Executes and clears the internal hook corresponding to `\AtNextCite`.

`\UseNextCitekeyHook`

Executes and clears the internal hook corresponding to `\AtNextCitekey`.

`\UseNextMultiCiteHook`

Executes and clears the internal hook corresponding to `\AtNextMultiCite`.

`\DeferNextCitekeyHook`

Locally un-defines the internal hook specified by `\AtNextCitekey`. This essentially defers the hook to the next entry key in the citation list, when executed in the *<precode>* argument of `\DeclareCiteCommand` (§ 4.3.1).

## 4.11 提示与警告 Hints and Caveats

This section provides some additional hints concerning the author interface of this package. It also addresses common problems and potential misconceptions.

### 4.11.1 条目集 Entry Sets

Entry sets have already been introduced in § 3.11.5. This section discusses how to process entry sets in a bibliography style. From the perspective of the driver, there is no difference between static and dynamic entry sets. Both types are handled in the same way. You will normally use the `\entryset` command from § 4.4.1 to loop over all set members (in the order in which they are listed in the `entryset` field of the `@set` entry, or in the order in which they were passed to `\defbibentryset`, respectively) and append `\finentry` at the end. That's it. The formatting is handled by the drivers for the entry types of the individual set members:

```
\DeclareBibliographyDriver{set}{%  
  \entryset{}}{%  
  \finentry}
```

You may have noticed that the numeric styles which ship with this package support subdivided entry sets, i. e., the members of the set are marked with a letter or some other marker such that citations may either refer to the entire set or to a specific set member. The markers are generated as follows by the bibliography style:

```
\DeclareBibliographyDriver{set}{%  
  \entryset  
    {\printfield{entrysetcount}%  
     \setunit*{\addnbspace}}  
  {%  
  \finentry}
```

The `entrysetcount` field holds an integer indicating the position of a set member in the entry set. The conversion of this number to a letter or some other marker is handled by the formatting directive of the `entrysetcount` field. All the driver needs to do is print the field and add some white space (or start a new line). Printing the markers in citations works in a similar way. Where a numeric style normally says `\printfield{labelnumber}`, you simply append the `entrysetcount` field:



```
\printfield{labelnumber}\printfield{entrysetcount}
```

Since this field is only defined when processing citations referring to a set member, there is no need to add any additional tests.

### 4.11.2 电子出版信息 Electronic Publishing Information

The standard styles feature dedicated support for arXiv references. Support for other resources is easily added. The standard styles handle the eprint field as follows:

```
\iffieldundef{eprinttype}
{\printfield{eprint}}
{\printfield[eprint:\strfield{eprinttype}]{eprint}}
```

If an eprinttype field is available, the above code tries to use the field format eprint:⟨eprinttype⟩. If this format is undefined, \printfield automatically falls back to the field format eprint. There are two predefined field formats, the type-specific format eprint:arxiv and the fallback format eprint:

```
\DeclareFieldFormat{eprint}{...}
\DeclareFieldFormat{eprint:arxiv}{...}
```

In other words, adding support for additional resources is as easy as defining a field format named eprint:⟨resource⟩ where ⟨resource⟩ is an identifier to be used in the eprinttype field.

### 4.11.3 额外的摘要和注释 External Abstracts and Annotations

External abstracts and annotations have been discussed in § 3.11.8. This section provides some more background for style authors. The standard styles use the following macros (from biblatex.def) to handle abstracts and annotations:

```
\newbibmacro*{annotation}{%
  \iffieldundef{annotation}
    {\printfile[annotation]{\bibannotationprefix\thefield{entrykey}.tex}}%
    {\printfield{annotation}}}
\newcommand*{\bibannotationprefix}{bibannotation-}

\newbibmacro*{abstract}{%
  \iffieldundef{abstract}
    {\printfile[abstract]{\bibabstractprefix\thefield{entrykey}.tex}}%
    {\printfield{abstract}}}
\newcommand*{\bibabstractprefix}{bibabstract-}
```

If the abstract/annotation field is undefined, the above code tries to load the abstracts/annotations from an external file. The \printfile commands also incorporate file name prefixes which may be redefined by users. Note that you must enable \printfile explicitly by setting the loadfiles package option from § 3.1.2.1. This feature is disabled by default for performance reasons.

### 4.11.4 消除姓名歧义 Name Disambiguation

Biber only

The uniquename and uniquelist options introduced in § 3.1.2.3 support various modes of operation. This section explains the differences between these modes by way of example. The uniquename option disambiguates individual names in the labelname list. The uniquelist option disambiguates the labelname list if it has become ambiguous after maxnames/minnames truncation. You can use either option stand-alone or combine both.

Name disambiguation works by taking a ‘base’ which is composed of one or more nameparts and then determining what needs to be added, if anything, to this ‘base’ to make the name unique in the current refsection. Name disambiguation is controlled by the uniquename template declared with the following command: 在 § 3.1.2.3节引入的uniquename和uniquelist选项支持多种操作模式。本节用举例方式介绍不同模式的差别。uniquename选项消除labelname列表中各姓名间的歧义，uniquelist消除因maxnames/minnames截短导致的labelname列表歧义。两个选项可以单独使用也可以联合使用:

`\DeclareUniquenameTemplate{<specification>}`

The `<specification>` is a list of `\namepart` commands which define the nameparts to use in determining the uniquename information

`\namepart[<options>]{<namepart>}`

`<namepart>` is one of the datamodel nameparts defined with the `\DeclareDatamodelConstant` command (see § 4.2.3). The options are:

`use=true, false` default: false

Only use the `<namepart>` in constructing the uniquename information if there is a corresponding option `use'<namepart>'` and that option is true.

`base=true, false` default: false

The `<namepart>` is part of the 'base' which is the main piece of namepart(s) information which is being disambiguated by uniqueness information.

The default uniquename template is:

```
\DeclareUniquenameTemplate{
  \namepart[use=true, base=true]{prefix}
  \namepart[base=true]{family}
  \namepart{given}
}
```

This means that the 'base' to be disambiguated consists of the 'family' namepart, along with any prefix, if the `useprefix` option is true. The disambiguation is performed by adding aspects of any non 'base' nameparts in the specification, here just the 'given' namepart.

**4.11.4.1 Individual Names (uniquename)** Let's start off with some uniquename examples. Consider the following data: 下面从一些uniquename例子开始，考虑如下数据:

```
John Doe   2008
Edward Doe 2008
John Smith 2008
Jane Smith 2008
```

Let's assume we're using an author-year style and set `uniquename=false`. In this case, we would get the following citations: 假设我们使用作者年制且设置 `uniquename=false`，这种情况下，我们得到如下引用标注:

```
Doe 2008a
Doe 2008b
Smith 2008a
Smith 2008b
```

Since the family names are ambiguous and all works have been published in the same year, an extra letter is appended to the year to disambiguate the citations. Many style guides, however, mandate that the extra letter be used to disambiguate works by the same authors only, not works by different authors with the same family name. In order to disambiguate the author's family name, you are expected to add additional parts of the name, either as initials or in full. This requirement is addressed by the `uniquename` option. Here are the same citations with `uniquename=init`:

因为姓有歧义，且所有的年都相同，所以年后附加的字符用来区分并消除歧义。然而，很多样式指南强制要求附加字符只能用于相同作者的区分，而不能用于作者相同的姓的区分。为了消除作者姓的歧义，需要增加姓名的其它完整部分或者缩写来区分。这一需要由`uniquename`选项处理，下面是使用了 `uniquename=init` 的引用标注:

```
J. Doe 2008
E. Doe 2008
Smith 2008a
Smith 2008b
```

`uniquename=init` restricts name disambiguation to initials. Since 'J. Smith' would still be ambiguous, no additional name parts are added for the 'Smiths'. With `uniquename=full`, names are printed in full where required:

`uniquename=init` 限制了用缩写来区分姓名。但因为'J.Smith' 仍然有歧义，所以没有增加。而使用 `uniquename=full`，标注如下:

```
J. Doe 2008
E. Doe 2008
John Smith 2008
Jane Smith 2008
```

In order to illustrate the difference between `uniquename=init/full` and `allinit/allfull`, we need to introduce the notion of a ‘visible’ name. In the following, ‘visible’ names are all names at a position before the `maxnames/minnames/uniqueList` truncation point. For example, given this data:

为了说明 `uniquename=init/full` 和 `allinit/allfull` 的差别，我们下面介绍 ‘visible’ 姓名的概念。‘visible’ 姓名时位于 `maxnames/minnames/uniqueList` 截短点前的姓名，比如，给出数据：

```
William Jones/Edward Doe/Jane Smith
John Doe
John Smith
```

and `maxnames=1, minnames=1, uniquename=init/full`, we would get the following names in citations:

`maxnames=1, minnames=1, uniquename=init/full`，我们得到如下的引用标注：

```
Jones et al.
Doe
Smith
```

When disambiguating names, `uniquename=init/full` only consider the visible names. Since all visible last names are distinct in this example, no further name parts are added. Let’s compare that to the output of `uniquename=allinit`:

在消除歧义的时候，`uniquename=init/full` 仅考虑可见的姓名。因为本例中所有的可见姓名的姓都是不同的，所有没有姓名的其他部分附加进来。比较一下使用 `uniquename=allinit` 的输出：

```
Jones et al.
J. Doe
Smith
```

`allinit` considers all names in all `labelname` lists, including those which are hidden and replaced by ‘et al.’ as the list is truncated. In this example, ‘John Doe’ is disambiguated from ‘Edward Doe’. Since the ambiguity of the two ‘Smiths’ can’t be resolved by adding initials, no initials are added in this case. Now let’s compare that to the output of `uniquename=allfull` which also disambiguates ‘John Smith’ from ‘Jane Smith’:

`allinit` 认为所有在 `labelname` 列表中的姓名，包括列表截短后已经隐藏并且由 ‘et al.’ 代替的姓名。在本例中，‘John Doe’ 与 ‘Edward Doe’ 存在歧义。因为两个 ‘Smiths’ 无法通过添加缩写的方式区分，所以没有添加。现在来比较一下 `uniquename=allfull` 的输出：

```
Jones et al.
J. Doe
John Smith
```

The options `uniquename=mininit/minfull` are similar to `init/full` in that they only consider visible names, but they perform minimal disambiguation. That is, they will disambiguate individual names only if they occur in identical lists of last names. Consider the following data:

`uniquename=mininit/minfull` 选项类似于 `init/full` 仅考虑可见姓名，但仅执行最小的歧义消除。即，仅对姓列表的歧义进行处理，考虑如下数据：

```
John Doe/William Jones
Edward Doe/William Jones
John Smith/William Edwards
Edward Smith/Allan Johnson
```

With `uniquename=init/full`, we would get:

使用 `uniquename=init/full`，得到：

```
J. Doe and Jones
E. Doe and Jones
J. Smith and Edwards
E. Smith and Johnson
```

With `uniquename=mininit/minfull`: 使用 `uniquename=mininit/minfull`, 得到:

```
J. Doe and Jones
E. Doe and Jones
Smith and Edwards
Smith and Johnson
```

The ‘Smiths’ are not disambiguated because the visible name lists are not ambiguous and the `mininit/minfull` options serve to disambiguate names occurring in identical last name lists only. Another way of looking at this is that they globally disambiguate family name lists. When it comes to ambiguous lists, note that a truncated list is considered to be distinct from an untruncated one even if the visible names are identical. For example, consider the following data:

‘Smiths’ 并无歧义, 因为姓名列表时没有歧义。`mininit/minfull`选项仅对姓的列表相同情况进行处理。全局的看姓的列表, 注意当未截短的列表的可见名相同的时候, 截短的列表时也可能是不同的, 比如下面的数据:

```
John Doe/William Jones
Edward Doe
```

With `maxnames=1, uniquename=init/full`, we would get: 使用 `maxnames=1, uniquename=init/full`:

```
J. Doe et al.
E. Doe
```

With `uniquename=mininit/minfull`: 使用 `uniquename=mininit/minfull`:

```
Doe et al.
Doe
```

Because the lists differ in the ‘et al.’, the names are not disambiguated. 因为列表有 ‘et al.’ 的不同, 姓名列表就不歧义。

#### 4.11.4.2 Lists of Names (`uniqueList`)

**4.11.4.3 姓名列表 (独立姓名外的处理) (`uniqueList`)** Ambiguity is also an issue with name lists. If the `labelname` list is truncated by the `maxnames/minnames` options, it may become ambiguous. This type of ambiguity is addressed by the `uniqueList` option. Consider the following data:

姓名列表也可能存在歧义问题。如果`labelname`列表由`maxnames/minnames`选项截短就可能产生歧义。这类问题由`uniqueList`选处理, 考虑如下数据:

```
Doe/Jones/Smith 2005
Smith/Johnson/Doe 2005
Smith/Doe/Edwards 2005
Smith/Doe/Jones 2005
```

Many author-year styles truncate long author/editor lists in citations. For example, with `maxnames=1` we would get:

很多作者年制样式需要在标注中截短, 比如使用 `maxnames=1` 选项, 得到:

```
Doe et al. 2005
Smith et al. 2005a
Smith et al. 2005b
Smith et al. 2005c
```

Since the authors are ambiguous after truncation, the extra letter is added to the year to ensure unique citations. Here again, many style guides mandate that the extra letter be used to disambiguate works by the same authors only. In order to disambiguate author lists, you are usually required to add more names, exceeding the `maxnames/minnames` truncation point. The `uniquelist` feature addresses this requirement. With `uniquelist=true`, we would get: 因为截短后作者存在歧义，所以添加额外字符确保引用标注的唯一性。同样的，一些样式强制要求额外字符只能用于所有作者都相同的情况。为了区分作者列表，必须增加更多的姓名，这样就会超出`maxnames/minnames`选项设定的截短点。`uniquelist`选项即描述这一需求，当 `uniquelist=true`，有：

```
Doe et al. 2005
Smith, Johnson et al. 2005
Smith, Doe and Edwards 2005
Smith, Doe and Jones 2005
```

The `uniquelist` option overrides `maxnames/minnames` on a per-entry basis. Essentially, what happens is that the ‘et al.’ part of the citation is expanded to the point of no ambiguity – but no further than that. `uniquelist` may also be combined with `uniquename`. Consider the following data: `uniquelist`选项以条目为限重设`maxnames/minnames`。大体上，标注的‘et al.’部分扩展到无歧义的点-而且也基本到此为止。`uniquelist`也可以与`uniquename`联合使用，考虑如下数据：

```
John Doe/Allan Johnson/William Jones 2009
John Doe/Edward Johnson/William Jones 2009
John Doe/Jane Smith/William Jones 2009
John Doe/John Smith/William Jones 2009
John Doe/John Edwards/William Jones 2009
John Doe/John Edwards/Jack Johnson 2009
```

With `maxnames=1`: 使用 `maxnames=1`，得到：

```
Doe et al. 2009a
Doe et al. 2009b
Doe et al. 2009c
Doe et al. 2009d
Doe et al. 2009e
Doe et al. 2009f
```

With `maxnames=1, uniquename=full, uniquelist=true`: 使用 `maxnames=1, uniquename=full, uniquelist=true` 则有：

```
Doe, A. Johnson et al. 2009
Doe, E. Johnson et al. 2009
Doe, Jane Smith et al. 2009
Doe, John Smith et al. 2009
Doe, Edwards and Jones 2009
Doe, Edwards and Johnson 2009
```

With `uniquelist=minyear`, list disambiguation only happens if the visible list is identical to another visible list with the same `labelyear`. This is useful for author-year styles which only require that the citation as a whole be unique, but do not guarantee unambiguous authorship information in citations. This mode is conceptually related to `uniquename=mininit/minfull`. Consider this example:

使用 `uniquelist=minyear`，消除列表歧义仅在可见列表和`labelyear`相同的时候。这对于仅仅需要整个标注整体具有唯一性的作者年制样式是很有用的，但是不保证作者姓名的非歧义性。这一模式概念上域 `uniquename=mininit/minfull` 选项相关。考虑如下例子：

```
Smith/Jones 2000
Smith/Johnson 2001
```

With `maxnames=1` and `uniquelist=true`, we would get: 使用 `maxnames=1` 和 `uniquelist=true`，得到：

```
Smith and Jones 2000
Smith and Johnson 2001
```

With `uniquelist=minyear`: 使用 `uniquelist=minyear`, 则得到:

```
Smith et al. 2000
Smith et al. 2001
```

With `uniquelist=minyear`, it is not clear that the authors are different for the two works but the citations as a whole are still unambiguous since the year is different. In contrast to that, `uniquelist=true` disambiguates the authorship even if this information is not required to uniquely locate the works in the bibliography. Let's consider another example:

使用 `uniquelist=minyear`, 两个文献的作者是否相同并不清楚, 但标注的整体是非歧义的, 因为年份的不同。与此相反, `uniquelist=true` 需要消除作者列表的歧义即便这一信息对于参考文献表的唯一引用是不必要的, 看看如下例子:

```
Vogel/Beast/Garble/Rook 2000
Vogel/Beast/Tremble/Bite 2000
Vogel/Beast/Acid/Squeeze 2001
```

With `maxnames=3, minnames=1, uniquelist=true`, we would get: 使用 `maxnames=3, minnames=1, uniquelist=true`, 得到

```
Vogel, Beast, Garble et al. 2000
Vogel, Beast, Tremble et al. 2000
Vogel, Beast, Acid et al. 2001
```

With `uniquelist=minyear`: 使用 `uniquelist=minyear` 选项, 则有:

```
Vogel, Beast, Garble et al. 2000
Vogel, Beast, Tremble et al. 2000
Vogel et al. 2001
```

In the last citation, `uniquelist=minyear` does not override `maxnames/minnames` as the citation does not need disambiguating from the other two because the year is different.

在最后一个引用中, `uniquelist=minyear` 不重写 `maxnames/minnames`, 因为年份的不同, 所以不需要消除与其它两个间的歧义。

#### 4.11.5 浮动体和TOC/LOT/LOF中的追踪器 Trackers in Floats and TOC/LOT/LOF

If a citation is given in a float (typically in the caption of a figure or table), scholarly back references like ‘ibidem’ or back references based on the page tracker get ambiguous because floats are objects which are (physically and logically) placed outside the flow of text, hence the logic of such references applies poorly to them. To avoid any such ambiguities, the citation and page trackers are temporarily disabled in all floats. In addition to that, these trackers plus the back reference tracker (`backref`) are temporarily disabled in the table of contents, the list of figures, and the list of tables.

#### 4.11.6 混合编程接口 Mixing Programming Interfaces

The Biblatex package provides two main programming interfaces for style authors. The `\DeclareBibliographyDriver` command, which defines a handler for an entry type, is typically used in `bbx` files. `\DeclareCiteCommand`, which defines a new citation command, is typically used in `cbx` files. However, in some cases it is convenient to mix these two interfaces. For example, the `\fullcite` command prints a verbose citation similar to the full bibliography entry. It is essentially defined as follows:

Biblatex 宏包给样式作者提供了 2 个主要的编程接口即: `bbx` 文件中使用的 `\DeclareBibliographyDriver` 命令用来定义各类参考文献条目的驱动 (格式处理器, `handler`), `cbx` 文件中使用的 `\DeclareCiteCommand` 命令用来定义新的引用命令。然而有时候, 混合使用这两个接口会很方便。比如 `\fullcite` 命令就可以打印类似于完整参考文献条目的长串引用, 该命令定义大体如下:

```
\DeclareCiteCommand{\fullcite}
{...}
{\usedriver{...}{\thefield{entrytype}}}
{...}
{...}
```

As you can see, the core code which prints the citations simply executes the bibliography driver defined with `\DeclareBibliographyDriver` for the type of the current entry. When writing a citation style for a verbose citation scheme, it is often convenient to use the following structure: 如上所见，打印引用的核心代码简单地当前的条目类型执行了`\DeclareBibliographyDriver`定义的参考文献驱动命令。当为长引用样式 (a verbose citation scheme) 编写引用样式文件的时候，使用下面的结构是非常方便的：

```
\ProvidesFile{example.cbx}[2007/06/09 v1.0 biblatex citation style]

\DeclareCiteCommand{\cite}
{...}
{\usedriver{...}{cite:\thefield{entrytype}}}{...}
{...}
{...}

\DeclareBibliographyDriver{cite:article}{...}
\DeclareBibliographyDriver{cite:book}{...}
\DeclareBibliographyDriver{cite:inbook}{...}
...

```

Another case in which mixing interfaces is helpful are styles using cross-references within the bibliography. For example, when printing an `@incollection` entry, the data inherited from the `@collection` parent entry would be replaced by a short pointer to the respective parent entry:

混合接口的另一个有用情况是在参考文献表中使用交叉引用 (cross-references) 时。比如当打印`@incollection` 类型的条目，数据继承自`@collection`父条目，将会由一个简短的指向对应父条目的指针来代替。

[1] Audrey Author: *Title of article*. In: [2], pp. 134–165.

[2] Edward Editor, ed.: *Title of collection*. Publisher: Location, 1995.

One way to implement such cross-references within the bibliography is to think of them as citations which use the value of the `xref` or `crossref` field as the entry key. Here is an example: 实现这种参考文献的交叉引用的一种方法是认为他们是引用关系，使用`xref` 或 `crossref`域的值作为条目关键字 (bibtex 条目键，entry key)，例子如下：

```
\ProvidesFile{example.bbx}[2007/06/09 v1.0 biblatex bibliography style]

\DeclareCiteCommand{\bbx@xref}
{}
{...}% code for cross-references
{}
{}

\DeclareBibliographyDriver{incollection}{%
...
\iffieldundef{xref}
{...}% code if no cross-reference
{\bbx@xref{\thefield{xref}}}%
...
}

```

When defining `\bbx@xref`, the `<precode>`, `<postcode>`, and `<sepcode>` arguments of `\DeclareCiteCommand` are left empty in the above example because they will not be used anyway. The cross-reference is printed by the `<loopcode>` of `\bbx@xref`. For further details on the `xref` field, refer to § 2.2.3 and to the hints in § 2.4.1. Also see the `\iffieldxref`, `\iflistxref`, and `\ifnamexref` tests in § 4.6.2. The above could also be implemented using the `\entrydata` command from § 4.4.1: 当定义`\bbx@xref`命令时，`\DeclareCiteCommand`命令的`<precode>`，`<postcode>`，和`<sepcode>`参数留空，是因为上面例子中没有用到。交叉引用由`\bbx@xref`命令的`<loopcode>`参数打印。更多的关于`xref`域的细节见 § 2.2.3节以及 § 2.4.1节中的注意事项。在 § 4.6.2节我们也看到了`\iffieldxref`，`\iflistxref`，和`\ifnamexref`测试命令。这些也都可以用 § 4.4.1节的`\entrydata`命令来实现。

```
\ProvidesFile{example.bbx}[2007/06/09 v1.0 biblatex bibliography style]

```

```

\DeclareBibliographyDriver{incollection}{%
  ...
  \iffieldundef{xref}
  {...}% code if no cross-reference
  {\entrydata{\thefield{xref}}}{%
    % code for cross-references
    ...
  }}%
  ...
}

```

## 4.11.7 使用标点追踪 Using the Punctuation Tracker

**4.11.7.1 标点基础 The Basics** There is one fundamental principle style authors should keep in mind when designing a bibliography driver: block and unit punctuation is handled asynchronously. This is best explained by way of example. Consider the following code snippet:

样式作者设计参考文献驱动时需要记住一点: 块和单元的标点是异步处理的。用例子最容易解释这一点, 看下面一段代码:

```

\printfield{title}%
\newunit
\printfield{edition}%
\newunit
\printfield{note}%

```

If there is no edition field, this piece of code will not print: 如果没有edition域, 那么这段代码的打印结果不会是:

```
Title. . Note
```

but rather: 而会是

```
Title. Note
```

因为单元的标点追踪器是异步方式工作的。`newunit`命令将不会立即打印标点。它仅是记录一个单元的边界并且将`newunitpunct`命令放入标点缓存中。该缓存会有接下来的`printfield`、`printlist`或类似命令进行处理, 且仅当这些命令各自处理的域或列表已定义的时候才会处理。像`printfield`这样的命令在插入任何块和单元的标点之前将首先考虑 3 个因素: because the unit punctuation tracker works asynchronously. `newunit` will not print the unit punctuation immediately. It merely records a unit boundary and puts `newunitpunct` on the punctuation buffer. This buffer will be handled by *subsequent* `printfield`, `printlist`, or similar commands but only if the respective field or list is defined. Commands like `printfield` will consider three factors prior to inserting any block or unit punctuation:

- Has a new unit/block been requested at all?
  - = Is there any preceding `newunit` or `newblock` command? 是否有新的单元/块的输出请求?
  - = 前面是否有`newunit`或者`newblock`命令?
- Did the preceding commands print anything?
  - = Is there any preceding `printfield` or similar command?
  - = Did this command actually print anything?
  - 前面的命令是否有打印输出?
  - = 前面是否有`printfield`或者相似命令?
  - = 该命令是否实际打印了任何东西?
- Are we about to print anything now?
  - = Is the field/list to be processed now defined? 现在是否要打印一些东西?
  - 要进行打印处理的域或列表是否已定义?



Block and unit punctuation will only be inserted if *all* of these conditions apply. Let's reconsider the above example: 块和单元的标点只会在上述所有条件满足的时候才会输出。让我们再次考虑上面的例子:

```
\printfield{title}%  
\newunit  
\printfield{edition}%  
\newunit  
\printfield{note}%
```

如果`edition`域没有定义会发生什么呢? 第一个`\printfield`命令打印了标题并设置一个内部的‘new text’标志。第一个`\newunit`命令设置一个内部的‘new unit’标志。这使没有任何标点输出。第二个`\printfield`命令不进行任何处理因为`edition`域未定义。接下来的`\newunit`命令再次设置‘new unit’标志, 仍然没有标点输出。第三个`\printfield`命令检测`note`域是否已定义, 如果是, 它会寻找‘new text’和‘new unit’标志。如果两个标志都存在, 那么它会在打印 `note` 前插入标点缓存。然后它会清除‘new unit’标志然后再次设置‘new text’标志。Here's what happens if the `edition` field is undefined. The first `\printfield` command prints the title and sets an internal ‘new text’ flag. The first `\newunit` sets an internal ‘new unit’ flag. No punctuation has been printed at this point. The second `\printfield` does nothing because the `edition` field is undefined. The next `\newunit` command sets the internal flag ‘new unit’ again. Still no punctuation has been printed. The third `\printfield` checks if the `note` field is defined. If so, it looks at the ‘new text’ and ‘new unit’ flags. If both are set, it inserts the punctuation buffer before printing the note. It then clears the ‘new unit’ flag and sets the ‘new text’ flag again.

所有这些听起来似乎很复杂, 但实际上, 这意味着可以用顺序的方式写一个具有很多部件的参考文献驱动。这种方法的优势在不使用标点追踪而实现上述代码功能时会体现的很明显。如果不用标点追踪, 那么会因为大量对所有可能存在域的判断产生一个复杂的`\iffielddundef`判断命令集合。This may all sound more complicated than it is. In practice, it means that it is possible to write large parts of a bibliography driver in a sequential way. The advantage of this approach becomes obvious when trying to write the above code without using the punctuation tracker. Such an attempt will lead to a rather convoluted set of `\iffielddundef` tests required to check for all possible field combinations (note that the code below handles three fields; a typical driver may need to cater for some two dozen fields):

```
\iffielddundef{title}%  
  {\iffielddundef{edition}  
    {\printfield{note}}  
    {\printfield{edition}%  
     \iffielddundef{note}%  
     {}  
     {. \printfield{note}}}}  
  {\printfield{title}%  
   \iffielddundef{edition}  
   {}  
   {. \printfield{edition}}%  
   \iffielddundef{note}  
   {}  
   {. \printfield{note}}}%
```

**4.11.7.2 常见错误 Common Mistakes** 把单元的标点处理认为是同步处理的是一个相当常见的误解。这会导致当驱动中包含原样文本<sup>61</sup>时出现一些典型错误。考虑下面导致标点错位的错误代码段: It is a fairly common misconception to think of the unit punctuation as something that is handled synchronously. This typically causes problems if the driver includes any literal text. Consider this erroneous code snippet which will generate misplaced unit punctuation:

```
\printfield{title}%  
\newunit  
(\printfield{series} \printfield{number})%
```

This code will yield the following result: 这段代码将产生下面的结果:

---

<sup>61</sup>这里 *literal text* 理解为原样文本, 如实文本, 逐字文本

```
Title (. Series Number)
```

这里发生了什么呢？第一个`\printfield`命令打印了标题，然后`\newunit`命令标记了一个新的单元边界但不打印任何内容。单元的标点由下一个`\printfield`命令打印。这是前面提过的异步机制。然而因为左括号在下一个`\printfield`命令插入标点前立即打印，所以导致了错误的句点。当插入任何原样文本比如括号（还包括由`\bibopenparen`和`\mkbibparens`命令打印的括号）时，总需要将这些文本用`\printtext`命令包起来。要让标点追踪正常运转，需要让驱动知道所有插入的原样文本。这是`\printtext`命令的作用所在。`\printtext`命令联系标点追踪器确保标点缓存在原样文本打印前插入。它也设定内部‘new text’标志。注意本例中还有第三处原样文本即`\printfield{series}`后面的空格。在改正的例子中，我们将使用标点追踪器来处理该空格。Here’s what happens. The first `\printfield` prints the title. Then `\newunit` marks a unit boundary but does not print anything. The unit punctuation is printed by the *next* `\printfield` command. That’s the asynchronous part mentioned before. However, the opening parenthesis is printed immediately before the next `\printfield` inserts the unit punctuation, leading to a misplaced period. When inserting *any* literal text such as parentheses (including those printed by commands such as `\bibopenparen` and `\mkbibparens`), always wrap the text in a `\printtext` command. For the punctuation tracker to work as expected, it needs to know about all literal text inserted by a driver. This is what `\printtext` is all about. `\printtext` interfaces with the punctuation tracker and ensures that the punctuation buffer is inserted before the literal text gets printed. It also sets the internal ‘new text’ flag. Note there is in fact a third piece of literal text in this example: the space after `\printfield{series}`. In the corrected example, we will use the punctuation tracker to handle that space.

```
\printfield{title}%  
\newunit  
\printtext{()%  
\printfield{series}%  
\setunit*{\addspace}%  
\printfield{number}%  
\printtext{()%
```

尽管上面的代码能够如常工作，但处理括号、引号和其它包围某个域的标点是，推荐的方式是定义一个域格式：While the above code will work as expected, the recommended way to handle parentheses, quotes, and other things which enclose more than one field, is to define a field format:

```
\DeclareFieldFormat{parens}{\mkbibparens{#1}}
```

域格式可以同时用于`\printfield`和`\printtext`命令，因此我们可以利用它对若干个域用一堆括号进行包裹。Field formats may be used with both `\printfield` and `\printtext`, hence we can use them to enclose several fields in a single pair of parentheses:

```
\printtext[parens]{%  
  \printfield{series}%  
  \setunit*{\addspace}%  
  \printfield{number}%  
}%
```

这里我们还需要处理没有 `series` 信息时的情况，因此进一步改进代码如下：We still need to handle cases in which there is no series information at all, so let’s improve the code some more:

```
\iffieldundef{series}  
{%  
  {\printtext[parens]{%  
    \printfield{series}%  
    \setunit*{\addspace}%  
    \printfield{number}}}%  
}
```

最后的一点提示：本地化字符串对于标点追踪器来说不是原样文本。因为`\bibstring`和相似命令能联系标点追踪器，因此就不需要用`\printtext`包裹起来。One final hint: localisation strings are not literal text as far as the punctuation tracker is concerned. Since `\bibstring` and similar commands interface with the punctuation tracker, there is no need to wrap them in a `\printtext` command.

**4.11.7.3 高级应用 Advanced Usage** 标点追踪器也可用来处理更复杂的情况。比如, 考虑需要对location、publisher和 year根据数据是否提供以如下的格式打印: The punctuation tracker may also be used to handle more complex scenarios. For example, suppose that we want the fields location, publisher, and year to be rendered in one of the following formats, depending on the available data:

```
...text. Location: Publisher, Year. Text...
...text. Location: Publisher. Text...
...text. Location: Year. Text...
...text. Publisher, Year. Text...
...text. Location. Text...
...text. Publisher. Text...
...text. Year. Text...
```

这个问题可以用一个相当复杂的\iflistundef和\iffieldundef判断集进行处理, 通过这些判断可以确定所有可能的域的組合: This problem can be solved with a rather convoluted set of \iflistundef and \iffieldundef tests which check for all possible field combinations:

```
\iflistundef{location}
{
  \iflistundef{publisher}
  {
    \printfield{year}
    {\printlist{publisher}%
     \iffieldundef{year}
     {}
     {, \printfield{year}}}}
  {\printlist{location}%
   \iflistundef{publisher}%
   {\iffieldundef{year}
    {}
    {: \printfield{year}}}}
  {: \printlist{publisher}%
   \iffieldundef{year}
   {}
   {, \printfield{year}}}}%
```

可以应用\ifthenelse命令和 § 4.6.3 讨论的布尔运算可使上面的代码更具可读性。但本质上是一样的。然而, 也可以按顺序写成如下方式: The above could be written in a somewhat more readable way by employing \ifthenelse and the boolean operators discussed in § 4.6.3. The approach would still be essentially the same. However, it may also be written sequentially:

```
\newunit
\printlist{location}%
\setunit*{\addcolon\space}%
\printlist{publisher}%
\setunit*{\addcomma\space}%
\printfield{year}%
\newunit
```

在实际使用中, 你会经常使用标点追踪器执行一些显式或隐式的组合判断, 比如, 考虑如下格式 (注意当没有 publisher 时 location 后面的标点) In practice, you will often use a combination of explicit tests and the implicit tests performed by the punctuation tracker. For example, consider the following format (note the punctuation after the location if there is no publisher):

```
...text. Location: Publisher, Year. Text...
...text. Location: Publisher. Text...
...text. Location, Year. Text...
...text. Publisher, Year. Text...
```

```
...text. Location. Text...
...text. Publisher. Text...
...text. Year. Text...
```

这可以用如下代码进行处理: This can be handled by the following code:

```
\newunit
\printlist{location}%
\iflistundef{publisher}
  {\setunit*{\addcomma\space}}
  {\setunit*{\addcolon\space}}%
\printlist{publisher}%
\setunit*{\addcomma\space}%
\printfield{year}%
\newunit
```

因为当没有 publisher 时 location 后面的标点的特殊性, 我们需要用一个 \iflistundef 判断来确保正确性。剩下其它的则有标点追踪器处理。Since the punctuation after the location is special if there is no publisher, we need one \iflistundef test to catch this case. Everything else is handled by the punctuation tracker.

#### 4.11.8 定制本地化模型 Custom Localization Modules

Style guides may include provisions as to how strings like ‘edition’ should be abbreviated or they may mandate certain fixed expressions. For example, the MLA style guide requires authors to use the term ‘Works Cited’ rather than ‘Bibliography’ or ‘References’ in the heading of the bibliography. Localization commands such as \DefineBibliographyStrings from § 3.8 may indeed be used in cbx and bbx files to handle such cases. However, overloading style files with translations is rather inconvenient. This is where \DeclareLanguageMapping from § 4.9.1 comes into play. This command maps an lbx file with alternative translations to a babel/polyglossia language. For example, you could create a file named french-humanities.lbx which provides French translations adapted for use in the humanities and map it to the babel/polyglossia language french in the preamble or in the configuration file:

```
\DeclareLanguageMapping{french}{french-humanities}
```

If the document language is set to french, french-humanities.lbx will replace french.lbx. Coming back to the MLA example mentioned above, an MLA style may come with an american-mla.lbx file to provide strings which comply with the MLA style guide. It would declare the following mapping in the cbx and/or bbx file:

```
\DeclareLanguageMapping{american}{american-mla}
```

Since the alternative lbx file can inherit strings from the standard american.lbx module, american-mla.lbx may be as short as this:

```
\ProvidesFile{american-mla.lbx}[2008/10/01 v1.0 biblatex localization]
\InheritBibliographyExtras{american}
\DeclareBibliographyStrings{%
  inherit      = {american},
  bibliography = {{Works Cited}{Works Cited}},
  references    = {{Works Cited}{Works Cited}},
}
\endinput
```

Alternative lbx files must ensure that the localisation module is complete. They should do so by inheriting data from the corresponding standard module. If the language american is mapped to american-mla.lbx, Biblatex will not load american.lbx unless this module is requested explicitly. In the above example, inheriting ‘strings’ and ‘extras’ will cause Biblatex to load american.lbx before applying the modifications in american-mla.lbx.

Note that \DeclareLanguageMapping is not intended to handle language variants (e.g., American English vs. British English) or babel/polyglossia language aliases (e.g., USenglish vs. american). For example, babel/polyglossia offers

the `USenglish` option which is similar to `american`. Therefore, Bibl<sub>at</sub>ex ships with an `USenglish.lbx` file which simply inherits all data from `american.lbx` (which in turn gets the ‘strings’ from `english.lbx`). In other words, the mapping of language variants and `babel/polyglossia` language aliases happens on the file level, the point being that Bibl<sub>at</sub>ex’s language support can be extended simply by adding additional `lbx` files. There is no need for centralized mapping. If you need support for, say, Portuguese (`babel/polyglossia: portuges`), you create a file named `portuges.lbx`. If `babel/polyglossia` offered an alias named `brasil`, you would create `brasil.lbx` and inherit the data from `portuges.lbx`. In contrast to that, the point of `\DeclareLanguageMapping` is handling *stylistic* variants like ‘humanities vs. natural sciences’ or ‘MLA vs. APA’ etc. which will typically be built on top of existing `lbx` files.

### 4.11.9 编组 Grouping

In a citation or bibliography style, you may need to set flags or store certain values for later use. In this case, it is crucial to understand the basic grouping structure imposed by this package. As a rule of thumb, you are working in a large group whenever author commands such as those discussed in § 4.6 are available because the author interface of this package is only enabled locally. If any bibliographic data is available, there is at least one additional group. Here are some general rules:

- The entire list of references printed by `\printbibliography` and similar commands is processed in a group. Each entry in the list is processed in an additional group which encloses the *⟨item code⟩* of `\defbibenvironment` as well as all driver code.
- The entire bibliography list printed by `\printbiblist` is processed in a group. Each entry in the list is processed in an additional group which encloses the *⟨item code⟩* of `\defbibenvironment` as well as all driver code.
- All citation commands defined with `\DeclareCiteCommand` are processed in a group holding the complete citation code consisting of the *⟨precode⟩*, *⟨sepcode⟩*, *⟨loopcode⟩*, and *⟨postcode⟩* arguments. The *⟨loopcode⟩* is enclosed in an additional group every time it is executed. If any *⟨wrapper⟩* code has been specified, the entire unit consisting of the wrapper code and the citation code is wrapped in an additional group.
- In addition to the grouping imposed by all backend commands defined with `\DeclareCiteCommand`, all ‘autocite’ and ‘multicite’ definitions imply an additional group.
- `\printfile`, `\printtext`, `\printfield`, `\printlist`, and `\printnames` form groups. This implies that all formatting directives will be processed within a group of their own.
- All `lbx` files are loaded and processed in a group. If an `lbx` file contains any code which is not part of `\DeclareBibliographyExtras`, the definitions must be global.

Note that using `\aftergroup` in citation and bibliography styles is unreliable because the precise number of groups employed in a certain context may change in future versions of this package. If the above list states that something is processed in a group, this means that there is *at least one* group. There may also be several nested ones.

### 4.11.10 命名空间 Namespaces

In order to minimize the risk of name clashes, LaTeX packages typically prefix the names of internal macros with a short string specific to the package. For example, if the `foobar` package requires a macro for internal use, it would typically be called `\FB@macro` or `\foo@macro` rather than `\macro` or `@macro`. Here is a list of the prefixes used or recommended by Bibl<sub>at</sub>ex:

- blx** All macros with names like `\blx@name` are strictly reserved for internal use. This also applies to counter names, length registers, boolean switches, and so on. These macros may be altered in backwards-incompatible ways, they may be renamed or even removed at any time without further notice. Such changes will not even be mentioned in the revision history or the release notes. In short: never use any macros with the string `blx` in their name in any styles.
- abx** Macros prefixed with `abx` are also internal macros but they are fairly stable. It is always preferable to use the facilities provided by the official author interface, but there may be cases in which using an `abx` macro is convenient.
- bbx** This is the recommended prefix for internal macros defined in bibliography styles.
- cbx** This is the recommended prefix for internal macros defined in citation styles.
- lbx** This is the recommended base prefix for internal macros defined in localisation modules. The localisation module should add a second prefix to specify the language. For example, an internal macro defined by the Spanish localisation module would be named `\lbx@es@macro`.

## 附录 Appendix

### A 默认的驱动源映射

These are the driver default source mappings. For drivers other than bibtex and ris, they are highly experimental and subject to change (because the driver datatype itself is unstable or not well suited to bibliographic data).

#### A.1 bibtex

The bibtex driver is of course the most comprehensive and mature of the Biblatex/Biber supported data formats. These source mapping defaults are how the aliases from sections § 2.1.2 and § 2.2.5 are implemented.

```
\DeclareDriverSourceMap[datatype=bibtex]{
  \map{
    \step[tources=conference, typetarget=inproceedings]
    \step[tources=electronic, typetarget=online]
    \step[tources=www, typetarget=online]
  }
  \map{
    \step[tources=mastersthesis, typetarget=thesis, final]
    \step[fieldset=type, fieldvalue=mathesis]
  }
  \map{
    \step[tources=phdthesis, typetarget=thesis, final]
    \step[fieldset=type, fieldvalue=phdthesis]
  }
  \map{
    \step[tources=techreport, typetarget=report, final]
    \step[fieldset=type, fieldvalue=techreport]
  }
  \map{
    \step[fieldsource=address, fieldtarget=location]
    \step[fieldsource=school, fieldtarget=institution]
    \step[fieldsource=annote, fieldtarget=annotation]
    \step[fieldsource=archiveprefix, fieldtarget=eprinttype]
    \step[fieldsource=journal, fieldtarget=journaltitle]
    \step[fieldsource=primaryclass, fieldtarget=eprintclass]
    \step[fieldsource=key, fieldtarget=sortkey]
    \step[fieldsource=pdf, fieldtarget=file]
  }
}
```

#### A.2 endnotexml

The endnotexml driver for Biber uses the following mappings. This format is quite messy and not well suited to robust typesetting of bibliographic data. It is presented largely as an example of Biber's modular datasource abilities and also of how to map foreign data models into the Biblatex data model. Mappings from such messy and relatively simple data models are inevitably fragile and are of limited use.

```
\DeclareDriverSourceMap[datatype=endnotexml]{
  \map{
    \step[tources={Aggregated Database}, typetarget=misc]
    \step[tources={Ancient Text}, typetarget=misc]
    \step[tources=Artwork, typetarget=artwork]
    \step[tources={Audiovisual Material}, typetarget=misc]
    \step[tources=Bill, typetarget=jurisdiction]
    \step[tources=Blog, typetarget=online]
    \step[tources=Book, typetarget=book]
  }
}
```

```

\step[typesource={Book Section},          typetarget=inbook]
\step[typesource=Case,                    typetarget=jurisdiction]
\step[typesource=Catalog,                 typetarget=misc]
\step[typesource={Chart or Table},        typetarget=misc]
\step[typesource={Classical Work},        typetarget=misc]
\step[typesource={Computer Program},      typetarget=software]
\step[typesource={Conference Paper},      typetarget=inproceedings]
\step[typesource={Conference Proceedings}, typetarget=proceedings]
\step[typesource=Dictionary,              typetarget=inreference]
\step[typesource={Edited Book},           typetarget=collection]
\step[typesource={Electronic Article},    typetarget=article]
\step[typesource={Electronic Book},       typetarget=book]
\step[typesource={Encyclopedia},          typetarget=reference]
\step[typesource=Equation,                typetarget=misc]
\step[typesource=Figure,                  typetarget=misc]
\step[typesource={Film or Broadcast},     typetarget=movie]
\step[typesource={Government Document},   typetarget=report]
\step[typesource=Grant,                   typetarget=misc]
\step[typesource=Hearing,                 typetarget=jurisdiction]
\step[typesource={Journal Article},       typetarget=article]
\step[typesource={Legal Rule or Regulation}, typetarget=legislation]
\step[typesource={Magazine Article},      typetarget=article]
\step[typesource=Manuscript,              typetarget=unpublished]
\step[typesource=Map,                     typetarget=misc]
\step[typesource={Newspaper Article},     typetarget=article]
\step[typesource={Online Database},       typetarget=online]
\step[typesource={Online Multimedia},     typetarget=online]
\step[typesource=Pamphlet,                typetarget=booklet]
\step[typesource=Patent,                  typetarget=patent]
\step[typesource={Personal Communication}, typetarget=letter]
\step[typesource=Report,                  typetarget=report]
\step[typesource=Serial,                  typetarget=periodical]
\step[typesource=Standard,                typetarget=standard]
\step[typesource=Statute,                  typetarget=legislation]
\step[typesource=Thesis,                  typetarget=thesis]
\step[typesource={Unpublished Work},      typetarget=unpublished]
\step[typesource={Web Page},              typetarget=online]
}
\map{
  \step[fieldsource={electronic-resource-num}, fieldtarget=eprint]
  \step[fieldsource={alt-title},             fieldtarget=shorttitle]
  \step[fieldsource={meeting-place},         fieldtarget=venue]
  \step[fieldsource={pub-location},          fieldtarget=location]
  \step[fieldsource={orig-pub},              fieldtarget=origpublisher]
  \step[fieldsource={authors},               fieldtarget=author]
  \step[fieldsource={secondary-authors},     fieldtarget=editor]
  \step[fieldsource={tertiary-authors},      fieldtarget=commentator]
  \step[fieldsource={subsidiary-authors},    fieldtarget=translator]
  \step[fieldsource={year},                  fieldtarget=date]
  \step[fieldsource={pub-dates},             fieldtarget=date]
  \step[fieldsource={num-vols},              fieldtarget=volumes]
  \step[fieldsource={call-num},              fieldtarget=library]
  \step[fieldsource={notes},                 fieldtarget=note]
  \step[fieldsource={secondary-title},       fieldtarget=subtitle]
  \step[fieldsource={work-type},             fieldtarget=type]
}
\map{
  \pertype{Edited Book}
  \step[fieldsource=contributors/authors, fieldtarget=contributors/editor]

```

```

}
\map{
  \pertype{Electronic Article}
  \pertype{Journal Article}
  \pertype{Magazine Article}
  \pertype{Newspaper Article}
  \step[fieldsource=isbn, fieldtarget=issn]
}
\map{
  \pertype{Patent}
  \pertype{Report}
  \pertype{Government Document}
  \pertype{Legal Rule or Regulation}
  \step[fieldsource=isbn, fieldtarget=number]
}
\map{
  \pertype{Blog}
  \pertype{Online Database}
  \pertype{Online Multimedia}
  \pertype{Web Page}
  \step[fieldsource={titles/secondary-title}, fieldtarget={titles/title}]
}
\map{
  \pertype{Book Section}
  \step[fieldsource={titles/secondary-title}, fieldtarget={titles/booktitle}]
}
\map{
  \pertype{Book}
  \pertype{Electronic Book}
  \pertype{Manuscript}
  \pertype{Unpublished Work}
  \step[fieldsource={titles/secondary-title}, fieldtarget={titles/series}]
}
\map{
  \pertype{Conference Paper}
  \pertype{Conference Proceedings}
  \step[fieldsource={titles/secondary-title}, fieldtarget={titles/eventtitle}]
}
\map{
  \pertype{Electronic Article}
  \pertype{Journal Article}
  \pertype{Magazine Article}
  \pertype{Newspaper Article}
  \step[fieldsource={titles/secondary-title}, fieldtarget={titles/journaltitle}]
}
\map{
  \pertype{Book Section}
  \step[fieldsource={titles/tertiary-title}, fieldtarget={titles/booktitle}]
}
\map{
  \pertype{Conference Proceedings}
  \pertype{periodical}
  \step[fieldsource={titles/tertiary-title}, fieldtarget={titles/series}]
}
}

```



## A.3 ris

The ris driver reflects the fact that ris itself is a very simple and stable format. It is in fact so simple, it's hardly of any use for most Biblatex users. Again, here more as a proof of concept example.

```
\DeclareDriverSourcemap[datatype=ris]{
  \map{
    \step[typesource=ART,      typetarget=artwork]
    \step[typesource=BILL,    typetarget=jurisdiction]
    \step[typesource=BOOK,    typetarget=book]
    \step[typesource=CHAP,    typetarget=inbook]
    \step[typesource=COMP,    typetarget=software]
    \step[typesource=CONF,    typetarget=proceedings]
    \step[typesource=GEN,     typetarget=misc]
    \step[typesource=JFULL,   typetarget=article]
    \step[typesource=JOUR,    typetarget=article]
    \step[typesource=MGZN,    typetarget=misc]
    \step[typesource=MPCT,    typetarget=movie]
    \step[typesource=NEWS,    typetarget=misc]
    \step[typesource=PAMP,    typetarget=misc]
    \step[typesource=PAT,     typetarget=patent]
    \step[typesource=PCOMM,   typetarget=misc]
    \step[typesource=RPRT,    typetarget=report]
    \step[typesource=SER,     typetarget=misc]
    \step[typesource=SLIDE,   typetarget=misc]
    \step[typesource=SOUND,   typetarget=audio]
    \step[typesource=STAT,    typetarget=legal]
    \step[typesource=THES,    typetarget=thesis]
    \step[typesource=UNBILL,  typetarget=jurisdiction]
    \step[typesource=UNPB,    typetarget=unpublished]
  }
  \map{
    \step[fieldsource=Y1,      fieldtarget=date]
    \step[fieldsource=PY,      fieldtarget=date]
    \step[fieldsource=Y2,      fieldtarget=eventdate]
    \step[fieldsource=A1,      fieldtarget=author]
    \step[fieldsource=AU,      fieldtarget=author]
    \step[fieldsource=A2,      fieldtarget=editor]
    \step[fieldsource=A3,      fieldtarget=editor]
    \step[fieldsource=ED,      fieldtarget=editor]
    \step[fieldsource=SPEP,    fieldtarget=pages]
    \step[fieldsource=N1,      fieldtarget=note]
    \step[fieldsource=N2,      fieldtarget=abstract]
    \step[fieldsource=AB,      fieldtarget=abstract]
    \step[fieldsource=JO,      fieldtarget=journaltitle]
    \step[fieldsource=JF,      fieldtarget=journaltitle]
    \step[fieldsource=JA,      fieldtarget=shortjournal]
    \step[fieldsource=VL,      fieldtarget=volume]
    \step[fieldsource=IS,      fieldtarget=issue]
    \step[fieldsource=CP,      fieldtarget=issue]
    \step[fieldsource=CY,      fieldtarget=location]
    \step[fieldsource=SN,      fieldtarget=isbn]
    \step[fieldsource=PB,      fieldtarget=publisher]
    \step[fieldsource=KW,      fieldtarget=keywords]
    \step[fieldsource=TI,      fieldtarget=title]
    \step[fieldsource=U1,      fieldtarget=usera]
    \step[fieldsource=U2,      fieldtarget=userb]
    \step[fieldsource=U3,      fieldtarget=userc]
    \step[fieldsource=U4,      fieldtarget=userd]
    \step[fieldsource=U5,      fieldtarget=usere]
  }
}
```

```

\step[fieldsource=UR,      fieldtarget=url]
\step[fieldsource=L1,     fieldtarget=file]
}
}

```

## A.4 zoterordfxml

The `zoterordfxml` driver reads the Zotero<sup>62</sup> XML representation of its RDF format. From the Biblatex point of view, it suffers from a lack of the notion of a citation key and so is of limited use. The format may include a citation key in the future at which point the Biber driver and these default mappings will be updated. As with `endnotexml`, the format is somewhat messy with, in particular, a very limited way of dealing with related entries which makes the driver setup rather ugly. As can be seen below, it is possible to map into a field prefixed with “BIBERCUSTOM” which is not a real field in the data model but can be detected in the Biber driver itself and used to process a source field which does not map naturally to any Biblatex data model field as it needs special treatment. This is messy but is due largely due to messy source data models.

```

\DeclareDriverSourceMap[datatype=zoterordfxml]{
  \map{
    \step[tourcesource=conferencePaper,    typetarget=inproceedings]
    \step[tourcesource=bookSection,        typetarget=inbook]
    \step[tourcesource=journalArticle,     typetarget=article]
    \step[tourcesource=magazineArticle,    typetarget=article]
    \step[tourcesource=newspaperArticle,   typetarget=article]
    \step[tourcesource=encyclopediaArticle, typetarget=inreference]
    \step[tourcesource=manuscript,         typetarget=unpublished]
    \step[tourcesource=document,           typetarget=misc]
    \step[tourcesource=dictionaryEntry,    typetarget=inreference]
    \step[tourcesource=interview,          typetarget=misc]
    \step[tourcesource=film,               typetarget=movie]
    \step[tourcesource=webpage,            typetarget=online]
    \step[tourcesource=note,               typetarget=misc]
    \step[tourcesource=attachment,         typetarget=misc]
    \step[tourcesource=bill,               typetarget=legislation]
    \step[tourcesource=case,               typetarget=jurisdiction]
    \step[tourcesource=hearing,            typetarget=jurisdiction]
    \step[tourcesource=statute,            typetarget=legislation]
    \step[tourcesource=email,              typetarget=letter]
    \step[tourcesource=map,                typetarget=image]
    \step[tourcesource=blogPost,           typetarget=online]
    \step[tourcesource=instantMessage,     typetarget=letter]
    \step[tourcesource=forumPost,          typetarget=online]
    \step[tourcesource=audioRecording,     typetarget=audio]
    \step[tourcesource=presentation,       typetarget=inproceedings]
    \step[tourcesource=videoRecording,     typetarget=video]
    \step[tourcesource=tvBroadcast,        typetarget=misc]
    \step[tourcesource=radioBroadcast,     typetarget=misc]
    \step[tourcesource=podcast,            typetarget=online]
    \step[tourcesource=computerProgram,    typetarget=software]
  }
  \map{
    \step[fieldsource=bib:contributors,    fieldtarget=author]
    \step[fieldsource=bib:authors,         fieldtarget=author]
    \step[fieldsource=z:interviewers,      fieldtarget=author]
    \step[fieldsource=z:directors,         fieldtarget=author]
    \step[fieldsource=z:scriptwriters,     fieldtarget=author]
    \step[fieldsource=z:bookAuthor,        fieldtarget=author]
  }
}

```

<sup>62</sup>[www.zotero.org](http://www.zotero.org)

|                                                             |                                     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| \step[fieldsource=z:inventors,                              | fieldtarget=author]                 |
| \step[fieldsource=z:recipients,                             | fieldtarget=author]                 |
| \step[fieldsource=z:counsels,                               | fieldtarget=author]                 |
| \step[fieldsource=z:artists,                                | fieldtarget=author]                 |
| \step[fieldsource=z:podcasters,                             | fieldtarget=author]                 |
| \step[fieldsource=z:presenters,                             | fieldtarget=author]                 |
| \step[fieldsource=z:commenters,                             | fieldtarget=author]                 |
| \step[fieldsource=z:programers,                             | fieldtarget=author]                 |
| \step[fieldsource=z:composers,                              | fieldtarget=author]                 |
| \step[fieldsource=z:producers,                              | fieldtarget=author]                 |
| \step[fieldsource=z:performers,                             | fieldtarget=author]                 |
| \step[fieldsource=bib:editors,                              | fieldtarget=editor]                 |
| \step[fieldsource=z:translators,                            | fieldtarget=translator]             |
| \step[fieldsource=z:seriesEditors,                          | fieldtarget=editor]                 |
| \step[fieldsource=dc:date,                                  | fieldtarget=date]                   |
| \step[fieldsource=bib:pages,                                | fieldtarget=pages]                  |
| \step[fieldsource=dc:title,                                 | fieldtarget=title]                  |
| \step[fieldsource=z:proceedingsTitle,                       | fieldtarget=title]                  |
| \step[fieldsource=z:encyclopediaTitle,                      | fieldtarget=title]                  |
| \step[fieldsource=z:dictionaryTitle,                        | fieldtarget=title]                  |
| \step[fieldsource=z:websiteTitle,                           | fieldtarget=title]                  |
| \step[fieldsource=z:forumTitle,                             | fieldtarget=title]                  |
| \step[fieldsource=z:blogTitle,                              | fieldtarget=title]                  |
| \step[fieldsource=z:nameOfAct,                              | fieldtarget=title]                  |
| \step[fieldsource=z:caseName,                               | fieldtarget=title]                  |
| \step[fieldsource=z:meetingName,                            | fieldtarget=eventtitle]             |
| \step[fieldsource=prism:volume,                             | fieldtarget=volume]                 |
| \step[fieldsource=numberOfVolumes,                          | fieldtarget=volumes]                |
| \step[fieldsource=z:numPages,                               | fieldtarget=pagetotal]              |
| \step[fieldsource=prism:edition,                            | fieldtarget=edition]                |
| \step[fieldsource=dc:description,                           | fieldtarget=note]                   |
| \step[fieldsource=dc:alternative,                           | fieldtarget=shortjournal]           |
| \step[fieldsource=dc:terms:abstract,                        | fieldtarget=abstract]               |
| \step[fieldsource=dc:type,                                  | fieldtarget=type]                   |
| \step[fieldsource=z:shortTitle,                             | fieldtarget=shorttitle]             |
| \step[fieldsource=z:bookTitle,                              | fieldtarget=booktitle]              |
| \step[fieldsource=prism:number,                             | fieldtarget=number]                 |
| \step[fieldsource=z:patentNumber,                           | fieldtarget=number]                 |
| \step[fieldsource=z:codeNumber,                             | fieldtarget=number]                 |
| \step[fieldsource=z:reportNumber,                           | fieldtarget=number]                 |
| \step[fieldsource=z:billNumber,                             | fieldtarget=number]                 |
| \step[fieldsource=z:documentNumber,                         | fieldtarget=number]                 |
| \step[fieldsource=z:publicLawNumber,                        | fieldtarget=number]                 |
| \step[fieldsource=z:applicationNumber,                      | fieldtarget=number]                 |
| \step[fieldsource=z:episodeNumber,                          | fieldtarget=number]                 |
| \step[fieldsource=dc:coverage,                              | fieldtarget=location]               |
| \step[fieldsource=z:university,                             | fieldtarget=institution]            |
| \step[fieldsource=z:language,                               | fieldtarget=language]               |
| \step[fieldsource=z:version,                                | fieldtarget=version]                |
| \step[fieldsource=z:libraryCatalog,                         | fieldtarget=library]                |
| \step[fieldsource=dc:terms:isPartOf,                        | fieldtarget=BIBERCUSTOMpartof]      |
| \step[fieldsource=dc:identifier,                            | fieldtarget=BIBERCUSTOMidentifier]  |
| \step[fieldsource=dc:publisher,                             | fieldtarget=BIBERCUSTOMpublisher]   |
| \step[fieldsource=dc:presentedAt,                           | fieldtarget=BIBERCUSTOMpresentedat] |
| \step[fieldsource=dc:subject,                               | fieldtarget=BIBERCUSTOMsubject]     |
| \step[fieldsource={dc:terms:BIBERCUSTOMpartof/bib:Journal}, |                                     |
| fieldtarget={dc:terms:BIBERCUSTOMpartof/periodical}]        |                                     |
| \step[fieldsource={dc:terms:BIBERCUSTOMpartof/bib:Book},    |                                     |
| fieldtarget={dc:terms:BIBERCUSTOMpartof/book}]              |                                     |

```
\step[fieldsource={dcterm:BIBERCUSTOMpartof/bib:ConferenceProceedings},
      fieldtarget={dcterm:BIBERCUSTOMpartof/proceedings}]
}
}
```

## B 默认的继承设置

The following table shows the Biber cross-referencing rules defined by default. Please refer to §§ 2.4.1 和 4.5.11 for explanation.

| Types                     |                                                                  | Fields         |                |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| Source                    | Target                                                           | Source         | Target         |
| *                         | *                                                                | ids            | –              |
|                           |                                                                  | crossref       | –              |
|                           |                                                                  | xref           | –              |
|                           |                                                                  | entryset       | –              |
|                           |                                                                  | entrysubtype   | –              |
|                           |                                                                  | execute        | –              |
|                           |                                                                  | label          | –              |
|                           |                                                                  | options        | –              |
|                           |                                                                  | presort        | –              |
|                           |                                                                  | related        | –              |
|                           |                                                                  | relatedoptions | –              |
|                           |                                                                  | relatedstring  | –              |
|                           |                                                                  | relatedtype    | –              |
|                           |                                                                  | shorthand      | –              |
|                           |                                                                  | shorthandintro | –              |
|                           |                                                                  | sortkey        | –              |
| mvbook, book              | inbook, bookinbook, suppbook                                     | author         | author         |
|                           |                                                                  | author         | bookauthor     |
| mvbook                    | book, inbook, bookinbook, suppbook                               | title          | maintitle      |
|                           |                                                                  | subtitle       | mainsubtitle   |
|                           |                                                                  | titleaddon     | maintitleaddon |
|                           |                                                                  | shorttitle     | –              |
|                           |                                                                  | sorttitle      | –              |
|                           |                                                                  | indextitle     | –              |
|                           |                                                                  | indexsorttitle | –              |
|                           |                                                                  | –              | –              |
| mvcollection, mvreference | collection, reference, incollection, inreference, suppcollection | title          | maintitle      |
|                           |                                                                  | subtitle       | mainsubtitle   |
|                           |                                                                  | titleaddon     | maintitleaddon |
|                           |                                                                  | shorttitle     | –              |
|                           |                                                                  | sorttitle      | –              |
|                           |                                                                  | indextitle     | –              |
|                           |                                                                  | indexsorttitle | –              |
|                           |                                                                  | –              | –              |
| mvproceedings             | proceedings, inproceedings                                       | title          | maintitle      |
|                           |                                                                  | subtitle       | mainsubtitle   |
|                           |                                                                  | titleaddon     | maintitleaddon |
|                           |                                                                  | shorttitle     | –              |
|                           |                                                                  | sorttitle      | –              |
|                           |                                                                  | indextitle     | –              |
|                           |                                                                  | indexsorttitle | –              |
|                           |                                                                  | –              | –              |

| Types                 |                                           | Fields         |                 |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| Source                | Target                                    | Source         | Target          |
| book                  | inbook, bookinbook, suppbok               | title          | booktitle       |
|                       |                                           | subtitle       | booksubtitle    |
|                       |                                           | titleaddon     | booktitleaddon  |
|                       |                                           | shorttitle     | –               |
|                       |                                           | sorttitle      | –               |
|                       |                                           | indextitle     | –               |
|                       |                                           | indexsorttitle | –               |
| collection, reference | incollection, inreference, suppcollection | title          | booktitle       |
|                       |                                           | subtitle       | booksubtitle    |
|                       |                                           | titleaddon     | booktitleaddon  |
|                       |                                           | shorttitle     | –               |
|                       |                                           | sorttitle      | –               |
|                       |                                           | indextitle     | –               |
|                       |                                           | indexsorttitle | –               |
| proceedings           | inproceedings                             | title          | booktitle       |
|                       |                                           | subtitle       | booksubtitle    |
|                       |                                           | titleaddon     | booktitleaddon  |
|                       |                                           | shorttitle     | –               |
|                       |                                           | sorttitle      | –               |
|                       |                                           | indextitle     | –               |
|                       |                                           | indexsorttitle | –               |
| periodical            | article, suppperiodical                   | title          | journaltitle    |
|                       |                                           | subtitle       | journalsubtitle |
|                       |                                           | shorttitle     | –               |
|                       |                                           | sorttitle      | –               |
|                       |                                           | indextitle     | –               |
|                       |                                           | indexsorttitle | –               |
|                       |                                           | –              | –               |

## C 默认的排序方式

### C.1 Alphabetic Schemes 1

The following table shows the standard alphabetic sorting schemes defined by default. Please refer to § 3.5 for explanation.

| Option | Sorting scheme |              |             |             |             |
|--------|----------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| nty    | presort        | → sortname   | → sorttitle | → sortyear  | → volume    |
|        | ↪ mm           | ↪ author     | ↪ title     | ↪ year      | ↪ 0000      |
|        |                | ↪ editor     |             |             |             |
|        |                | ↪ translator |             |             |             |
|        |                | ↪ sorttitle  |             |             |             |
|        |                | ↪ title      |             |             |             |
|        |                |              |             |             |             |
| nyt    | presort        | → sortname   | → sortyear  | → sorttitle | → volume    |
|        | ↪ mm           | ↪ author     | ↪ year      | ↪ title     | ↪ 0000      |
|        |                | ↪ editor     |             |             |             |
|        |                | ↪ translator |             |             |             |
|        |                | ↪ sorttitle  |             |             |             |
|        |                | ↪ title      |             |             |             |
|        |                |              |             |             |             |
| nyvt   | presort        | → sortname   | → sortyear  | → volume    | → sorttitle |
|        | ↪ mm           | ↪ author     | ↪ year      | ↪ 0000      | ↪ title     |
|        |                | ↪ editor     |             |             |             |
|        |                | ↪ translator |             |             |             |
|        |                | ↪ sorttitle  |             |             |             |
|        |                | ↪ title      |             |             |             |
|        |                |              |             |             |             |

| Option | Sorting scheme            |
|--------|---------------------------|
| all    | presort → sortkey<br>↪ mm |

## C.2 Alphabetic Schemes 2

The following table shows the alphabetic sorting schemes for alphabetic styles defined by default. Please refer to § 3.5 for explanation.

| Option | Sorting scheme                                                                                                                                               |
|--------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| anyt   | presort → labelalpha → sortname → sortyear → sorttitle → volume<br>↪ mm ↪ author ↪ year ↪ title ↪ 0000<br>↪ editor<br>↪ translator<br>↪ sorttitle<br>↪ title |
| anyvt  | presort → labelalpha → sortname → sortyear → volume → sorttitle<br>↪ mm ↪ author ↪ year ↪ 0000 ↪ title<br>↪ editor<br>↪ translator<br>↪ sorttitle<br>↪ title |
| all    | presort → labelalpha → sortkey<br>↪ mm                                                                                                                       |

## C.3 Chronological Schemes

The following table shows the chronological sorting schemes defined by default. Please refer to § 3.5 for explanation.

| Option | Sorting scheme                                                                                                                                         |
|--------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ynt    | presort → sortyear → sortname → sorttitle<br>↪ mm ↪ year ↪ author ↪ title<br>↪ 9999 ↪ editor<br>↪ translator<br>↪ sorttitle<br>↪ title                 |
| yndt   | presort → sortyear (desc.) → sortname → sorttitle<br>↪ mm ↪ year (desc.) ↪ author ↪ title<br>↪ 9999 ↪ editor<br>↪ translator<br>↪ sorttitle<br>↪ title |
| all    | presort → sortkey<br>↪ mm                                                                                                                              |

## D 选项集合

The following table provides an overview of the scope (global/per-type/per-entry) of various package options.

| Option     | Scope     |        |          |           |
|------------|-----------|--------|----------|-----------|
|            | Load-time | Global | Per-type | Per-entry |
| abbreviate | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| alldates   | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| arxiv      | •         | •      | –        | –         |

| Option          | Scope     |        |          |           |
|-----------------|-----------|--------|----------|-----------|
|                 | Load-time | Global | Per-type | Per-entry |
| autocite        | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| autopunct       | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| autolang        | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| backend         | •         | –      | –        | –         |
| backref         | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| backrefsetstyle | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| backrefstyle    | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| bibencoding     | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| bibstyle        | •         | –      | –        | –         |
| bibwarn         | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| block           | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| citecounter     | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| citereset       | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| citestyle       | •         | –      | –        | –         |
| citetracker     | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| clearlang       | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| datamodel       | •         | –      | –        | –         |
| dataonly        | –         | –      | •        | •         |
| date            | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| dateabbrev      | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| datezeros       | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| defernumbers    | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| doi             | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| eprint          | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| eventdate       | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| firstinits      | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| hyperref        | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| ibidtracker     | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| idemtracker     | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| indexing        | •         | •      | •        | •         |
| isbn            | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| labelalpha      | •         | •      | •        | –         |
| labelnamefield  | –         | –      | –        | •         |
| labelnumber     | •         | •      | •        | –         |
| labeltitle      | •         | •      | •        | –         |
| labeltitlefield | –         | –      | –        | •         |
| labeltitleyear  | •         | •      | •        | –         |
| labeldate       | •         | •      | •        | –         |
| language        | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| loadfiles       | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| loccittracker   | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| maxalphanames   | •         | •      | •        | •         |
| maxbibnames     | •         | •      | •        | •         |
| maxcitenames    | •         | •      | •        | •         |
| maxitems        | •         | •      | •        | •         |
| maxnames        | •         | •      | •        | •         |
| maxparens       | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| mcite           | •         | –      | –        | –         |
| minalphanames   | •         | •      | •        | •         |
| minbibnames     | •         | •      | •        | •         |
| mincitenames    | •         | •      | •        | •         |
| mincrossrefs    | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| minitems        | •         | •      | •        | •         |
| minnames        | •         | •      | •        | •         |
| natbib          | •         | –      | –        | –         |
| notetype        | •         | •      | –        | –         |

| Option         | Scope     |        |          |           |
|----------------|-----------|--------|----------|-----------|
|                | Load-time | Global | Per-type | Per-entry |
| opcitracker    | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| openbib        | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| origdate       | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| pagetracker    | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| parenttracker  | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| punctfont      | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| refsection     | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| refsegment     | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| safeinputenc   | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| singletitle    | •         | •      | •        | –         |
| skipbib        | –         | –      | •        | •         |
| skipbiblist    | –         | –      | •        | •         |
| skiplab        | –         | –      | •        | •         |
| skiplos        | –         | –      | •        | •         |
| sortcase       | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| sortcites      | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| sortfirstinits | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| sorting        | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| sortlocale     | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| sortlos        | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| sortupper      | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| style          | •         | –      | –        | –         |
| terseinits     | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| texencoding    | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| uniquelist     | •         | •      | •        | •         |
| uniquename     | •         | •      | •        | •         |
| urldate        | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| url            | •         | •      | –        | –         |
| useprefix      | •         | •      | •        | •         |
| use<name>      | •         | •      | •        | •         |

## E 更新历史

This revision history is a list of changes relevant to users of this package. Changes of a more technical nature which do not affect the user interface or the behavior of the package are not included in the list. If an entry in the revision history states that a feature has been *improved* or *extended*, this indicates a modification which either does not affect the syntax and behavior of the package or is syntactically backwards compatible (such as the addition of an optional argument to an existing command). Entries stating that a feature has been *modified*, *renamed*, or *removed* demand attention. They indicate a modification which may require changes to existing styles or documents in some, hopefully rare, cases. The numbers on the right indicate the relevant section of this manual.

### 3.0 2015-04-20

Improved Danish (Jonas Nyrup) and Spanish (Iudenticus) translations

`labelname` and `labeltitle` are now resolved by Biblatex instead of Biber for more flexibility and future extensibility

New `\entryclone` sourcemap verb for cloning entries during sourcemapping . . . . . 4.5.3

New `\pernottype` negated per-type sourcemap verb . . . . . 4.5.3

New range calculation command `\frangelen` . . . . . 4.6.4

New bibliography context functionality . . . . . 3.6.11

Name lists in the data model now automatically create internals for `\ifuse<name>` tests and booleans . . . 3.1.3.1 and 4.6.2

### 2.9a 2014-06-25

`resetnumbers` now allows passing a number to reset to . . . . . 3.6.2



## 2.9 2014-02-25

|                                                                          |         |            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|------------|
| Generalised shorthands facility . . . . .                                | 3.6.4   | Biber only |
| Sorting locales can now be defined as part of a sorting scheme . . . . . | 4.5.6   | Biber only |
| Added sortinithash . . . . .                                             | 4.2.4.1 | Biber only |
| Added Slovene localisation (Tea Tušar and Bogdan Filipič)                |         |            |
| Added \mkbibitalic . . . . .                                             | 4.10.4  |            |
| Recommend begentry and finentry bibliography macros . . . . .            | 4.2.3   |            |

## 2.8a 2013-11-25

|                                                                                  |         |            |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|------------|
| Split option language=auto into language=autocite and language=autobib . . . . . | 3.1.2.1 | Biber only |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|------------|

## 2.8 2013-10-21

|                                               |         |            |
|-----------------------------------------------|---------|------------|
| New langidopts . . . . .                      | 2.2.3   | Biber only |
| hyphenation field renamed to langid . . . . . | 2.2.3   |            |
| polyglossia support                           |         |            |
| Renamed babel option to autolang . . . . .    | 3.1.2.1 |            |
| Corrected Dutch localisation                  |         |            |
| Added datelabel=year option . . . . .         | 3.1.2.1 |            |
| Added datelabelsource field . . . . .         | 4.2.4.1 |            |

## 2.7a 2013-07-14

Bugfix - respect maxnames and uniquelist in \finalandsemicolon  
Corrected French localisation

## 2.7 2013-07-07

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |        |  |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|--|
| Added field eventtitleaddon to default datamodel and styles . . . . .                                                                                                                                                      | 2.2.2  |  |
| Added \ifentryinbib, \iffirstcitekey and \iflastcitekey . . . . .                                                                                                                                                          | 4.6.2  |  |
| Added postpunct special field, documented multiprenote and multipostnote special fields . . . . .                                                                                                                          | 4.3.2  |  |
| Added \UseBibitemHook, \AtEveryMultiCite, \AtNextMultiCite, \UseEveryCiteHook, \UseEveryCitekeyHook, \UseEveryMultiCiteHook, \UseNextCiteHook, \UseNextCitekeyHook, \UseNextMultiCiteHook, \DeferNextCitekeyHook . . . . . | 4.10.6 |  |
| Fixed \textcite and related commands in the numeric and verbose styles . . . . .                                                                                                                                           | 3.7.2  |  |
| Added multicite variants of \volcite and related commands . . . . .                                                                                                                                                        | 3.7.6  |  |
| Added \finalandsemicolon . . . . .                                                                                                                                                                                         | 3.9.2  |  |
| Added citation delimiter \textcitedelim for \textcite and related commands to styles . . . . .                                                                                                                             | 4.10.1 |  |
| Updated Russian localization (Oleg Domanov)                                                                                                                                                                                |        |  |
| Fixed Brazilian and Finnish localization                                                                                                                                                                                   |        |  |

## 2.6 2013-04-30

|                                                                           |          |            |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|------------|
| Added \printunit . . . . .                                                | 4.7.1    |            |
| Added field clonesourcekey . . . . .                                      | 4.2.4.1  | Biber only |
| New options for \DeclareLabelalphaTemplate . . . . .                      | 4.5.5    | Biber only |
| Added \DeclareLabeldate and retired \DeclareLabelyear . . . . .           | 4.5.10   | Biber only |
| Added nodate localization string . . . . .                                | 4.9.2.14 |            |
| Added \rangelen . . . . .                                                 | 4.6.4    |            |
| Added starred variants of \citeauthor and \Citeauthor . . . . .           | 3.7.5    |            |
| Restored original url format. Added urlfrom localization key . . . . .    | 4.9.2.15 |            |
| Added \AtNextBibliography . . . . .                                       | 4.10.6   |            |
| Fixed related entry processing to allow nested and cyclic related entries |          |            |
| Added Croatian localization (Ivo Pletikosić)                              |          |            |
| Added Polish localization (Anastasia Kandulina, Yuriy Chernyshov)         |          |            |
| Fixed Catalan localization                                                |          |            |
| Added smart “of” for titles to Catalan and French localization            |          |            |
| Misc bug fixes                                                            |          |            |

## 2.5 2013-01-10

Made `url` work as a localization string, defaulting to previously hard-coded value ‘URL’.

Changed some Biber option names to cohere with Biber 1.5.

New sourcemap step for conditionally removing entire entries . . . . . 4.5.3 Biber only

Updated Catalan localization (Sebastià Vila-Marta)

## 2.4 2012-11-28

Added `relatedoptions` field . . . . . 4.5.1 Biber only

Added `\DeclareStyleSourcemap` . . . . . 4.5.3 Biber only

Renamed `\DeclareDefaultSourcemap` to `\DeclareDriverSourcemap` . . . . . 4.5.3 Biber only

Documented `\DeclareFieldInputHandler`, `\DeclareListInputHandler` and `\DeclareNameInputHandler`.

Added Czech localization (Michal Hoftich)

Updated Catalan localization (Sebastià Vila-Marta)

## 2.3 2012-11-01

Better detection of situations which require a Biber or  $\LaTeX$  re-run

New append mode for `\DeclareSourcemap` so that fields can be combined . . . . . 4.5.3 Biber only

Extended auxiliary indexing macros

Added support for plural localization strings with `relatedtype` . . . . . 4.5.1 Biber only

Added `\csfield` and `\usefield` . . . . . 4.6.1

Added starred variant of `\usebibmacro` . . . . . 4.6.4

Added `\ifbibmacroundef`, `\iffieldformatundef`, `\iflistformatundef` and `\ifnameformatundef` . . . . . 4.6.4

Added Catalan localization (Sebastià Vila-Marta)

Misc bug fixes

## 2.2 2012-08-17

Misc bug fixes

Added `\revsdnamepunct` . . . . . 3.9.1

Added `\ifterseinit` . . . . . 4.6.2

## 2.1 2012-08-01

Misc bug fixes

Updated Norwegian localization (Håkon Malmedal)

Increased data model auto-loading possibilities . . . . . 4.5.4 Biber only

## 2.0 2012-07-01

Misc bug fixes

Generalised `singletitle` test a little . . . . . 4.6.2 Biber only

Added new special field `extratitleyear` . . . . . 4.2.4 Biber only

Customisable data model . . . . . 4.5.4 Biber only

Added `\DeclareDefaultSourcemap` . . . . . 4.5.3 Biber only

Added `labeltitle` option . . . . . 3.1.2.3 Biber only

Added new special field `extratitle` . . . . . 4.2.4 Biber only

Made special field `labeltitle` customisable . . . . . 4.2.4 Biber only

Removed field `reprinttitle` . . . . . 3.4 Biber only

Added related entry feature . . . . . 3.4 Biber only

Added `\DeclareNoinit` . . . . . 4.5.8 Biber only

Added `\DeclareNosort` . . . . . 4.5.9 Biber only

Added sorting option for `\printbibliography` and `\printshorthands` . . . . . 3.6.2 Biber only

Added `ids` field for `citekey` aliasing . . . . . 2.2 Biber only

Added `sortfirstinits` option . . . . . 3.1.2.3 Biber only

Added data stream modification feature . . . . . 4.5.3 Biber only

Added customisable labels feature . . . . . 4.5.5 Biber only

Added `\citeyear*` and `\citedate*` . . . . . 3.7.5 Biber only

Biber only